

The Project Gutenberg eBook of First Six Books of the Elements of Euclid

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this eBook or online at [www.gutenberg.org](http://www.gutenberg.org). If you are not located in the United States, you will have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

Title: The First Six Books of the Elements of Euclid

Subtitle: And Propositions I.-XXI. of Book XI., and an Appendix on the Cylinder, Sphere, Cone, etc.,

Author: John Casey

Author: Euclid

Release Date: April 14, 2007 [eBook #21076]  
[Most recently updated: August 5, 2025]

Language: English

Character set encoding: UTF-8

Credits: Joshua Hutchinson, Keith Edkins and the  
Online Distributed Proofreading Team at <https://www.pgdp.net>  
(This file was produced from images from the Cornell University  
Library: Historical Mathematics Monographs collection.)  
Revised by Richard Tonsing.

\*\*\* START OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK ELEMENTS OF EUCLID \*\*\*

#### Production Note

Cornell University Library produced this volume to replace the irreparably deteriorated original. It was scanned using Xerox software and equipment at 600 dots per inch resolution and compressed prior to storage using CCITT Group 4 compression. The digital data were used to create Cornell's replacement volume on paper that meets the ANSI Standard Z39.48-1984. The production of this volume was supported in part by the Commission on Preservation and Access and the Xerox Corporation. Digital file copyright by Cornell University Library 1991.

TRANSCRIBER'S NOTE: *The Index has been regenerated to fit the pagination of this edition. Despite the author's stated hope that "few misprints have escaped detection" there were several, which have here been corrected and noted at the end of the text.*

CORNELL UNIVERSITY LIBRARY

THE EVAN WILHELM EVANS  
MATHEMATICAL SEMINARY LIBRARY

THE GIFT OF  
LUCIEN AUGUSTUS WAIT

THE ELEMENTS OF EUCLID.

NOW READY

---

Price 3s.

A TREATISE ON ELEMENTARY TRIGONOMETRY,  
*With Numerous Examples and Questions for Examination.*

---

Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged, Price 3s. 6d., Cloth.

A SEQUEL TO THE FIRST SIX BOOKS OF THE  
ELEMENTS OF EUCLID,  
*Containing an Easy Introduction to Modern Geometry:*  
**With numerous Examples.**

---

Third Edition, Price 4s. 6d.; or in two parts, each 2s. 6d.

THE ELEMENTS OF EUCLID, BOOKS I.—VI., AND  
PROPOSITIONS I.—XXI., OF BOOK XI.;  
*Together with an Appendix on the Cylinder, Sphere,  
Cone, &c.: with*  
**Copious Annotations & numerous Exercises.**

---

Price 6s.

A KEY TO THE EXERCISES IN THE FIRST SIX  
BOOKS OF CASEY'S ELEMENTS OF EUCLID.

---

Price 7s. 6d.

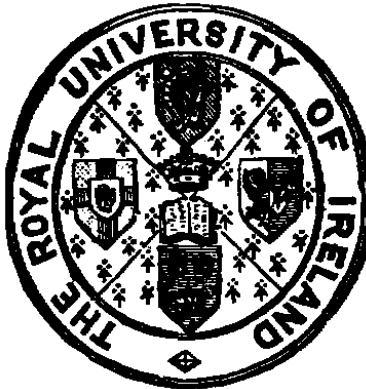
A TREATISE ON THE ANALYTICAL GEOMETRY OF  
THE POINT, LINE, CIRCLE, & CONIC SECTIONS,  
*Containing an Account of its most recent Extensions,*  
**With numerous Examples.**

---

DUBLIN: HODGES, FIGGIS, & CO.  
LONDON: LONGMANS & CO.

THE FIRST SIX BOOKS  
OF THE  
ELEMENTS OF EUCLID,  
AND  
PROPOSITIONS I.-XXI. OF BOOK XI.,  
AND AN  
*APPENDIX ON THE CYLINDER, SPHERE,  
CONE, ETC.,*  
WITH  
COPIOUS ANNOTATIONS AND NUMEROUS EXERCISES.

BY  
JOHN CASEY, LL.D., F.R.S.,  
FELLOW OF THE ROYAL UNIVERSITY OF IRELAND;  
MEMBER OF COUNCIL, ROYAL IRISH ACADEMY;  
MEMBER OF THE MATHEMATICAL SOCIETIES OF LONDON AND FRANCE;  
AND PROFESSOR OF THE HIGHER MATHEMATICS AND OF  
MATHEMATICAL PHYSICS IN THE CATHOLIC UNIVERSITY OF IRELAND.



THIRD EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED.  
DUBLIN: HODGES, FIGGIS, & CO., GRAFTON-ST.  
LONDON: LONGMANS, GREEN, & CO.  
1885.

DUBLIN  
PRINTED AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS,  
BY PONSONBY AND WELDRICK

## PREFACE.

---

This edition of the Elements of Euclid, undertaken at the request of the principals of some of the leading Colleges and Schools of Ireland, is intended to supply a want much felt by teachers at the present day—the production of a work which, while giving the unrivalled original in all its integrity, would also contain the modern conceptions and developments of the portion of Geometry over which the Elements extend. A cursory examination of the work will show that the Editor has gone much further in this latter direction than any of his predecessors, for it will be found to contain, not only more actual matter than is given in any of theirs with which he is acquainted, but also much of a special character, which is not given, so far as he is aware, in any former work on the subject. The great extension of geometrical methods in recent times has made such a work a necessity for the student, to enable him not only to read with advantage, but even to understand those mathematical writings of modern times which require an accurate knowledge of Elementary Geometry, and to which it is in reality the best introduction.

In compiling his work the Editor has received invaluable assistance from the late Rev. Professor Townsend, S.F.T.C.D. The book was rewritten and considerably altered in accordance with his suggestions, and to that distinguished Geometer it is largely indebted for whatever merit it possesses.

The Questions for Examination in the early part of the First Book are intended as specimens, which the teacher ought to follow through the entire work. Every person who has had experience in tuition knows well the importance of such examinations in teaching Elementary Geometry.

The Exercises, of which there are over eight hundred, have been all selected with great care. Those in the body of each Book are intended as applications of Euclid's Propositions. They are for the most part of an elementary character, and may be regarded as common property, nearly every one of them having appeared already in previous collections. The Exercises at the end of each Book are more advanced; several are due to the late Professor Townsend, some are original, and a large number have been taken from two important French works—CATALAN'S *Théorèmes et Problèmes de Géométrie Élémentaire*, and the *Traité de Géométrie*, by ROUCHÉ and DE COMBEROUSSE.

The second edition has been thoroughly revised and greatly enlarged. The new matter includes several alternative proofs, important examination questions on each of the books, an explanation of the ratio of incommensurable quantities, the first twenty-one propositions of Book XI., and an Appendix on the properties of the Prism, Pyramids, Cylinder, Sphere, and Cone.

The present Edition has been very carefully read throughout, and it is hoped that few misprints have escaped detection.

The Editor is glad to find from the rapid sale of former editions (each 3000 copies) of his Book, and its general adoption in schools, that it is likely to

accomplish the double object with which it was written, viz. to supply students with a Manual that will impart a thorough knowledge of the immortal work of the great Greek Geometer, and introduce them, at the same time, to some of the most important conceptions and developments of the Geometry of the present day.

JOHN CASEY.

86, SOUTH CIRCULAR-ROAD, DUBLIN.  
*November, 1885.*

# Contents

INTRODUCTION, . . . . .	1
BOOK I.	
Theory of Angles, Triangles, Parallel Lines, and parallelograms., . . . . .	2
Definitions, . . . . .	2
Propositions I.—XLVIII., . . . . .	8
Questions for Examination, . . . . .	45
Exercises, . . . . .	46
BOOK II.	
Theory of Rectangles, . . . . .	49
Definitions, . . . . .	49
Propositions I.—XIV., . . . . .	50
Questions for Examination, . . . . .	65
Exercises, . . . . .	66
BOOK III.	
Theory of the Circle, . . . . .	68
Definitions, . . . . .	68
Propositions I.—XXXVII., . . . . .	69
Questions for Examination, . . . . .	97
Exercises, . . . . .	98
BOOK IV.	
Inscription and Circumscription of Triangles and of Regular Polygons in and about Circles, . . . . .	101
Definitions, . . . . .	101
Propositions I.—XVI., . . . . .	101
Questions for Examination, . . . . .	112
Exercises, . . . . .	112
BOOK V.	
Theory of Proportion, . . . . .	116

Definitions, . . . . .	116
Introduction, . . . . .	116
Propositions I.—XXV., . . . . .	121
Questions for Examination, . . . . .	133
Exercises, . . . . .	134

## BOOK VI.

Application of the Theory of Proportion, . . . . .	135
Definitions, . . . . .	135
Propositions I.—XXXIII., . . . . .	135
Questions for Examination, . . . . .	163

## BOOK XI.

Theory of Planes, Coplanar Lines, and Solid Angles, . . . . .	171
Definitions, . . . . .	171
Propositions I.—XXI., . . . . .	171
Exercises, . . . . .	181

## APPENDIX.

Prism, Pyramid, Cylinder, Sphere, and Cone, . . . . .	183
Definitions, . . . . .	183
Propositions I.—VII., . . . . .	183
Exercises, . . . . .	192

## NOTES.

A.—Modern theory of parallel lines, . . . . .	194
B.—Legendre's proof of Euclid, I., XXXII., . . . . .	194
,, Hamilton's     ,, . . . . .	195
C.—To inscribe a regular polygon of seventeen sides in a circle—Ampere's solution simplified, . . . . .	196
D.—To find two mean proportionals between two given lines—Philo's so- lution, . . . . .	197
,, Newton's solution, . . . . .	197
E.—M'Cullagh's proof of the minimum property of Philo's line, . . . . .	198
F.—On the trisection of an angle by the ruler and compass, . . . . .	199
G.—On the quadrature of the circle, . . . . .	200
Conclusion, . . . . .	202

# THE ELEMENTS OF EUCLID.

---

## INTRODUCTION.

Geometry is the Science of figured Space. Figured Space is of one, two, or three dimensions, according as it consists of lines, surfaces, or solids. The boundaries of solids are surfaces; of surfaces, lines; and of lines, points. Thus it is the province of Geometry to investigate the properties of solids, of surfaces, and of the figures described on surfaces. The simplest of all surfaces is the plane, and that department of Geometry which is occupied with the lines and curves drawn on a plane is called *Plane Geometry*; that which demonstrates the properties of solids, of curved surfaces, and the figures described on curved surfaces, is *Geometry of Three Dimensions*. The simplest lines that can be drawn on a plane are the right line and circle, and the study of the properties of the point, the right line, and the circle, is the introduction to Geometry, of which it forms an extensive and important department. This is the part of Geometry on which the oldest Mathematical Book in existence, namely, Euclid's *Elements*, is written, and is the subject of the present volume. The *conic sections* and *other curves* that can be described on a plane form special branches, and complete the divisions of this, the most comprehensive of all the Sciences. The student will find in Chasles' *Aperçu Historique* a valuable history of the origin and the development of the methods of Geometry.

---

In the following work, when figures are not drawn, the student should construct them from the given directions. The Propositions of Euclid will be printed in larger type, and will be referred to by Roman numerals enclosed in brackets. Thus [III. xxxii.] will denote the 32nd Proposition of the 3rd Book. The number of the Book will be given only when different from that under which the reference occurs. The general and the particular enunciation of every Proposition will be given in one. By omitting the letters enclosed in parentheses we have the general enunciation, and by reading them, the particular. The annotations will be printed in smaller type. The following symbols will be used in them:—

Circle	will be denoted by	○
Triangle	"	△
Parallelogram	"	□
Parallel lines	"	
Perpendicular	"	⊥

In addition to these we shall employ the usual symbols +, −, &c. of Algebra, and also the sign of congruence, namely  $\equiv$ . This symbol has been introduced by the illustrious Gauss.

## BOOK I.

### THEORY OF ANGLES, TRIANGLES, PARALLEL LINES, AND PARALLELOGRAMS.

---

#### DEFINITIONS.

##### THE POINT.

I. A point is that which has position but not dimensions.

A geometrical magnitude which has three dimensions, that is, length, breadth, and thickness, is a solid; that which has two dimensions, such as length and breadth, is a surface; and that which has but one dimension is a line. But a point is neither a solid, nor a surface, nor a line; hence it has no dimensions—that is, it has neither length, breadth, nor thickness.

##### THE LINE.

II. A line is length without breadth.

A line is space of one dimension. If it had any breadth, no matter how small, it would be space of two dimensions; and if in addition it had any thickness it would be space of three dimensions; hence a line has neither breadth nor thickness.

III. The intersections of lines and their extremities are points.

IV. A line which lies evenly between its extreme  points is called a straight or right line, such as  $AB$ .

If a point move without changing its direction it will describe a right line. The direction in which a point moves is called its “sense.” If the moving point continually changes its direction it will describe a curve; hence it follows that only one right line can be drawn between two points. The following Illustration is due to Professor Henrici:—“If we suspend a weight by a string, the string becomes stretched, and we say it is straight, by which we mean to express that it has assumed a peculiar definite shape. If we mentally abstract from this string all thickness, we obtain the notion of the simplest of all lines, which we call a straight line.”

##### THE PLANE.

v. A surface is that which has length and breadth.

A surface is space of two dimensions. It has no thickness, for if it had any, however small, it would be space of three dimensions.

VI. When a surface is such that the right line joining any two arbitrary points in it lies wholly in the surface, it is called a *plane*.

A plane is perfectly flat and even, like the surface of still water, or of a smooth floor.—NEWCOMB.

## FIGURES.

VII. Any combination of points, of lines, or of points and lines in a plane, is called a *plane* figure. If a figure be formed of points only it is called a *stigmatic* figure; and if of right lines only, a *rectilineal* figure.

VIII. Points which lie on the same right line are called *collinear* points. A figure formed of collinear points is called a *row* of points.

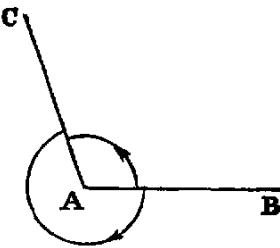
## THE ANGLE.

IX. The inclination of two right lines extending out from one point in different directions is called a *rectilineal* angle.

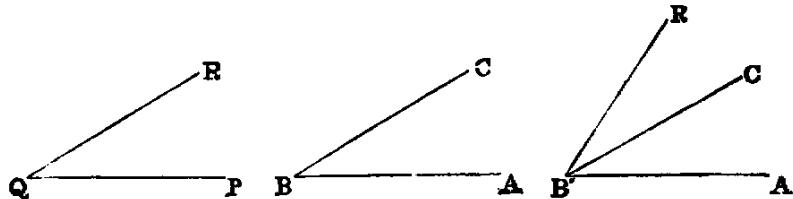
X. The two lines are called the *legs*, and the point the *vertex* of the angle.

A right line drawn from the vertex and turning about it in the plane of the angle, from the position of coincidence with one leg to that of coincidence with the other, is said to turn through the angle, and the angle is the greater as the quantity of turning is the greater. Again, since the line may turn from one position to the other in either of two ways, two angles are formed by two lines drawn from a point.

Thus if  $AB$ ,  $AC$  be the legs, a line may turn from the position  $AB$  to the position  $AC$  in the two ways indicated by the arrows. The smaller of the angles thus formed is to be understood as the angle contained by the lines. The larger, called a *re-entrant* angle, seldom occurs in the "Elements."

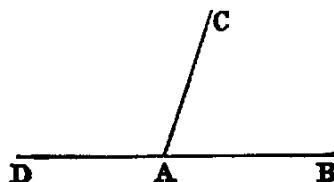


XI. *Designation of Angles*.—A particular angle in a figure is denoted by three letters, as  $BAC$ , of which the middle one,  $A$ , is at the vertex, and the other two along the legs. The angle is then read  $BAC$ .



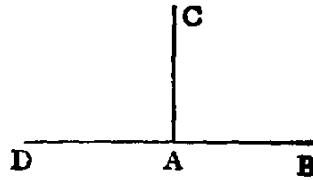
XII. The angle formed by joining two or more angles together is called their *sum*. Thus the sum of the two angles  $ABC$ ,  $PQR$  is the angle  $AB'R$ , formed by applying the side  $QP$  to the side  $BC$ , so that the vertex  $Q$  shall fall on the vertex  $B$ , and the side  $QR$  on the opposite side of  $BC$  from  $BA$ .

XIII. When the sum of two angles  $BAC$ ,  $CAD$  is such that the legs  $BA$ ,  $AD$  form one right line, they are called *supplements* of each other.



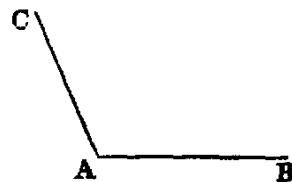
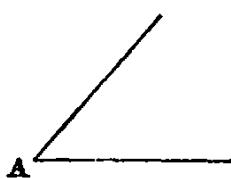
Hence, when one line stands on another, the two angles which it makes on the same side of that on which it stands are supplements of each other.

XIV. When one line stands on another, and makes the adjacent angles at both sides of itself equal, each of the angles is called a *right angle*, and the line which stands on the other is called a *perpendicular* to it.



Hence a right angle is equal to its supplement.

XV. An *acute angle* is one which is less than a right angle, as *A*.

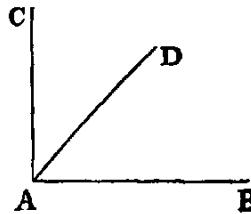


XVI. An *obtuse angle* is one which is greater than a right angle, as *BAC*.

The supplement of an acute angle is obtuse, and conversely, the supplement of an obtuse angle is acute.

XVII. When the sum of two angles is a right angle, each is called the *complement* of the other. Thus, if the angle *BAC* be right, the angles *BAD*, *DAC* are complements of each other.

#### CONCURRENT LINES.



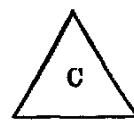
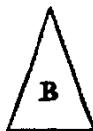
XVIII. Three or more right lines passing through the same point are called *concurrent lines*.

XIX. A system of more than three concurrent lines is called a *pencil* of lines. Each line of a pencil is called a *ray*, and the common point through which the rays pass is called the *vertex*.

#### THE TRIANGLE.

XX. A *triangle* is a figure formed by three right lines joined end to end. The three lines are called its *sides*.

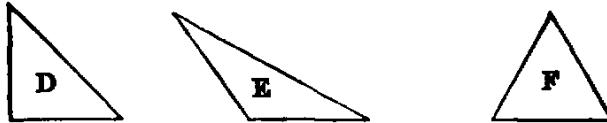
XXI. A triangle whose three sides are unequal is said to be *scalene*, as *A*; a triangle having two sides equal, to be *isosceles*, as *B*; and having all its sides equal, to be *equilateral*, as *C*.



XXII. A *right-angled triangle* is one that has one of its angles a right angle, as *D*. The side which subtends the right angle is called the *hypotenuse*.

XXIII. An *obtuse-angled* triangle is one that has one of its angles obtuse, as *E*.

XXIV. An *acute-angled* triangle is one that has its three angles acute, as *F*.



XXV. An *exterior* angle of a triangle is one that is formed by any side and the continuation of another side.

Hence a triangle has six exterior angles; and also each exterior angle is the supplement of the adjacent interior angle.

#### THE POLYGON.

XXVI. A *rectilineal* figure bounded by more than three right lines is usually called a polygon.

XXVII. A polygon is said to be *convex* when it has no re-entrant angle.

XXVIII. A polygon of four sides is called a *quadrilateral*.

XXIX. A quadrilateral whose four sides are equal is called a *lozenge*.

XXX. A lozenge which has a right angle is called a *square*.

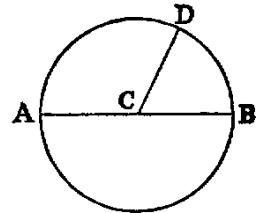
XXXI. A polygon which has five sides is called a *pentagon*; one which has six sides, a *hexagon*, and so on.

#### THE CIRCLE.

XXXII. A *circle* is a plane figure formed by a curved line called the *circumference*, and is such that all right lines drawn from a certain point within the figure to the circumference are equal to one another. This point is called the *centre*.

XXXIII. A *radius* of a circle is any right line drawn from the centre to the circumference, such as *CD*.

XXXIV. A *diameter* of a circle is a right line drawn through the centre and terminated both ways by the circumference, such as *AB*.



From the definition of a circle it follows at once that the path of a movable point in a plane which remains at a constant distance from a fixed point is a circle; also that any point *P* in the plane is inside, outside, or on the circumference of a circle according as its distance from the centre is *less* than, *greater* than, or *equal* to, the radius.

#### POSTULATES.

Let it be granted that—

I. A right line may be drawn from any one point to any other point.

When we consider a straight line contained between two fixed points which are its ends, such a portion is called a *finite straight line*.

II. A terminated right line may be produced to any length in a right line.

Every right line may extend without limit in either direction or in both. It is in these cases called an *indefinite* line. By this postulate a finite right line may be supposed to be produced, whenever we please, into an indefinite right line.

III. A circle may be described from any centre, and with any distance from that centre as radius.

If there be two points *A* and *B*, and if with any instruments, such as a ruler and pen, we draw a line from *A* to *B*, this will evidently have some irregularities, and also some breadth and thickness. Hence it will not be a geometrical line no matter how nearly it may approach to one. This is the reason that Euclid postulates the drawing of a right line from one point to another. For if it could be accurately done there would be no need for his asking us to let it be granted. Similar observations apply to the other postulates. It is also worthy of remark that Euclid never takes for granted the doing of anything for which a geometrical construction, founded on other problems or on the foregoing postulates, can be given.

#### AXIOMS.

I. Things which are equal to the same, or to equals, are equal to each other.

Thus, if there be three things, and if the first, and the second, be each equal to the third, we infer by this axiom that the first is equal to the second. This axiom relates to all kinds of magnitude. The same is true of Axioms II., III., IV., V., VI., VII., IX.; but VIII., X., XI., XII., are strictly geometrical.

II. If equals be added to equals the sums will be equal.

III. If equals be taken from equals the remainders will be equal.

IV. If equals be added to unequals the sums will be unequal.

V. If equals be taken from unequals the remainders will be unequal.

VI. The doubles of equal magnitudes are equal.

VII. The halves of equal magnitudes are equal.

VIII. Magnitudes that can be made to coincide are equal.

The placing of one geometrical magnitude on another, such as a line on a line, a triangle on a triangle, or a circle on a circle, &c., is called *superposition*. The superposition employed in Geometry is only *mental*, that is, we conceive one magnitude placed on the other; and then, if we can prove that they coincide, we infer, by the present axiom, that they are equal. Superposition involves the following principle, of which, without explicitly stating it, Euclid makes frequent use:—"Any figure may be transferred from one position to another without change of form or size."

IX. The whole is greater than its part.

This axiom is included in the following, which is a fuller statement:—

IX'. The whole is equal to the sum of all its parts.

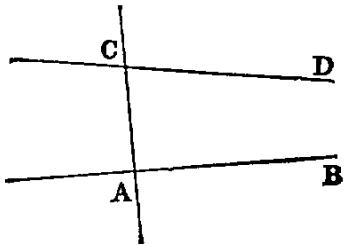
X. Two right lines cannot enclose a space.

This is equivalent to the statement, "If two right lines have two points common to both, they coincide in direction," that is, they form but one line, and this holds true even when one of the points is at infinity.

XI. All right angles are equal to one another.

This can be proved as follows:—Let there be two right lines *AB*, *CD*, and two perpendiculars to them, namely, *EF*, *GH*, then if *AB*, *CD* be made to coincide by superposition, so that the point *E* will coincide with *G*; then since a right angle is equal to its supplement, the line *EF* must coincide with *GH*. Hence the angle *AEF* is equal to *CGH*.

XII. If two right lines (*AB*, *CD*) meet a third line (*AC*), so as to make the sum of the two interior angles (*BAC*, *ACD*) on the same side less than two right angles, these lines being produced shall meet at some *finite distance*.



This axiom is the converse of Prop. XVII., Book I.

#### EXPLANATION OF TERMS.

*Axioms.*—“Elements of human reason,” according to DUGALD STEWART, are certain general propositions, the truths of which are self-evident, and which are so fundamental, that they cannot be inferred from any propositions which are more elementary; in other words, they are incapable of demonstration. “That two sides of a triangle are greater than the third” is, perhaps, self-evident; but it is not an axiom, inasmuch as it can be inferred by demonstration from other propositions; but we can give no proof of the proposition that “things which are equal to the same are equal to one another,” and, being self-evident, it is an axiom.

*Propositions* which are not axioms are properties of figures obtained by processes of reasoning. They are divided into theorems and problems.

A *Theorem* is the formal statement of a property that may be demonstrated from known propositions. These propositions may themselves be theorems or axioms. A theorem consists of two parts, the *hypothesis*, or that which is assumed, and the *conclusion*, or that which is asserted to follow therefrom. Thus, in the typical theorem,

$$\text{If } X \text{ is } Y, \text{ then } Z \text{ is } W, \quad (\text{I.})$$

the hypothesis is that  $X$  is  $Y$ , and the conclusion is that  $Z$  is  $W$ .

*Converse Theorems.*—Two theorems are said to be converse, each of the other, when the hypothesis of either is the conclusion of the other. Thus the converse of the theorem (I.) is—

$$\text{If } Z \text{ is } W, \text{ then } X \text{ is } Y. \quad (\text{II.})$$

From the two theorems (I.) and (II.) we may infer two others, called their *contrapositives*. Thus the contrapositive

$$\text{of (I.) is, If } Z \text{ is not } W, \text{ then } X \text{ is not } Y; \quad (\text{III.})$$

$$\text{of (II.) is, If } X \text{ is not } Y, \text{ then } Z \text{ is not } W. \quad (\text{IV.})$$

The theorem (IV.) is called the *obverse* of (I.), and (III.) the obverse of (II.).

A *Problem* is a proposition in which something is proposed to be done, such as a line to be drawn, or a figure to be constructed, under some given conditions.

The *Solution* of a problem is the method of construction which accomplishes the required end.

The *Demonstration* is the proof, in the case of a theorem, that the conclusion follows from the hypothesis; and in the case of a problem, that the construction accomplishes the object proposed.

The *Enunciation* of a problem consists of two parts, namely, the *data*, or things supposed to be given, and the *quaesita*, or things required to be done.

*Postulates* are the elements of geometrical construction, and occupy the same relation with respect to problems as axioms do to theorems.

A *Corollary* is an inference or deduction from a proposition.

A *Lemma* is an auxiliary proposition required in the demonstration of a principal proposition.

A *Secant* or *Transversal* is a line which cuts a system of lines, a circle, or any other geometrical figure.

*Congruent* figures are those that can be made to coincide by superposition. They agree in shape and size, but differ in position. Hence it follows, by Axiom VIII., that corresponding parts or portions of congruent figures are congruent, and that congruent figures are equal in every respect.

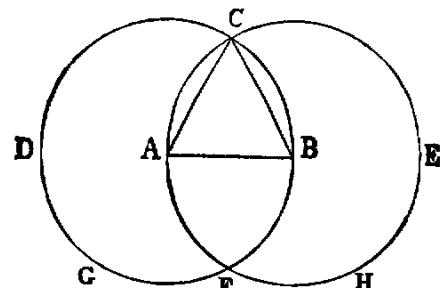
*Rule of Identity*.—Under this name the following principle will be sometimes referred to:—"If there is but one  $X$  and one  $Y$ , then, from the fact that  $X$  is  $Y$ , it necessarily follows that  $Y$  is  $X$ ."—SYLLABUS.

#### PROP. I.—PROBLEM.

*On a given finite right line ( $AB$ ) to construct an equilateral triangle.*

**Sol.**—With  $A$  as centre, and  $AB$  as radius, describe the circle  $BCD$  (Post. III.). With  $B$  as centre, and  $BA$  as radius, describe the circle  $ACE$ , cutting the former circle in  $C$ . Join  $CA$ ,  $CB$  (Post. I.). Then  $ABC$  is the equilateral triangle required.

**Dem.**—Because  $A$  is the centre of the circle  $BCD$ ,  $AC$  is equal to  $AB$  (Def. xxxii.). Again, because  $B$  is the centre of the circle  $ACE$ ,  $BC$  is equal to  $BA$ . Hence we have proved.



$$AC = AB,$$

and

$$BC = AB.$$

But things which are equal to the same are equal to one another (Axiom I.); therefore  $AC$  is equal to  $BC$ ; therefore the three lines  $AB$ ,  $BC$ ,  $CA$  are equal to one another. Hence the triangle  $ABC$  is equilateral (Def. xxii.); and it is described on the given line  $AB$ , which was required to be done.

### Questions for Examination.

1. What is the *datum* in this proposition?
  2. What is the *quaesitum*?
  3. What is a finite right line?
  4. What is the opposite of finite?
  5. In what part of the construction is the third postulate quoted? and for what purpose?
- Where is the first postulate quoted?
6. Where is the first axiom quoted?
  7. What use is made of the definition of a circle? What is a circle?
  8. What is an equilateral triangle?

### Exercises.

The following exercises are to be solved when the pupil has mastered the First Book:—

1. If the lines  $AF$ ,  $BF$  be joined, the figure  $ACBF$  is a lozenge.
2. If  $AB$  be produced to  $D$  and  $E$ , the triangles  $CDF$  and  $CEF$  are equilateral.
3. If  $CA$ ,  $CB$  be produced to meet the circles again in  $G$  and  $H$ , the points  $G$ ,  $F$ ,  $H$  are collinear, and the triangle  $GCH$  is equilateral.
4. If  $CF$  be joined,  $CF^2 = 3AB^2$ .
5. Describe a circle in the space  $ACB$ , bounded by the line  $AB$  and the two circles.

### PROP. II.—PROBLEM.

*From a given point (A) to draw a right line equal to a given finite right line (BC).*

**Sol.**—Join  $AB$  (Post. I.); on  $AB$  describe the equilateral triangle  $ABD$  [I.]. With  $B$  as centre, and  $BC$  as radius, describe the circle  $ECH$  (Post III.). Produce  $DB$  to meet the circle  $ECH$  in  $E$  (Post. II.). With  $D$  as centre, and  $DE$  as radius, describe the circle  $EFG$  (Post. III.). Produce  $DA$  to meet this circle in  $F$ .  $AF$  is equal to  $BC$ .

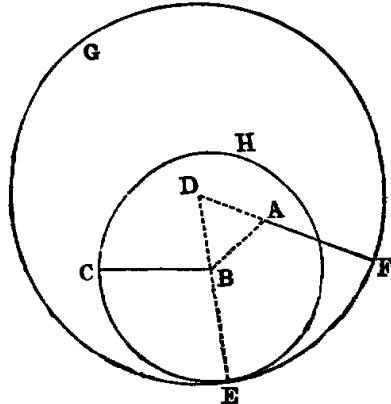
**Dem.**—Because  $D$  is the centre of the circle  $EFG$ ,  $DF$  is equal to  $DE$  (Def. XXXII.). And because  $DAB$  is an equilateral triangle,  $DA$  is equal to  $DB$  (Def. XXI.). Hence we have

$$DF = DE,$$

and

$$DA = DB;$$

and taking the latter from the former, the remainder  $AF$  is equal to the remainder  $BE$  (Axiom III.). Again, because  $B$  is the centre of the circle  $ECH$ ,  $BC$  is equal to  $BE$ ; and we have proved that  $AF$  is equal to  $BE$ ; and things which are equal to the same thing are equal to one another (Axiom I.). Hence  $AF$



is equal to  $BC$ . Therefore from the given point  $A$  the line  $AF$  has been drawn equal to  $BC$ .

It is usual with commentators on Euclid to say that he allows the use of the *rule* and *compass*. Were such the case this Proposition would have been unnecessary. The fact is, Euclid's object was to teach Theoretical and not Practical Geometry, and the only things he postulates are the drawing of right lines and the describing of circles. If he allowed the mechanical use of the rule and compass he could give methods of solving many problems that go beyond the limits of the "geometry of the point, line, and circle."—See Notes D, F at the end of this work.

#### Exercises.

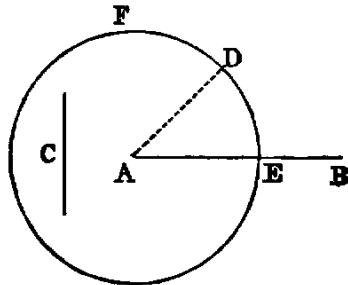
1. Solve the problem when the point  $A$  is in the line  $BC$  itself.
2. Inflect from a given point  $A$  to a given line  $BC$  a line equal to a given line. State the number of solutions.

#### PROP. III.—PROBLEM.

*From the greater (AB) of two given right lines to cut off a part equal to (C) the less.*

**Sol.**—From  $A$ , one of the extremities of  $AB$ , draw the right line  $AD$  equal to  $C$  [II.]; and with  $A$  as centre, and  $AD$  as radius, describe the circle  $EDF$  (Post. III.) cutting  $AB$  in  $E$ .  $AE$  shall be equal to  $C$ .

**Dem.**—Because  $A$  is the centre of the circle  $EDF$ ,  $AE$  is equal to  $AD$  (Def. xxxii.), and  $C$  is equal to  $AD$  (const.); and things which are equal to the same are equal to one another (Axiom I.); therefore  $AE$  is equal to  $C$ . *Wherefore from AB, the greater of the two given lines, a part, AE, has been cut off equal to C, the less.*



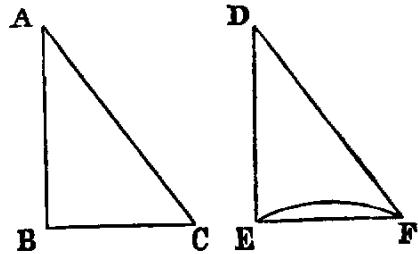
#### Questions for Examination.

1. What previous problem is employed in the solution of this?
2. What postulate?
3. What axiom in the demonstration?
4. Show how to produce the less of two given lines until the whole produced line becomes equal to the greater.

#### PROP. IV.—THEOREM.

*If two triangles (BAC, EDF) have two sides (BA, AC) of one equal respectively to two sides (ED, DF) of the other, and have also the angles (A, D) included by those sides equal, the triangles shall be equal in every respect—that is, their bases or third sides (BC, EF) shall be equal, and the angles (B, C) at the base of one shall be respectively equal to the angles (E, F) at the base of the other; namely, those shall be equal to which the equal sides are opposite.*

**Dem.**—Let us conceive the triangle  $BAC$  to be applied to  $EDF$ , so that the point  $A$  shall coincide with  $D$ , and the line  $AB$  with  $DE$ , and that the point  $C$  shall be on the same side of  $DE$  as  $F$ ; then because  $AB$  is equal to  $DE$ , the point  $B$  shall coincide with  $E$ . Again, because the angle  $BAC$  is equal to the angle  $EDF$ , the line  $AC$  shall coincide with  $DF$ ; and since  $AC$  is equal to  $DF$  (hyp.), the point  $C$  shall coincide with  $F$ ; and we have proved that the point  $B$  coincides with  $E$ . Hence two points of the line  $BC$  coincide with two points of the line  $EF$ ; and since two right lines cannot enclose a space,  $BC$  must coincide with  $EF$ . Hence the triangles agree in every respect; *therefore BC is equal to EF, the angle B is equal to the angle E, the angle C to the angle F, and the triangle BAC to the triangle EDF.*



#### Questions for Examination.

1. How many parts in the hypothesis of this Proposition? *Ans.* Three. Name them.
2. How many in the conclusion? Name them.
3. What technical term is applied to figures which agree in everything but position? *Ans.* They are said to be congruent.
4. What is meant by superposition?
5. What axiom is made use of in superposition?
6. How many parts in a triangle? *Ans.* Six; namely, three sides and three angles.
7. When it is required to prove that two triangles are congruent, how many parts of one must be given equal to corresponding parts of the other? *Ans.* In general, any three except the three angles. This will be established in Props. VIII. and XXVI., taken along with IV.
8. What property of two lines having two common points is quoted in this Proposition? They must coincide.

#### Exercises.

1. The line that bisects the vertical angle of an isosceles triangle bisects the base perpendicularly.
2. If two adjacent sides of a quadrilateral be equal, and the diagonal bisects the angle between them, their other sides are equal.
3. If two lines be at right angles, and if each bisect the other, then any point in either is equally distant from the extremities of the other.
4. If equilateral triangles be described on the sides of any triangle, the distances between the vertices of the original triangle and the opposite vertices of the equilateral triangles are equal. (This Proposition should be proved after the student has read Prop. xxxii.)

#### PROP. V.—THEOREM.

*The angles ( $ABC$ ,  $ACB$ ) at the base ( $BC$ ) of an isosceles triangle are equal to one another, and if the equal sides ( $AB$ ,  $AC$ ) be produced, the external angles ( $DBC$ ,  $ECB$ ) below the base shall be equal.*

**Dem.**—In  $BD$  take any point  $F$ , and from  $AE$ , the greater, cut off  $AG$  equal to  $AF$  [III]. Join  $BG$ ,  $CF$  (Post. 1.). Because  $AF$  is equal to  $AG$  (const.), and  $AC$  is equal to  $AB$  (hyp.), the two triangles  $FAC$ ,  $GAB$  have the sides  $FA$ ,  $AC$  in one respectively equal to the sides  $GA$ ,  $AB$  in the other; and the included angle  $A$  is common to both triangles. Hence [IV.] the base  $FC$  is equal to  $GB$ , the angle  $AFC$  is equal to  $AGB$ , and the angle  $ACF$  is equal to the angle  $ABG$ .

Again, because  $AF$  is equal to  $AG$  (const.), and  $AB$  to  $AC$  (hyp.), the remainder,  $BF$ , is equal to  $CG$  (Axiom III); and we have proved that  $FC$  is equal to  $GB$ , and the angle  $BFC$  equal to the angle  $CGB$ . Hence the two triangles  $BFC$ ,  $CGB$  have the two sides  $BF$ ,  $FC$  in one equal to the two sides  $CG$ ,  $GB$  in the other; and the angle  $BFC$  contained by the two sides of one equal to the angle  $CGB$  contained by the two sides of the other. Therefore [IV.] these triangles have the angle  $FBC$  equal to the angle  $GCB$ , and these are the angles below the base. Also the angle  $FCB$  equal to  $GBC$ ; but the whole angle  $FCA$  has been proved equal to the whole angle  $GBA$ . Hence the remaining angle  $ACB$  is equal to the remaining angle  $ABC$ , and these are the angles at the base.

**Observation.**—The great difficulty which beginners find in this Proposition is due to the fact that the two triangles  $ACF$ ,  $ABG$  overlap each other. The teacher should make these triangles separate, as in the annexed diagram, and point out the corresponding parts thus:—

$$\begin{aligned} AF &= AG, \\ AC &= AB; \\ \text{angle } FAC &= \text{angle } GAB. \end{aligned}$$

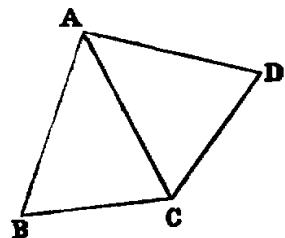
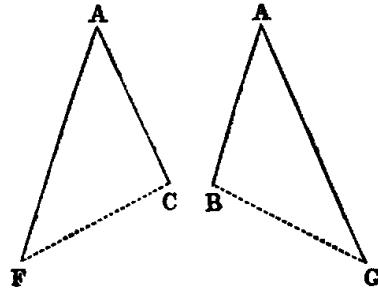
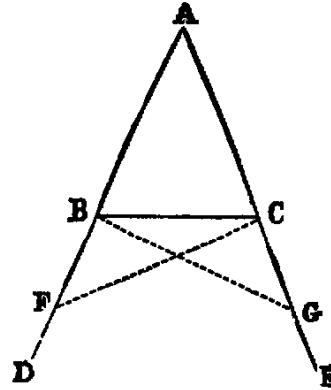
Hence [IV.],  
and  
angle  $ACF$  = angle  $ABG$ .

angle  $AFC$  = angle  $AGB$ .

The student should also be shown how to apply one of the triangles to the other, so as to bring them into coincidence. Similar Illustrations may be given of the triangles  $BFC$ ,  $CGB$ .

The following is a very easy proof of this Proposition. Conceive the  $\triangle ACB$  to be turned, without alteration, round the line  $AC$ , until it falls on the other side. Let  $ACD$  be its new position; then the angle  $ADC$  of the displaced triangle is evidently equal to the angle  $ABC$ , with which it originally coincided. Again, the two  $\triangle s$   $BAC$ ,  $CAD$  have the sides  $BA$ ,  $AC$  of one respectively equal to the sides  $AC$ ,  $AD$  of the other, and the included angles equal; therefore [IV.] the angle  $ACB$  opposite to the side  $AB$  is equal to the angle  $ADC$  opposite to the side  $AC$ ; but the angle  $ADC$  is equal to  $ABC$ ; therefore  $ACB$  is equal to  $ABC$ .

*Cor.*—Every equilateral triangle is equiangular.



**DEF.**—*A line in any figure, such as  $AC$  in the preceding diagram, which is such that, by folding the plane of the figure round it, one part of the diagram will coincide with the other, is called an AXIS OF SYMMETRY of the figure.*

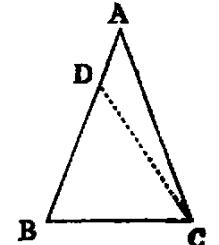
### Exercises.

1. Prove that the angles at the base are equal without producing the sides. Also by producing the sides through the vertex.
2. Prove that the line joining the point  $A$  to the intersection of the lines  $CF$  and  $BG$  is an axis of symmetry of the figure.
3. If two isosceles triangles be on the same base, and be either at the same or at opposite sides of it, the line joining their vertices is an axis of symmetry of the figure formed by them.
4. Show how to prove this Proposition by assuming as an axiom that every angle has a bisector.
5. Each diagonal of a lozenge is an axis of symmetry of the lozenge.
6. If three points be taken on the sides of an equilateral triangle, namely, one on each side, at equal distances from the angles, the lines joining them form a new equilateral triangle.

### PROP. VI.—THEOREM.

*If two angles ( $B$ ,  $C$ ) of a triangle be equal, the sides ( $AC$ ,  $AB$ ) opposite to them are also equal.*

**Dem.**—If  $AB$ ,  $AC$  are not equal, one must be greater than the other. Suppose  $AB$  is the greater, and that the part  $BD$  is equal to  $AC$ . Join  $CD$  (Post. I.). Then the two triangles  $DBC$ ,  $ACB$  have  $BD$  equal to  $AC$ , and  $BC$  common to both. Therefore the two sides  $DB$ ,  $BC$  in one are equal to the two sides  $AC$ ,  $CB$  in the other; and the angle  $DBC$  in one is equal to the angle  $ACB$  in the other (hyp.). Therefore [iv.] the triangle  $DBC$  is equal to the triangle  $ACB$ —the less to the greater, which is absurd; hence  $AC$ ,  $AB$  are not unequal, that is, they are equal.



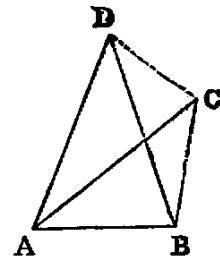
### Questions for Examination.

1. What is the hypothesis in this Proposition?
2. What Proposition is this the converse of?
3. What is the obverse of this Proposition?
4. What is the obverse of Prop. v.?
5. What is meant by an indirect proof?
6. How does Euclid generally prove converse Propositions?
7. What false assumption is made in the demonstration?
8. What does this assumption lead to?

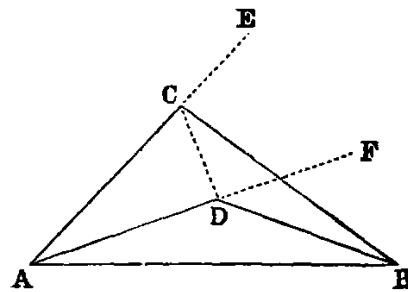
### PROP. VII—THEOREM.

*If two triangles ( $ACB$ ,  $ADB$ ) on the same base ( $AB$ ) and on the same side of it have one pair of conterminous sides ( $AC$ ,  $AD$ ) equal to one another, the other pair of conterminous sides ( $BC$ ,  $BD$ ) must be unequal.*

**Dem.**—1. Let the vertex of each triangle be without the other. Join  $CD$ . Then because  $AD$  is equal to  $AC$  (hyp.), the triangle  $ACD$  is isosceles; therefore [v.] the angle  $ACD$  is equal to the angle  $ADC$ ; but  $ADC$  is greater than  $BDC$  (Axiom IX.); therefore  $ACD$  is greater than  $BDC$ : much, more is  $BCD$  greater than  $BDC$ . Now if the side  $BD$  were equal to  $BC$ , the angle  $BCD$  would be equal to  $BDC$  [v.]; but it has been proved to be greater. Hence  $BD$  is not equal to  $BC$ .



2. Let the vertex of one triangle  $ADB$  fall within the other triangle  $ACB$ . Produce the sides  $AC$ ,  $AD$  to  $E$  and  $F$ . Then because  $AC$  is equal to  $AD$  (hyp.), the triangle  $ACD$  is isosceles, and [v.] the external angles  $ECD$ ,  $FDC$  at the other side of the base  $CD$  are equal; but  $ECD$  is greater than  $BCD$  (Axiom IX.). Therefore  $FDC$  is greater than  $BCD$ : much more is  $BDC$  greater than  $BCD$ ; but if  $BC$  were equal to  $BD$ , the angle  $BDC$  would be equal to  $BCD$  [v.]; therefore  $BC$  cannot be equal to  $BD$ .



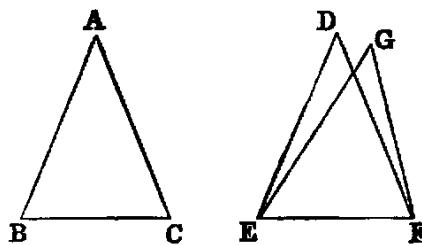
3. If the vertex  $D$  of the second triangle fall on the line  $BC$ , it is evident that  $BC$  and  $BD$  are unequal.

#### Questions for Examination.

1. What use is made of Prop. VII.? *Ans.* As a lemma to Prop. VIII.
2. In the demonstration of Prop. VII. the contrapositive of Prop. V. occurs; show where.
3. Show that two circles can intersect each other only in one point on the same side of the line joining their centres, and hence that two circles cannot have more than two points of intersection.

#### PROP. VIII.—THEOREM.

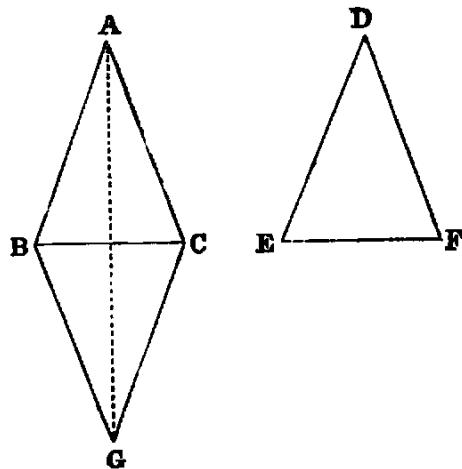
If two triangles ( $ABC$ ,  $DEF$ ) have two sides ( $AB$ ,  $AC$ ) of one respectively equal to two sides ( $DE$ ,  $DF$ ) of the other, and have also the base ( $BC$ ) of one equal to the base ( $EF$ ) of the other; then the two triangles shall be equal, and the angles of one shall be respectively equal to the angles of the other—namely, those shall be equal to which the equal sides are opposite.



**Dem.**—Let the triangle  $ABC$  be applied to  $DEF$ , so that the point  $B$  will coincide with  $E$ , and the line  $BC$  with the line  $EF$ ; then because  $BC$  is equal to  $EF$ , the point  $C$  shall coincide with  $F$ . Then if the vertex  $A$  fall on the same

side of  $EF$  as the vertex  $D$ , the point  $A$  must coincide with  $D$ ; for if not, let it take a different position  $G$ ; then we have  $EG$  equal to  $BA$ , and  $BA$  is equal to  $ED$  (hyp.). Hence (Axiom I.)  $EG$  is equal to  $ED$ : in like manner,  $FG$  is equal to  $FD$ , and this is impossible [vii.]. Hence the point  $A$  must coincide with  $D$ , and the triangle  $ABC$  agrees in every respect with the triangle  $DEF$ ; and therefore the three angles of one are respectively equal to the three angles of the other—namely,  $A$  to  $D$ ,  $B$  to  $E$ , and  $C$  to  $F$ , and the two triangles are equal.

This Proposition is the converse of IV., and is the second case of the congruence of triangles in the Elements.



*Philo's Proof.*—Let the equal bases be applied as in the foregoing proof, but let the vertices be on the opposite sides; then let  $BGC$  be the position which  $EDF$  takes. Join  $AG$ . Then because  $BG = BA$ , the angle  $BAG = BGA$ . In like manner the angle  $CAG = CGA$ . Hence the whole angle  $BAC = BGC$ ; but  $BGC = EDF$  therefore  $BAC = EDF$ .

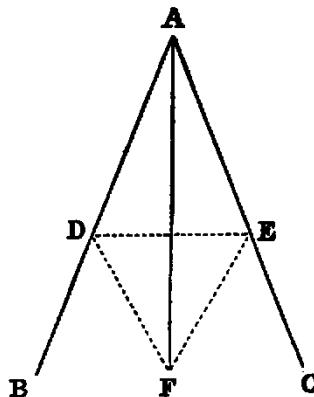
#### PROP. IX.—PROBLEM.

*To bisect a given rectilineal angle ( $BAC$ ).*

**Sol.**—In  $AB$  take any point  $D$ , and cut off [III.]  $AE$  equal to  $AD$ . Join  $DE$  (Post. I.), and upon it, on the side remote from  $A$ , describe the equilateral triangle  $DEF$  [I.] Join  $AF$ .  $AF$  bisects the given angle  $BAC$ .

**Dem.**—The triangles  $DAF$ ,  $EAF$  have the side  $AD$  equal to  $AE$  (const.) and  $AF$  common; therefore the two sides  $DA$ ,  $AF$  are respectively equal to  $EA$ ,  $AF$ , and the base  $DF$  is equal to the base  $EF$ , because they are the sides of an equilateral triangle (Def. xxi.). Therefore [viii.] the angle  $DAF$  is equal to the angle  $EAF$ ; hence the angle  $BAC$  is bisected by the line  $AF$ .

**Cor.**—The line  $AF$  is an axis of symmetry of the figure.



Questions for Examination.

1. Why does Euclid describe the equilateral triangle on the side remote from  $A$ ?
2. In what case would the construction fail, if the equilateral triangle were described on the other side of  $DE$ ?

Exercises.

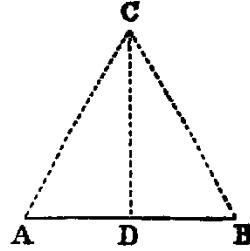
1. Prove this Proposition without using Prop. viii.
2. Prove that  $AF$  is perpendicular to  $DE$ .
3. Prove that any point in  $AF$  is equally distant from the points  $D$  and  $E$ .
4. Prove that any point in  $AF$  is equally distant from the lines  $AB$ ,  $AC$ .

PROP. X.—PROBLEM.

*To bisect a given finite right line ( $AB$ ).*

**Sol.**—Upon  $AB$  describe an equilateral triangle  $ACB$  [I.]. Bisect the angle  $ACB$  by the line  $CD$  [ix.], meeting  $AB$  in  $D$ , then  $AB$  is bisected in  $D$ .

**Dem.**—The two triangles  $ACD$ ,  $BCD$ , have the side  $AC$  equal to  $BC$ , being the sides of an equilateral triangle, and  $CD$  common. Therefore the two sides  $AC$ ,  $CD$  in one are equal to the two sides  $BC$ ,  $CD$  in the other; and the angle  $ACD$  is equal to the angle  $BCD$  (const.). Therefore the base  $AD$  is equal to the base  $DB$  [iv.]. Hence  $AB$  is bisected in  $D$ .



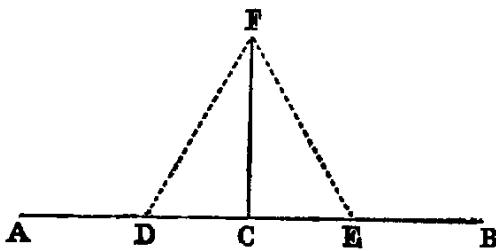
Exercises.

1. Show how to bisect a finite right line by describing two circles.
2. Every point equally distant from the points  $A$ ,  $B$  is in the line  $CD$ .

PROP. XI.—PROBLEM.

*From a given point ( $C$ ) in a given right line ( $AB$ ) to draw a right line perpendicular to the given line.*

**Sol.**—In  $AC$  take any point  $D$ , and make  $CE$  equal to  $CD$  [iii.]. Upon  $DE$  describe an equilateral triangle  $DFE$  [I.]. Join  $CF$ . Then  $CF$  shall be at right angles to  $AB$ .



**Dem.**—The two triangles  $DCF$ ,  $ECF$  have  $CD$  equal to  $CE$  (const.) and  $CF$  common; therefore the two sides  $CD$ ,  $CF$  in one are respectively equal to the two sides  $CE$ ,  $CF$  in the other, and the base  $DF$  is equal to the base  $EF$ , being the sides of an equilateral triangle (Def. xxi.); therefore [viii.] the angle  $DCF$  is equal to the angle  $ECF$ , and they are adjacent angles. Therefore (Def. xiii.) each of them is a right angle, and  $CF$  is perpendicular to  $AB$  at the point  $C$ .

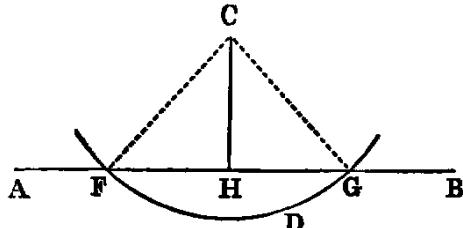
Exercises.

1. The diagonals of a lozenge bisect each other perpendicularly.
2. Prove Prop. xi. without using Prop. viii.
3. Erect a line at right angles to a given line at one of its extremities without producing the line.
4. Find a point in a given line that shall be equally distant from two given points.
5. Find a point in a given line such that, if it be joined to two given points on opposite sides of the line, the angle formed by the joining lines shall be bisected by the given line.
6. Find a point that shall be equidistant from three given points.

PROP. XII.—PROBLEM.

*To draw a perpendicular to a given indefinite right line (AB) from a given point (C) without it.*

**Sol.**—Take any point  $D$  on the other side of  $AB$ , and describe (Post. iii.) a circle, with  $C$  as centre, and  $CD$  as radius, meeting  $AB$  in the points  $F$  and  $G$ . Bisect  $FG$  in  $H$  [x.]. Join  $CH$  (Post. i.).  $CH$  shall be at right angles to  $AB$ .



**Dem.**—Join  $CF, CG$ . Then the two triangles  $FHC, GHC$  have  $FH$  equal to  $GH$  (const.), and  $HC$  common; and the base  $CF$  equal to the base  $CG$ , being radii of the circle  $FDG$  (Def. xxxii.). Therefore the angle  $CHF$  is equal to the angle  $CHG$  [viii.], and, being adjacent angles, they are right angles (Def. xiii.). *Therefore  $CH$  is perpendicular to  $AB$ .*

Exercises.

1. Prove that the circle cannot meet  $AB$  in more than two points.
2. If one angle of a triangle be equal to the sum of the other two, the triangle can be divided into the sum of two isosceles triangles, and the base is equal to twice the line from its middle point to the opposite angle.

PROP. XIII.—THEOREM.

*The adjacent angles ( $ABC, ABD$ ) which one right line ( $AB$ ) standing on another ( $CD$ ) makes with it are either both right angles, or their sum is equal to two right angles.*

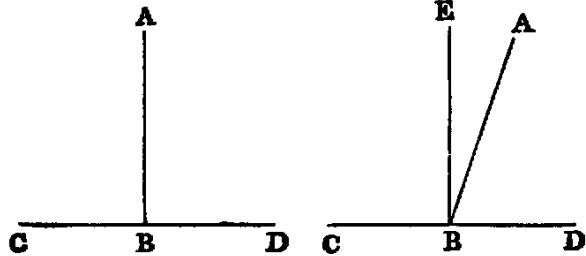


Fig. 1.

Fig. 2.

**Dem.**—If  $AB$  is perpendicular to  $CD$ , as in fig. 1, the angles  $ABC$ ,  $ABD$  are right angles. If not, draw  $BE$  perpendicular to  $CD$  [xi.]. Now the angle  $CBA$  is equal to the sum of the two angles  $CBE$ ,  $EBA$  (Def. xi.). Hence, adding the angle  $ABD$ , the sum of the angles  $CBA$ ,  $ABD$  is equal to the sum of the three angles  $CBE$ ,  $EBA$ ,  $ABD$ . In like manner, the sum of the angles  $CBE$ ,  $EBD$  is equal to the sum of the three angles  $CBE$ ,  $EBA$ ,  $ABD$ . And things which are equal to the same are equal to one another. Therefore the sum of the angles  $CBA$ ,  $ABD$  is equal to the sum of the angles  $CBE$ ,  $EBD$ ; but  $CBE$ ,  $EBD$  are right angles; *therefore the sum of the angles  $CBA$ ,  $ABD$  is two right angles.*

*Or thus:* Denote the angle  $EBA$  by  $\theta$ ; then evidently

$$\text{the angle } CBA = \text{right angle} + \theta;$$

$$\text{the angle } ABD = \text{right angle} - \theta;$$

$$\text{therefore } CBA + ABD = \text{two right angles.}$$

*Cor. 1.*—The sum of two supplemental angles is two right angles.

*Cor. 2.*—Two right lines cannot have a common segment.

*Cor. 3.*—The bisector of any angle bisects the corresponding re-entrant angle.

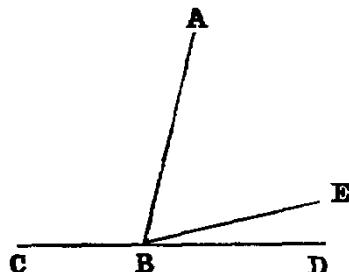
*Cor. 4.*—The bisectors of two supplemental angles are at right angles to each other.

*Cor. 5.*—The angle  $EBA$  is half the difference of the angles  $CBA$ ,  $ABD$ .

#### PROP. XIV.—THEOREM.

*If at a point (B) in a right line (BA) two other right lines (CB, BD) on opposite sides make the adjacent angles (CBA, ABD) together equal to two right angles, these two right lines form one continuous line.*

**Dem.**—If  $BD$  be not the continuation of  $CB$ , let  $BE$  be its continuation. Now, since  $CBE$  is a right line, and  $BA$  stands on it, the sum of the angles  $CBA$ ,  $ABE$  is two right angles (XIII.); and the sum of the angles  $CBA$ ,  $ABD$  is two right angles (hyp.);



therefore the sum of the angles  $CBA$ ,  $ABE$  is equal to the sum of the angles  $CBA$ ,  $ABD$ . Reject the angle  $CBA$ , which is common, and we have the angle  $ABE$  equal to the angle  $ABD$ —that is, a part equal to the whole—which is absurd. *Hence BD must be in the same right line with CB.*

#### PROP. XV.—THEOREM.

*If two right lines (AB, CD) intersect one another, the opposite angles are equal ( $CEA = DEB$ , and  $BEC = AED$ ).*

**Dem.**—Because the line  $AE$  stands on  $CD$ , the sum of the angles  $CEA$ ,  $AED$  is two right angles [XIII.]; and because the line  $CE$  stands on  $AB$ , the sum of the angles  $BEC$ ,  $CEA$  is two right angles; therefore the sum of the angles  $CEA$ ,  $AED$  is equal to the sum of the angles  $BEC$ ,  $CEA$ . Reject the angle  $CEA$ , which is common, and we have *the angle  $AED$  equal to  $BEC$ .* In like manner, *the angle  $CEA$  is equal to  $DEB$ .*

The foregoing proof may be briefly given, by saying that opposite angles are equal because they have a common supplement.

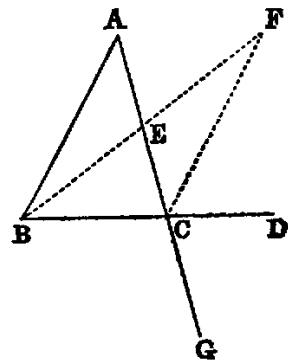
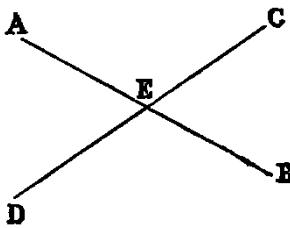
#### Questions for Examination on Props. XIII., XIV., XV.

1. What problem is required in Euclid's proof of Prop. XIII.?
2. What theorem? *Ans.* No theorem, only the axioms.
3. If two lines intersect, how many pairs of supplemental angles do they make?
4. What relation does Prop. XIV. bear to Prop. XIII.?
5. What three lines in Prop. XIV. are concurrent?
6. What caution is required in the enunciation of Prop. XIV.?
7. State the converse of Prop. XV. Prove it.
8. What is the subject of Props. XIII., XIV., XV.? *Ans.* Angles at a point.

#### PROP. XVI.—THEOREM.

*If any side (BC) of a triangle (ABC) be produced, the exterior angle (ACD) is greater than either of the interior non-adjacent angles.*

**Dem.**—Bisect  $AC$  in  $E$  [x.]. Join  $BE$  (Post. I.). Produce it, and from the produced part cut off  $EF$  equal to  $BE$  [III]. Join  $CF$ . Now because  $EC$  is equal to  $EA$  (const.), and  $EF$  is equal to  $EB$ , the triangles  $CEF$ ,  $AEB$  have the sides  $CE$ ,  $EF$  in one equal to the sides  $AE$ ,  $EB$  in the other; and the angle  $CEF$  equal to  $AEB$  [xv.]. Therefore [IV.] the angle  $ECF$  is equal to  $EAB$ ; but the angle  $ACD$  is greater than  $ECF$ ; therefore the angle  $ACD$  is greater than  $EAB$ .



In like manner it may be shown, if the side  $AC$  be produced, that the exterior angle  $BCG$  is greater than the angle  $ABC$ ; but  $BCG$  is equal to  $ACD$  [xv.]. Hence  $ACD$  is greater than  $ABC$ . *Therefore ACD is greater than either of the interior non-adjacent angles A or B of the triangle ABC.*

*Cor. 1.*—The sum of the three interior angles of the triangle  $BCF$  is equal to the sum of the three interior angles of the triangle  $ABC$ .

*Cor. 2.*—The area of  $BCF$  is equal to the area of  $ABC$ .

*Cor. 3.*—The lines  $BA$  and  $CF$ , if produced, cannot meet at any finite distance. For, if they met at any finite point  $X$ , the triangle  $CAX$  would have an exterior angle  $BAC$  equal to the interior angle  $ACX$ .

#### PROP. XVII.—THEOREM.

*Any two angles (B, C) of a triangle (ABC) are together less than two right angles.*

**Dem.**—Produce  $BC$  to  $D$ ; then the exterior angle  $ACD$  is greater than  $ABC$  [xvi.]: to each add the angle  $ACB$ , and we have the sum of the angles  $ACD$ ,  $ACB$  greater than the sum of the angles  $ABC$ ,  $ACB$ ; but the sum of the angles  $ACD$ ,  $ACB$  is two right angles [xiii.]. *Therefore the sum of the angles ABC, ACB is less than two right angles.*

In like manner we may show that the sum of the angles  $A$ ,  $B$ , or of the angles  $A$ ,  $C$ , is less than two right angles.

*Cor. 1.*—Every triangle must have at least two acute angles.

*Cor. 2.*—If two angles of a triangle be unequal, the lesser must be acute.

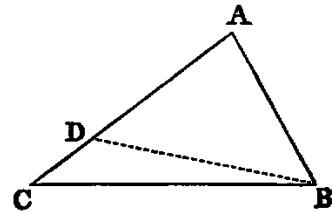
#### Exercise.

Prove Prop. xvii. without producing a side.

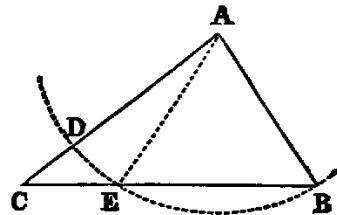
#### PROP. XVIII.—THEOREM.

*If in any triangle (ABC) one side (AC) be greater than another (AB), the angle opposite to the greater side is greater than the angle opposite to the less.*

**Dem.**—From  $AC$  cut off  $AD$  equal to  $AB$  [iii.]. Join  $BD$  (Post. i.). Now since  $AB$  is equal to  $AD$ , the triangle  $ABD$  is isosceles; therefore [v.] the angle  $ADB$  is equal to  $ABD$ ; but the angle  $ADB$  is greater than the angle  $ACB$  [xvi.]; therefore  $ABD$  is greater than  $ACB$ . *Much more is the angle ABC greater than the angle ACB.*



*Or thus:* From  $A$  as centre, with the lesser side  $AB$  as radius, describe the circle  $BED$ , cutting  $BC$  in  $E$ . Join  $AE$ . Now since  $AB$  is equal to  $AE$ , the angle  $AEB$  is equal to  $ABE$ ; but  $AEB$  is greater than  $ACB$  (xvi.); therefore  $ABE$  is greater than  $ACB$ .



#### Exercises.

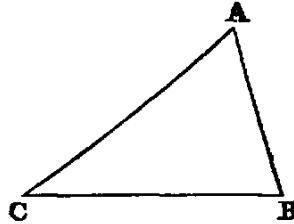
1. If in the second method the circle cut the line  $CB$  produced through  $B$ , prove the Proposition.
2. This Proposition may be proved by producing the less side.
3. If two of the opposite sides of a quadrilateral be respectively the greatest and least, the angles adjacent to the least are greater than their opposite angles.
4. In any triangle, the perpendicular from the vertex opposite the side which is not less than either of the remaining sides falls within the triangle.

#### PROP. XIX.—THEOREM.

*If one angle ( $B$ ) of a triangle ( $ABC$ ) be greater than another angle ( $C$ ), the side ( $AC$ ) which it opposite to the greater angle is greater than the side ( $AB$ ) which is opposite to the less.*

**Dem.**—If  $AC$  be not greater than  $AB$ , it must be either equal to it or less than it. Let us examine each case:—

1. If  $AC$  were equal to  $AB$ , the triangle  $ACB$  would be isosceles, and then the angle  $B$  would be equal to  $C$  [v.]; but it is not by hypothesis; therefore  $AB$  is not equal to  $AC$ .
2. If  $AC$  were less than  $AB$ , the angle  $B$  would be less than the angle  $C$  [xviii.]; but it is not by hypothesis; therefore  $AC$  is not less than  $AB$ ; and since  $AC$  is neither equal to  $AB$  nor less than it, *it must be greater*.



#### Exercises.

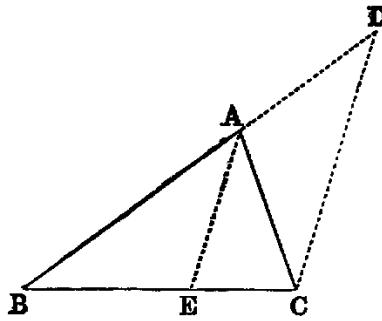
1. Prove this Proposition by a direct demonstration.
2. A line from the vertex of an isosceles triangle to any point in the base is less than either of the equal sides, but greater if the point be in the base produced.
3. Three equal lines could not be drawn from the same point to the same line.
4. The perpendicular is the least line which can be drawn from a given point to a given line; and of all others that may be drawn to it, that which is nearest to the perpendicular is less than any one more remote.
5. If in the fig., Prop. xvi.,  $AB$  be the greatest side of the  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $BF$  is the greatest side of the  $\triangle FBC$ , and the angle  $BFC$  is less than half the angle  $ABC$ .
6. If  $ABC$  be a  $\triangle$  having  $AB$  not greater than  $AC$ , a line  $AG$ , drawn from  $A$  to any point  $G$  in  $BC$ , is less than  $AC$ . For the angle  $ACB$  [xviii.] is not greater than  $ABC$ ; but  $AGC$  [xvi.] is greater than  $ABC$ ; therefore  $AGC$  is greater than  $ACB$ . Hence  $AC$  is greater than  $AG$ .

PROP. XX.—THEOREM.

*The sum of any two sides ( $BA, AC$ ) of a triangle ( $ABC$ ) is greater than the third.*

**Dem.**—Produce  $BA$  to  $D$  (Post. II.), and make  $AD$  equal to  $AC$  [III.]. Join  $CD$ . Then because  $AD$  is equal to  $AC$ , the angle  $ACD$  is equal to  $ADC$  (v.); therefore the angle  $BCD$  is greater than the angle  $BDC$ ; hence the side  $BD$  opposite to the greater angle is greater than  $BC$  opposite to the less [XIX.]. Again, since  $AC$  is equal to  $AD$ , adding  $BA$  to both, we have the sum of the sides  $BA, AC$  equal to  $BD$ . *Therefore the sum of  $BA, AC$  is greater than  $BC$ .*

*Or thus:* Bisect the angle  $BAC$  by  $AE$  [IX.] Then the angle  $BEA$  is greater than  $EAC$ ; but  $EAC = EAB$  (const.); therefore the angle  $BEA$  is greater than  $EAB$ . Hence  $AB$  is greater than  $BE$  [XIX.]. In like manner  $AC$  is greater than  $EC$ . *Therefore the sum of  $BA, AC$  is greater than  $BC$ .*



Exercises.

1. In any triangle, the difference between any two sides is less than the third.
2. If any point within a triangle be joined to its angular points, the sum of the joining lines is greater than its semiperimeter.
3. If through the extremities of the base of a triangle, whose sides are unequal, lines be drawn to any point in the bisector of the vertical angle, their difference is less than the difference of the sides.
4. If the lines be drawn to any point in the bisector of the external vertical angle, their sum is greater than the sum of the sides.
5. Any side of any polygon is less than the sum of the remaining sides.
6. The perimeter of any triangle is greater than that of any inscribed triangle, and less than that of any circumscribed triangle.
7. The perimeter of any polygon is greater than that of any inscribed, and less than that of any circumscribed, polygon of the same number of sides.
8. The perimeter of a quadrilateral is greater than the sum of its diagonals.
- Def.**—A line drawn from any angle of a triangle to the middle point of the opposite side is called a median of the triangle.
9. The sum of the three medians of a triangle is less than its perimeter.
10. The sum of the diagonals of a quadrilateral is less than the sum of the lines which can be drawn to its angular points from any point except the intersection of the diagonals.

PROP. XXI.—THEOREM.

*If two lines ( $BD, CD$ ) be drawn to a point ( $D$ ) within a triangle from the extremities of its base ( $BC$ ), their sum is less than the sum of the remaining sides ( $BA, CA$ ), but they contain a greater angle.*

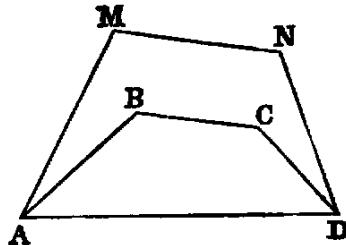
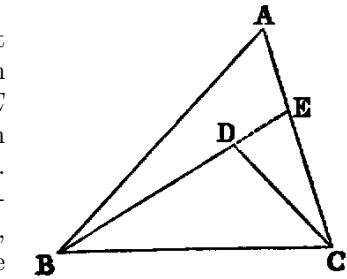
**Dem.**—1. Produce  $BD$  (Post. II.) to meet  $AC$  in  $E$ . Then, in the triangle  $BAE$ , the sum of the sides  $BA, AE$  is greater than the side  $BE$  [xx.]: to each add  $EC$ , and we have the sum of  $BA, AC$  greater than the sum of  $BE, EC$ . Again, the sum of the sides  $DE, EC$  of the triangle  $DEC$  is greater than  $DC$ : to each add  $BD$ , and we get the sum of  $BE, EC$  greater than the sum of  $BD, DC$ ; but it has been proved that the sum of  $BA, AC$  is greater than the sum of  $BE, EC$ . *Therefore much more is the sum of  $BA, AC$  greater than the sum of  $BD, DC$ .*

2. The external angle  $BDC$  of the triangle  $DEC$  is greater than the internal angle  $BEC$  [xvi.], and the angle  $BEC$ , for a like reason, is greater than  $BAC$ . *Therefore much more is  $BDC$  greater than  $BAC$ .*

Part 2 may be proved without producing either of the sides  $BD, DC$ . Thus: join  $AD$  and produce it to meet  $BC$  in  $F$ ; then the angle  $BDF$  is greater than the angle  $BAF$  [xvi.], and  $FDC$  is greater than  $FAC$ . *Therefore the whole angle  $BDC$  is greater than  $BAC$ .*

#### Exercises.

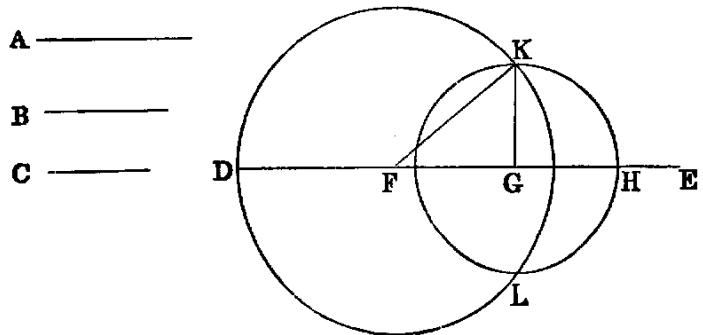
1. The sum of the lines drawn from any point within a triangle to its angular points is less than the perimeter. (Compare Ex. 2, last Prop.)
2. If a convex polygonal line  $ABCD$  lie within a convex polygonal line  $AMND$  terminating in the same extremities, the length of the former is less than that of the latter.



#### PROP. XXII.—PROBLEM.

*To construct a triangle whose three sides shall be respectively equal to three given lines ( $A, B, C$ ), the sum of every two of which is greater than the third.*

**Sol.**—Take any right line  $DE$ , terminated at  $D$ , but unlimited towards  $E$ , and cut off [III.]  $DF$  equal to  $A$ ,  $FG$  equal to  $B$ , and  $GH$  equal to  $C$ . With  $F$  as centre, and  $FD$  as radius, describe the circle  $KDL$  (Post. III.); and with  $G$  as centre, and  $GH$  as radius, describe the circle  $KHL$ , intersecting the former circle in  $K$ . Join  $KF, KG$ .  $KFG$  is the triangle required.



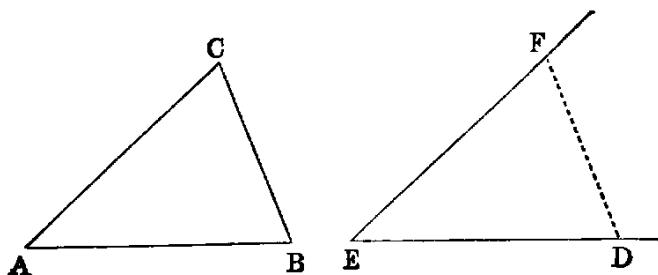
**Dem.**—Since  $F$  is the centre of the circle  $KDL$ ,  $FK$  is equal to  $FD$ ; but  $FD$  is equal to  $A$  (const.); therefore (Axiom 1.)  $FK$  is equal to  $A$ . In like manner  $GK$  is equal to  $C$ , and  $FG$  is equal to  $B$  (const.) Hence the three sides of the triangle  $KFG$  are respectively equal to the three lines  $A, B, C$ .

#### Questions for Examination.

1. What is the reason for stating in the enunciation that the sum of every two of the given lines must be greater than the third?
2. Prove that when that condition is fulfilled the two circles must intersect.
3. Under what conditions would the circles not intersect?
4. If the sum of two of the lines were equal to the third, would the circles meet? Prove that they would not intersect.

#### PROP. XXIII.—PROBLEM.

*At a given point (A) in a given right line (AB) to make an angle equal to a given rectilineal angle (DEF).*



**Sol.**—In the sides  $ED, EF$  of the given angle take any arbitrary points  $D$  and  $F$ . Join  $DF$ , and construct [XXII.] the triangle  $BAC$ , whose sides, taken in order, shall be equal to those of  $DEF$ —namely,  $AB$  equal to  $ED$ ,  $AC$  equal to  $EF$ , and  $CB$  equal to  $FD$ ; then the angle  $BAC$  will [VIII.] be equal to  $DEF$ . Hence it is the required angle.

Exercises.

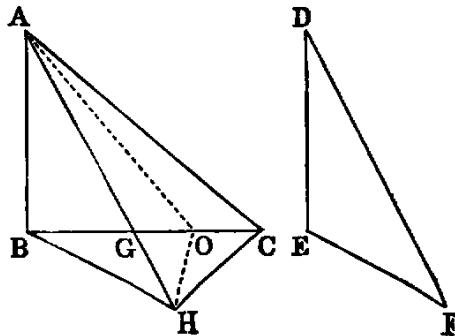
1. Construct a triangle, being given two sides and the angle between them.
2. Construct a triangle, being given two angles and the side between them.
3. Construct a triangle, being given two sides and the angle opposite to one of them.
4. Construct a triangle, being given the base, one of the angles at the base, and the sum or difference of the sides.
5. Given two points, one of which is in a given line, it is required to find another point in the given line, such that the sum or difference of its distances from the former points may be given. Show that two such points may be found in each case.

PROP. XXIV.—THEOREM.

*If two triangles ( $ABC$ ,  $DEF$ ) have two sides ( $AB$ ,  $AC$ ) of one respectively equal to two sides ( $DE$ ,  $DF$ ) of the other, but the contained angle ( $BAC$ ) of one greater than the contained angle ( $EDF$ ) of the other, the base of that which has the greater angle is greater than the base of the other.*

**Dem.**—Of the two sides  $AB$ ,  $AC$ , let  $AB$  be the one which is not the greater, and with it make the angle  $BAG$  equal to  $EDF$  [XXIII.]. Then because  $AB$  is not greater than  $AC$  [XIX., Exer. 6]. Produce  $AG$  to  $H$ , and make  $AH$  equal to  $DF$  or  $AC$  [III.]. Join  $BH$ ,  $CH$ .

In the triangles  $BAH$ ,  $EDF$ , we have  $AB$  equal to  $DE$  (hyp.),  $AH$  equal to  $DF$  (const.), and the angle  $BAH$  equal to the angle  $EDF$  (const.); therefore the base [iv.]  $BH$  is equal to  $EF$ . Again, because  $AH$  is equal to  $AC$  (const.), the triangle  $ACH$  is isosceles; therefore the angle  $ACH$  is equal to  $AHC$  [v.]; but  $ACH$  is greater than  $BCH$ ; therefore  $AHC$  is greater than  $BCH$ : much more is the angle  $BHC$  greater than  $BCH$ , and the greater angle is subtended by the greater side [XIX.]. Therefore  $BC$  is greater than  $BH$ ; but  $BH$  has been proved to be equal to  $EF$ ; therefore  $BC$  is greater than  $EF$ .



The concluding part of this Proposition may be proved without joining  $CH$ , thus:—

$$BG + GH > BH \text{ [xx.],}$$

$$AG + GC > AC \text{ [xx.];}$$

therefore

$$BG + GC + AH > BH + AC;$$

but

$$AH = AC \text{ (const.);}$$

therefore

$$BG + GC > BH.$$

*Or thus:* Bisect the angle  $CAH$  by  $AO$ . Join  $OH$ . Now in the  $\Delta$ s  $CAO$ ,  $HAO$  we have the sides  $CA$ ,  $AO$  in one equal to the sides  $AH$ ,  $AO$  in the other, and the contained angles equal; therefore the base  $OC$  is equal to the base  $OH$  [iv.]: to each add  $BO$ , and we have  $BC$  equal to the sum of  $BO$ ,  $OH$ ; but the sum of  $BO$ ,  $OH$  is greater than  $BH$  [xx.]. Therefore  $BC$  is greater than  $BH$ , that is, greater than  $EF$ .

Exercises.

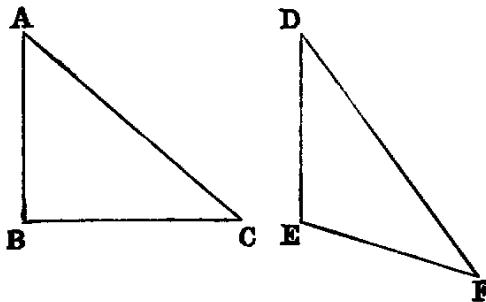
1. Prove this Proposition by making the angle  $ABH$  to the left of  $AB$ .
2. Prove that the angle  $BCA$  is greater than  $EFD$ .

PROP. XXV.—THEOREM.

*If two triangles ( $ABC$ ,  $DEF$ ) have two sides ( $AB$ ,  $AC$ ) of one respectively equal to two sides ( $DE$ ,  $DF$ ) of the other, but the base ( $BC$ ) of one greater than the base ( $EF$ ) of the other, the angle ( $A$ ) contained by the sides of that which has the greater base is greater than the angle ( $D$ ) contained by the sides of the other.*

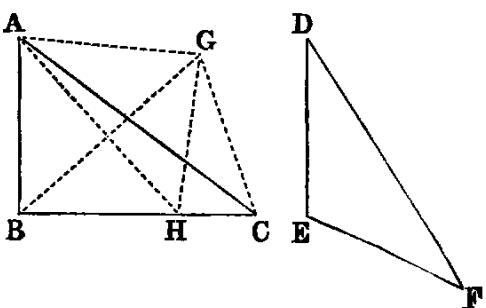
**Dem.**—If the angle  $A$  be not greater than  $D$ , it must be either equal to it or less than it. We shall examine each case:

1. If  $A$  were equal to  $D$ , the triangles  $ABC$ ,  $DEF$  would have the two sides  $AB$ ,  $AC$  of one respectively equal to the two sides  $DE$ ,  $DF$  of the other, and the angle  $A$  contained by the two sides of one equal to the angle  $D$  contained by the two sides of the other. Hence [IV.]  $BC$  would be equal to  $EF$ ; but  $BC$  is, by hypothesis, greater than  $EF$ ; hence the angle  $A$  is not equal to the angle  $D$ .



2. If  $A$  were less than  $D$ , then  $D$  would be greater than  $A$ , and the triangles  $DEF$ ,  $ABC$  would have the two sides  $DE$ ,  $DF$  of one respectively equal to the two sides  $AB$ ,  $AC$  of the other, and the angle  $D$  contained by the two sides of one greater than the angle  $A$  contained by the two sides of the other. Hence [xxiv.]  $EF$  would be greater than  $BC$ ; but  $EF$  (hyp.) is not greater than  $BC$ . Therefore  $A$  is not less than  $D$ , and we have proved that it is not equal to it; therefore it must be greater.

*Or thus, directly:* Construct the triangle  $ACG$ , whose three sides  $AG$ ,  $GC$ ,  $CA$  shall be respectively equal to the three sides  $DE$ ,  $EF$ ,  $FD$  of the triangle  $DEF$  [xxii.]. Join  $BG$ . Then because  $BC$  is greater than  $EF$ ,  $BC$  is greater than  $CG$ . Hence [xviii.] the angle  $BGC$  is greater than  $GBC$ ; and make (xxiii.)



the angle  $BGH$  equal to  $GBH$ , and join  $AH$ . Then [vi.]  $BH$  is equal to  $GH$ . Therefore the triangles  $ABH$ ,  $AGH$  have the sides  $AB$ ,  $AH$  of one equal to the sides  $AG$ ,  $AH$  of the other, and the base  $BH$  equal to  $GH$ . Therefore [viii.] the angle  $BAH$  is equal to  $GAH$ . Hence the angle  $BAC$  is greater than  $CAG$ , and therefore greater than  $EDF$ .

Exercise.

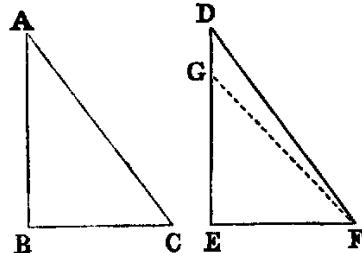
Demonstrate this Proposition directly by cutting off from  $BC$  a part equal to  $EF$ .

PROP. XXVI.—THEOREM.

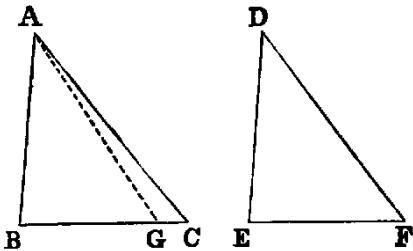
*If two triangles ( $ABC$ ,  $DEF$ ) have two angles ( $B$ ,  $C$ ) of one equal respectively to two angles ( $E$ ,  $F$ ) of the other, and a side of one equal to a side similarly placed with respect to the equal angles of the other, the triangles are equal in every respect.*

**Dem.**—This Proposition breaks up into two according as the sides given to be equal are the sides adjacent to the equal angles, namely  $BC$  and  $EF$ , or those opposite equal angles.

1. Let the equal sides be  $BC$  and  $EF$ ; then if  $DE$  be not equal to  $AB$ , suppose  $GE$  to be equal to it. Join  $GF$ ; then the triangles  $ABC$ ,  $GEF$  have the sides  $AB$ ,  $BC$  of one respectively equal to the sides  $GE$ ,  $EF$  of the other, and the angle  $ABC$  equal to the angle  $GEF$  (hyp.); therefore [iv.] the angle  $ACB$  is equal to the angle  $GFE$ ; but the angle  $ACB$  is (hyp.) equal to  $DFE$ ; hence  $GFE$  is equal to  $DFE$ —a part equal to the whole, which is absurd; therefore  $AB$  and  $DE$  are not unequal, that is, they are equal. Consequently the triangles  $ABC$ ,  $DEF$  have the sides  $AB$ ,  $BC$  of one respectively equal to the sides  $DE$ ,  $EF$  of the other; and the contained angles  $ABC$  and  $DEF$  equal; therefore [iv.]  $AC$  is equal to  $DF$ , and the angle  $BAC$  is equal to the angle  $EDF$ .



2. Let the sides given to be equal be  $AB$  and  $DE$ ; it is required to prove that  $BC$  is equal to  $EF$ , and  $AC$  to  $DF$ . If  $BC$  be not equal to  $EF$ , suppose  $BG$  to be equal to it. Join  $AG$ . Then the triangles  $ABG$ ,  $DEF$  have the two sides  $AB$ ,  $BG$  of one respectively equal to the two sides  $DE$ ,  $EF$  of the other, and the angle  $ABG$  equal to the angle  $DEF$ ; therefore [iv.] the angle  $AGB$  is equal to  $DFE$ ; but the angle  $ACB$  is equal to  $DFE$  (hyp.). Hence (Axiom I.) the angle  $AGB$  is equal to  $ACB$ , that is, the exterior angle of the triangle  $ACG$  is equal to the interior and non-adjacent angle, which [xvi.] is impossible. Hence  $BC$  must be equal to  $EF$ , and the same as in 1,  $AC$  is equal to  $DF$ , and the angle  $BAC$  is equal to the angle  $EDF$ .



This Proposition, together with IV. and VIII., includes all the cases of the congruence of two triangles. Part I. may be proved immediately by superposition. For it is evident if  $ABC$  be applied to  $DEF$ , so that the point  $B$  shall coincide with  $E$ , and the line  $BC$  with  $EF$ , since  $BC$  is equal to  $EF$ , the point  $C$  shall coincide with  $F$ ; and since the angles  $B$ ,  $C$  are

respectively equal to the angles  $E$ ,  $F$ , the lines  $BA$ ,  $CA$  shall coincide with  $ED$  and  $FD$ . Hence the triangles are congruent.

**DEF.**—*If every point on a geometrical figure satisfies an assigned condition, that figure is called the locus of the point satisfying the condition.* Thus, for example, a circle is the locus of a point whose distance from the centre is equal to its radius.

### Exercises.

1. The extremities of the base of an isosceles triangle are equally distant from any point in the perpendicular from the vertical angle on the base.
2. If the line which bisects the vertical angle of a triangle also bisects the base, the triangle is isosceles.
3. The locus of a point which is equally distant from two fixed lines is the pair of lines which bisect the angles made by the fixed lines.
4. In a given right line find a point such that the perpendiculars from it on two given lines may be equal. State also the number of solutions.
5. If two right-angled triangles have equal hypotenuses, and an acute angle of one equal to an acute angle of the other, they are congruent.
6. If two right-angled triangles have equal hypotenuses, and a side of one equal to a side of the other, they are congruent.
7. The bisectors of the three internal angles of a triangle are concurrent.
8. The bisectors of two external angles and the bisector of the third internal angle are concurrent.
9. Through a given point draw a right line, such that perpendiculars on it from two given points on opposite sides may be equal to each other.
10. Through a given point draw a right line intersecting two given lines, and forming an isosceles triangle with them.

### PARALLEL LINES.

**DEF. I.**—*If two right lines in the same plane be such that, when produced indefinitely, they do not meet at any finite distance, they are said to be PARALLEL.*

**DEF. II.**—A parallelogram is a quadrilateral, both pairs of whose opposite sides are parallel.

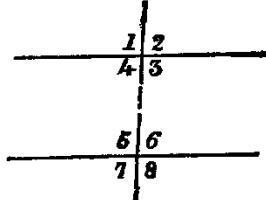
**DEF. III.**—The right line joining either pair of opposite angles of a quadrilateral is called a *diagonal*.

**DEF. IV.**—If both pairs of opposite sides of a quadrilateral be produced to meet, the right line joining their points of intersection is called its *third diagonal*.

**DEF. V.**—A quadrilateral which has one pair of opposite sides parallel is called a *trapezium*.

**DEF. VI.**—If from the extremities of one right line perpendiculars be drawn to another, the intercept between their feet is called the *projection* of the first line on the second.

**DEF. VII.**—When a right line intersects two other right lines in two distinct points it makes with them eight angles, which have received special names in relation to one another. Thus, in the

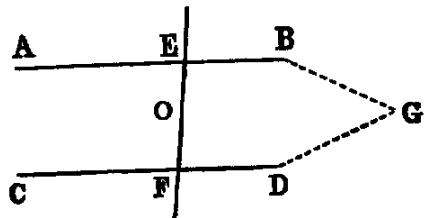


figure—1, 2; 7, 8 are called *exterior* angles; 3, 4; 5, 6, *interior* angles. Again, 4; 6; 3, 5 are called *alternate* angles; lastly, 1, 5; 2, 6; 3, 8; 4, 7 are called *corresponding* angles.

#### PROP. XXVII.—THEOREM.

*If a right line (EF) intersecting two right lines (AB, CD) makes the alternate angles (AEF, EFD) equal to each other, these lines are parallel.*

**Dem.**—If  $AB$  and  $CD$  are not parallel they must meet, if produced, at some finite distance: if possible let them meet in  $G$ ; then the figure  $EGF$  is a triangle, and the angle  $AEF$  is an exterior angle, and  $EFD$  a non-adjacent interior angle. Hence [xvi.]  $AEF$  is greater than  $EFD$ ; but it is also equal to it (hyp.), that is, both equal and greater, which is absurd. *Hence  $AB$  and  $CD$  are parallel.*

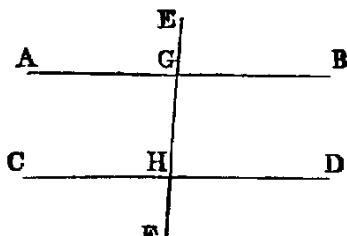


*Or thus:* Bisect  $EF$  in  $O$ ; turn the whole figure round  $O$  as a centre, so that  $EF$  shall fall on itself; then because  $OE = OF$ , the point  $E$  shall fall on  $F$ ; and because the angle  $AEF$  is equal to the angle  $EFD$ , the line  $EA$  will occupy the place of  $FD$ , and the line  $FD$  the place of  $EA$ ; therefore the lines  $AB, CD$  interchange places, and the figure is symmetrical with respect to the point  $O$ . Hence, if  $AB, CD$  meet on one side of  $O$ , they must also meet on the other side; but two right lines cannot enclose a space (Axiom x.); therefore they do not meet at either side. *Hence they are parallel.*

#### PROP. XXVIII.—THEOREM.

*If a right line (EF) intersecting two right lines (AB, CD) makes the exterior angle (EGB) equal to its corresponding interior angle (GHD), or makes two interior angles (BGH, GHD) on the same side equal to two right angles, the two right lines are parallel.*

**Dem.**—1. Since the lines  $AB, EF$  intersect, the angle  $AGH$  is equal to  $EGB$  [xv.]; but  $EGB$  is equal to  $GHD$  (hyp.); therefore  $AGH$  is equal to  $GHD$ , and they are alternate angles. *Hence [xxvii.]  $AB$  is parallel to  $CD$ .*



2. Since  $AGH$  and  $BGH$  are adjacent angles, their sum is equal to two right angles [xiii.]; but the sum of  $BGH$  and  $GHD$  is two right angles (hyp.); therefore rejecting the angle  $BGH$  we have  $AGH$  equal  $GHD$ , and they are alternate angles; *therefore  $AB$  is parallel to  $CD$  [xxvii.].*

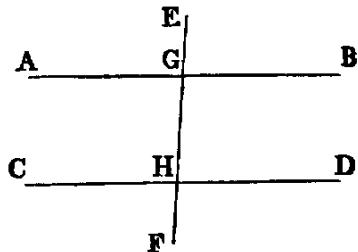
PROP. XXIX.—THEOREM.

*If a right line (EF) intersect two parallel right lines (AB, CD), it makes—  
1. the alternate angles (AGH, GHD) equal to one another; 2. the exterior angle  
(EGB) equal to the corresponding interior angle (GHD); 3. the two interior  
angles (BGH, GHD) on the same side equal to two right angles.*

**Dem.**—If the angle  $AGH$  be not equal to  $GHD$ , one must be greater than the other. Let  $AGH$  be the greater; to each add  $BGH$ , and we have the sum of the angles  $AGH$ ,  $BGH$  greater than the sum of the angles  $BGH$ ,  $GHD$ ; but the sum of  $AGH$ ,  $BGH$  is two right angles; therefore the sum of  $BGH$ ,  $GHD$  is less than two right angles, and therefore (Axiom XII.) the lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$ , if produced, will meet at some finite distance: but since they are parallel (hyp.) they cannot meet at any finite distance. *Hence the angle  $AGH$  is not unequal to  $GHD$ —that is, it is equal to it.*

2. Since the angle  $EGB$  is equal to  $AGH$  [xv.], and  $GHD$  is equal to  $AGH$  (1),  $EGB$  is equal to  $GHD$  (Axiom I.).

3. Since  $AGH$  is equal to  $GHD$  (1), add  $HGB$  to each, and we have the sum of the angles  $AGH$ ,  $HGB$  equal to the sum of the angles  $GHD$ ,  $HGB$ ; but the sum of the angles  $AGH$ ,  $HGB$  [xiii.] is two right angles; *therefore the sum of the angles  $BGH$ ,  $GHD$  is two right angles.*



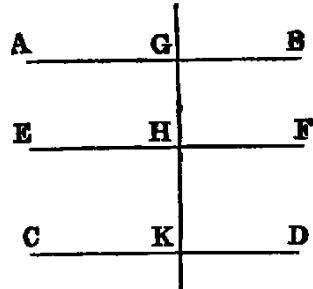
Exercises.

1. Demonstrate both parts of Prop. xxviii. without using Prop. xxvii.
2. The parts of all perpendiculars to two parallel lines intercepted between them are equal.
3. If  $ACD$ ,  $BCD$  be adjacent angles, any parallel to  $AB$  will meet the bisectors of these angles in points equally distant from where it meets  $CD$ .
4. If through the middle point  $O$  of any right line terminated by two parallel right lines any other secant be drawn, the intercept on this line made by the parallels is bisected in  $O$ .
5. Two right lines passing through a point equidistant from two parallels intercept equal portions on the parallels.
6. The perimeter of the parallelogram, formed by drawing parallels to two sides of an equilateral triangle from any point in the third side, is equal to twice the side.
7. If the opposite sides of a hexagon be equal and parallel, its diagonals are concurrent.
8. If two intersecting right lines be respectively parallel to two others, the angle between the former is equal to the angle between the latter. For if  $AB$ ,  $AC$  be respectively parallel to  $DE$ ,  $DF$ , and if  $AC$ ,  $DE$  meet in  $G$ , the angles  $A$ ,  $D$  are each equal to  $G$  [xxix.].

PROP. XXX.—THEOREM.

*If two right lines (AB, CD) be parallel to the same right line (EF), they are parallel to one another.*

**Dem.**—Draw any secant  $GHK$ . Then since  $AB$  and  $EF$  are parallel, the angle  $AGH$  is equal to  $GHF$  [XXIX.]. In like manner the angle  $GHF$  is equal to  $HKD$  [XXIX.]. Therefore the angle  $AGK$  is equal to the angle  $GKD$  (Axiom I.). Hence [XXVII.]  $AB$  is parallel to  $CD$ .

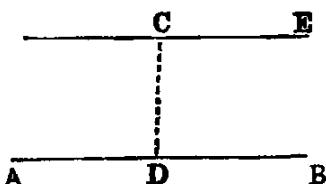


#### PROP. XXXI.—PROBLEM.

Through a given point ( $C$ ) to draw a right line parallel to a given right line.

**Sol.**—Take any point  $D$  in  $AB$ . Join  $CD$  (Post. I.), and make the angle  $DCE$  equal to the angle  $ADC$  [XXIII.]. The line  $CE$  is parallel to  $AB$  [XXVII.].

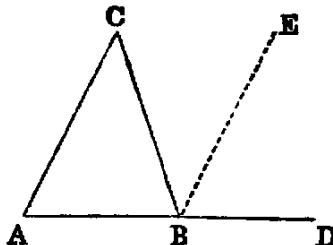
#### Exercises.



1. Given the altitude of a triangle and the base angles, construct it.
2. From a given point draw to a given line a line making with it an angle equal to a given angle. Show that there will be two solutions.
3. Prove the following construction for trisecting a given line  $AB$ :—On  $AB$  describe an equilateral  $\triangle ABC$ . Bisect the angles  $A, B$  by the lines  $AD, BD$ , meeting in  $D$ ; through  $D$  draw parallels to  $AC, BC$ , meeting  $AB$  in  $E, F$ :  $E, F$  are the points of trisection of  $AB$ .
4. Inscribe a square in a given equilateral triangle, having its base on a given side of the triangle.
5. Draw a line parallel to the base of a triangle so that it may be—1. equal to the intercept it makes on one of the sides from the extremity of the base; 2. equal to the sum of the two intercepts on the sides from the extremities of the base; 3. equal to their difference. Show that there are two solutions in each case.
6. Through two given points in two parallel lines draw two lines forming a lozenge with the given parallels.
7. Between two lines given in position place a line of given length which shall be parallel to a given line. Show that there are two solutions.

#### PROP. XXXII.—THEOREM.

If any side ( $AB$ ) of a triangle ( $ABC$ ) be produced (to  $D$ ), the external angle ( $CBD$ ) is equal to the sum of the two internal non-adjacent angles ( $A, C$ ), and the sum of the three internal angles is equal to two right angles.



**Dem.**—Draw  $BE$  parallel to  $AC$  [XXXI.]. Now since  $BC$  intersects the parallels  $BE, AC$ , the alternate angles  $EBC, ACB$  are equal [XXIX.]. Again, since  $AB$  intersects the parallels  $BE, AC$ , the angle  $EBD$  is equal to  $BAC$  [XXIX.]; hence the whole angle  $CBD$  is equal to the sum

of the two angles  $ACB$ ,  $BAC$ : to each of these add the angle  $ABC$  and we have the sum of  $CBD$ ,  $ABC$  equal to the sum of the three angles  $ACB$ ,  $BAC$ ,  $ABC$ : but the sum of  $CBD$ ,  $ABC$  is two right angles [XIII.]; hence the sum of the three angles  $ACB$ ,  $BAC$ ,  $ABC$  is two right angles.

*Cor.* 1.—If a right-angled triangle be isosceles, each base angle is half a right angle.

*Cor.* 2.—If two triangles have two angles in one respectively equal to two angles in the other, their remaining angles are equal.

*Cor.* 3.—Since a quadrilateral can be divided into two triangles, the sum of its angles is equal to four right angles.

*Cor.* 4.—If a figure of  $n$  sides be divided into triangles by drawing diagonals from any one of its angles there will be  $(n - 2)$  triangles; hence the sum of its angles is equal  $2(n - 2)$  right angles.

*Cor.* 5.—If all the sides of any convex polygon be produced, the sum of the external angles is equal to four right angles.

*Cor.* 6.—Each angle of an equilateral triangle is two-thirds of a right angle.

*Cor.* 7.—If one angle of a triangle be equal to the sum of the other two, it is a right angle.

*Cor.* 8.—Every right-angled triangle can be divided into two isosceles triangles by a line drawn from the right angle to the hypotenuse.

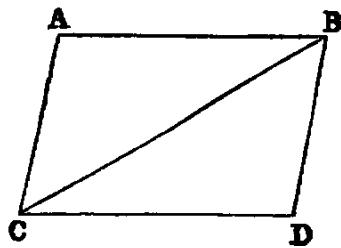
### Exercises.

1. Trisect a right angle.
2. Any angle of a triangle is obtuse, right, or acute, according as the opposite side is greater than, equal to, or less than, twice the *median* drawn from that angle.
3. If the sides of a polygon of  $n$  sides be produced, the sum of the angles between each alternate pair is equal to  $2(n - 4)$  right angles.
4. If the line which bisects the external vertical angle be parallel to the base, the triangle is isosceles.
5. If two right-angled  $\Delta$ s  $ABC$ ,  $ABD$  be on the same hypotenuse  $AB$ , and the vertices  $C$  and  $D$  be joined, the pair of angles subtended by any side of the quadrilateral thus formed are equal.
6. The three perpendiculars of a triangle are concurrent.
7. The bisectors of two adjacent angles of a parallelogram are at right angles.
8. The bisectors of the external angles of a quadrilateral form a circumscribed quadrilateral, the sum of whose opposite angles is equal to two right angles.
9. If the three sides of one triangle be respectively perpendicular to those of another triangle, the triangles are equiangular.
10. Construct a right-angled triangle, being given the hypotenuse and the sum or difference of the sides.
11. The angles made with the base of an isosceles triangle by perpendiculars from its extremities on the equal sides are each equal to half the vertical angle.
12. The angle included between the internal bisector of one base angle of a triangle and the external bisector of the other base angle is equal to half the vertical angle.
13. In the construction of Prop. XVIII. prove that the angle  $DBC$  is equal to half the difference of the base angles.
14. If  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$  denote the angles of a  $\Delta$ , prove that  $\frac{1}{2}(A + B)$ ,  $\frac{1}{2}(B + C)$ ,  $\frac{1}{2}(C + A)$  will be the angles of a  $\Delta$  formed by any side and the bisectors of the external angles between that side and the other sides produced.

PROP. XXXIII.—THEOREM.

*The right lines (AC, BD) which join the adjacent extremities of two equal and parallel right lines (AB, CD) are equal and parallel.*

**Dem.**—Join BC. Now since AB is parallel to CD, and BC intersects them, the angle ABC is equal to the alternate angle DCB [xxix.]. Again, since AB is equal to CD, and BC common, the triangles ABC, DCB have the sides AB, BC in one respectively equal to the sides DC, CB in the other, and the angles ABC, DCB contained by those sides equal; therefore [iv.] the base AC is equal to the base BD, and the angle ACB is equal to the angle CBD; but these are alternate angles; hence [xxvii.] AC is parallel to BD, and it has been proved equal to it. *Therefore AC is both equal and parallel to BD.*



Exercises.

1. If two right lines AB, BC be respectively equal and parallel to two other right lines DE, EF, the right line AC joining the extremities of the former pair is equal to the right line DF joining the extremities of the latter.
2. Right lines that are equal and parallel have equal projections on any other right line; and conversely, parallel right lines that have equal projections on another right line are equal.
3. Equal right lines that have equal projections on another right line are parallel.
4. The right lines which join transversely the extremities of two equal and parallel right lines bisect each other.

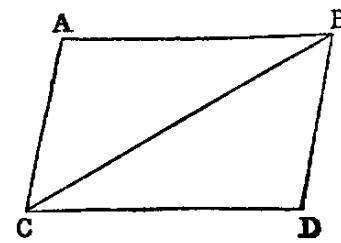
PROP. XXXIV.—THEOREM.

*The opposite sides (AB, CD; AC, BD) and the opposite angles (A, D; B, C) of a parallelogram are equal to one another, and either diagonal bisects the parallelogram.*

**Dem.**—Join BC. Since AB is parallel to CD, and BC intersects them, the angle ABC is equal to the angle BCD [xxix.]. Again, since BC intersects the parallels AC, BD, the angle ACB is equal to the angle CBD; hence the triangles ABC, DCB have the two angles ABC, ACB in one respectively equal to the two angles BCD, CBD in the other, and the side BC common. *Therefore [xxvi.] AB is equal to CD, and AC to BD; the angle BAC to the angle BDC, and the triangle ABC to the triangle BDC.*

Again, because the angle ACB is equal to CBD, and DCB equal to ABC, *the whole angle ACD is equal to the whole angle ABD.*

*Cor. 1.*—If one angle of a parallelogram be a right angle, all its angles are right angles.



*Cor.* 2.—If two adjacent sides of a parallelogram be equal, it is a lozenge.

*Cor.* 3.—If both pairs of opposite sides of a quadrilateral be equal, it is a parallelogram.

*Cor.* 4.—If both pairs of opposite angles of a quadrilateral be equal, it is a parallelogram.

*Cor.* 5.—If the diagonals of a quadrilateral bisect each other, it is a parallelogram.

*Cor.* 6.—If both diagonals of a quadrilateral bisect the quadrilateral, it is a parallelogram.

*Cor.* 7.—If the adjacent sides of a parallelogram be equal, its diagonals bisect its angles.

*Cor.* 8.—If the adjacent sides of a parallelogram be equal, its diagonals intersect at right angles.

*Cor.* 9.—In a right-angled parallelogram the diagonals are equal.

*Cor.* 10.—If the diagonals of a parallelogram be perpendicular to each other, it is a lozenge.

*Cor.* 11.—If a diagonal of a parallelogram bisect the angles whose vertices it joins, the parallelogram is a lozenge.

### Exercises.

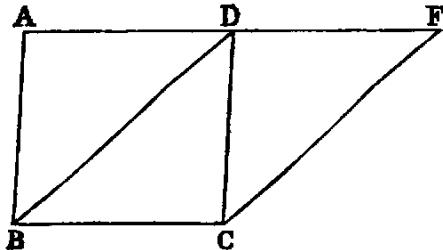
1. The diagonals of a parallelogram bisect each other.
2. If the diagonals of a parallelogram be equal, all its angles are right angles.
3. Divide a right line into any number of equal parts.
4. The right lines joining the adjacent extremities of two unequal parallel right lines will meet, if produced, on the side of the shorter parallel.
5. If two opposite sides of a quadrilateral be parallel but not equal, and the other pair equal but not parallel, its opposite angles are supplemental.
6. Construct a triangle, being given the middle points of its three sides.
7. The area of a quadrilateral is equal to the area of a triangle, having two sides equal to its diagonals, and the contained angle equal to that between the diagonals.

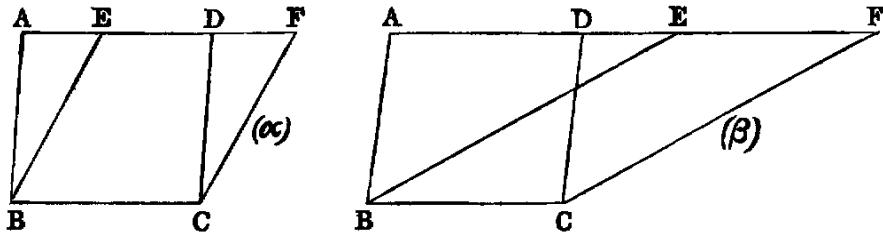
### PROP. XXXV.—THEOREM.

*Parallelograms on the same base ( $BC$ ) and between the same parallels are equal.*

**Dem.**—1. Let the sides  $AD, DF$  of the parallelograms  $AC, BF$  opposite to the common base  $BC$  terminate in the same point  $D$ , then [xxxiv.] each parallelogram is double of the triangle  $BCD$ . Hence they are equal to one another.

2. Let the sides  $AD, EF$  (figures  $(\alpha), (\beta)$ ) opposite to  $BC$  not terminate in the same point.





Then because  $ABCD$  is a parallelogram,  $AD$  is equal to  $BC$  [xxxiv.]; and since  $BCEF$  is a parallelogram,  $EF$  is equal to  $BC$ ; therefore (see fig.  $(\alpha)$ ) take away  $ED$ , and in fig.  $(\beta)$  add  $ED$ , and we have in each case  $AE$  equal to  $DF$ , and  $BA$  is equal to  $CD$  [xxxiv.]. Hence the triangles  $BAE$ ,  $CDF$  have the two sides  $BA$ ,  $AE$  in one respectively equal to the two sides  $CD$ ,  $DF$  in the other, and the angle  $BAE$  [xxix.] equal to the angle  $CDF$ ; hence [iv.] the triangle  $BAE$  is equal to the triangle  $CDF$ ; and taking each of these triangles in succession from the quadrilateral  $BAFC$ , *there will remain the parallelogram  $BCFE$  equal to the parallelogram  $BCDA$ .*

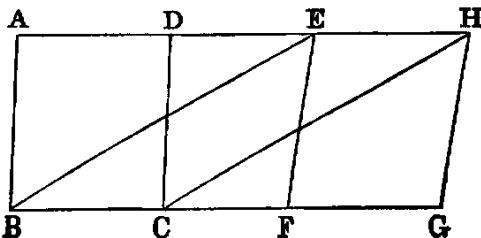
*Or thus:* The triangles  $ABE$ ,  $DCF$  have [xxxiv.] the sides  $AB$ ,  $BE$  in one respectively equal to the sides  $DC$ ,  $CF$  in the other, and the angle  $ABE$  equal to the angle  $DCF$  [xxix., Ex. 8]. Hence the triangle  $ABE$  is equal to the triangle  $DCF$ ; and, taking each away from the quadrilateral  $BAFC$ , *there will remain the parallelogram  $BCFE$  equal to the parallelogram  $BCDA$ .*

**Observation.**—By the second method of proof the subdivision of the demonstration into cases is avoided. It is easy to see that either of the two parallelograms  $ABCD$ ,  $EBCF$  can be divided into parts and rearranged so as to make it congruent with the other. This Proposition affords the first instance in the Elements in which equality which is not congruence occurs. This equality is expressed algebraically by the symbol  $=$ , while congruence is denoted by  $\equiv$ , called also the symbol of identity. Figures that are congruent are said to be *identically equal*.

#### PROP. XXXVI.—THEOREM.

*Parallelograms ( $BD$ ,  $FH$ ) on equal bases ( $BC$ ,  $FG$ ) and between the same parallels are equal.*

**Dem.**—Join  $BE$ ,  $CH$ . Now since  $FH$  is a parallelogram,  $FG$  is equal to  $EH$  [xxxiv.]; but  $BC$  is equal to  $FG$  (hyp.); therefore  $BC$  is equal to  $EH$  (Axiom I.). Hence  $BE$ ,  $CH$ , which join their adjacent extremities, are equal and parallel; therefore  $BH$  is a parallelogram. Again, since the parallelograms  $BD$ ,  $BH$  are on the same base  $BC$ , and between the same parallels  $BC$ ,  $AH$ , they are equal [xxxv.]. In like manner, since the parallelograms  $HB$ ,  $HG$  are on the same base  $EH$ , and between the same parallels  $EH$ ,  $BG$ , they are equal. Hence  $BD$  and  $FH$  are each equal to  $BH$ . *Therefore (Axiom I.)  $BD$  is equal to  $FH$ .*

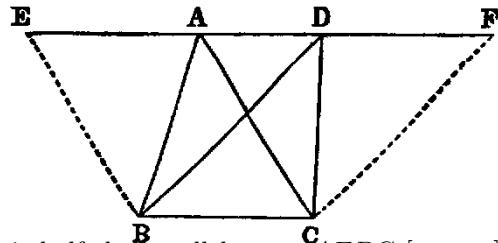


**Exercise.**—Prove this Proposition without joining  $BE$ ,  $CH$ .

#### PROP. XXXVII.—THEOREM.

*Triangles ( $ABC$ ,  $DBC$ ) on the same base ( $BC$ ) and between the same parallels ( $AD$ ,  $BC$ ) are equal.*

**Dem.**—Produce  $AD$  both ways. Draw  $BE$  parallel to  $AC$ , and  $CF$  parallel to  $BD$  [XXXI.] Then the figures  $AEB$ ,  $DBCF$  are parallelograms; and since they are on the same base  $BC$ , and between the same parallels  $BC$ ,  $EF$  they are equal [XXXV.]. Again, the triangle  $ABC$  is half the parallelogram  $AEB$  [XXXIV.], because the diagonal  $AB$  bisects it. In like manner the triangle  $DBC$  is half the parallelogram  $DBCF$ , because the diagonal  $DC$  bisects it, and halves of equal things are equal (Axiom VII.). *Therefore the triangle  $ABC$  is equal to the triangle  $DBC$ .*



#### Exercises.

1. If two equal triangles be on the same base, but on opposite sides, the right line joining their vertices is bisected by the base.
2. Construct a triangle equal in area to a given quadrilateral figure.
3. Construct a triangle equal in area to a given rectilineal figure.
4. Construct a lozenge equal to a given parallelogram, and having a given side of the parallelogram for base.
5. Given the base and the area of a triangle, find the locus of the vertex.
6. If through a point  $O$ , in the production of the diagonal  $AC$  of a parallelogram  $ABCD$ , any right line be drawn cutting the sides  $AB$ ,  $BC$  in the points  $E$ ,  $F$ , and  $ED$ ,  $FD$  be joined, the triangle  $EFD$  is less than half the parallelogram.

#### PROP. XXXVIII.—THEOREM.

*Two triangles on equal bases and between the same parallels are equal.*

**Dem.**—By a construction similar to the last, we see that the triangles are the halves of parallelograms, on equal bases, and between the same parallels. Hence they are the halves of equal parallelograms [XXXVI.]. *Therefore they are equal to one another.*

#### Exercises.

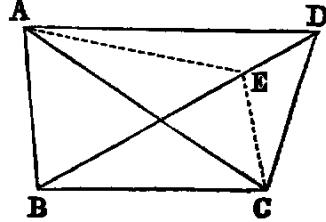
1. Every median of a triangle bisects the triangle.
2. If two triangles have two sides of one respectively equal to two sides of the other, and the contained angles supplemental, their areas are equal.

3. If the base of a triangle be divided into any number of equal parts, right lines drawn from the vertex to the points of division will divide the whole triangle into as many equal parts.
4. Right lines from any point in the diagonal of a parallelogram to the angular points through which the diagonal does not pass, and the diagonal, divide the parallelogram into four triangles which are equal, two by two.
5. If one diagonal of a quadrilateral bisects the other, it also bisects the quadrilateral, and conversely.
6. If two  $\Delta$ s  $ABC, ABD$  be on the same base  $AB$ , and between the same parallels, and if a parallel to  $AB$  meet the sides  $AC, BC$  in the point  $E, F$ ; and the sides  $AD, BD$  in the point  $G, H$ ; then  $EF = GH$ .
7. If instead of triangles on the same base we have triangles on equal bases and between the same parallels, the intercepts made by the sides of the triangles on any parallel to the bases are equal.
8. If the middle points of any two sides of a triangle be joined, the triangle so formed with the two half sides is one-fourth of the whole.
9. The triangle whose vertices are the middle points of two sides, and any point in the base of another triangle, is one-fourth of that triangle.
10. Bisect a given triangle by a right line drawn from a given point in one of the sides.
11. Trisect a given triangle by three right lines drawn from a given point within it.
12. Prove that any right line through the intersection of the diagonals of a parallelogram bisects the parallelogram.
13. The triangle formed by joining the middle point of one of the non-parallel sides of a trapezium to the extremities of the opposite side is equal to half the trapezium.

#### PROP. XXXIX.—THEOREM.

*Equal triangles ( $BAC, BDC$ ) on the same base ( $BC$ ) and on the same side of it are between the same parallels.*

**Dem.**—Join  $AD$ . Then if  $AD$  be not parallel to  $BC$ , let  $AE$  be parallel to it, and let it cut  $BD$  in  $E$ . Join  $EC$ . Now since the triangles  $BEC, BAC$  are on the same base  $BC$ , and between the same parallels  $BC, AE$ , they are equal [XXXVII.]; but the triangle  $BAC$  is equal to the triangle  $BDC$  (hyp.). Therefore (Axiom 1.) the triangle  $BEC$  is equal to the triangle  $BDC$ —that is, a part equal to the whole which is absurd. Hence  $AD$  must be parallel to  $BC$ .



#### PROP. XL.—THEOREM.

*Equal triangles ( $ABC, DEF$ ) on equal bases ( $BC, EF$ ) which form parts of the same right line, and on the same side of the line, are between the same parallels.*

**Dem.**—Join  $AD$ . If  $AD$  be not parallel to  $BF$ , let  $AG$  be parallel to it. Join  $GF$ . Now since the triangles  $GEF$  and  $ABC$  are on equal bases  $BC, EF$ , and between the same parallels  $BF, AG$ , they are equal [XXXVIII.]; but the triangle  $DEF$  is equal to the triangle  $ABC$  (hyp.). Hence  $GEF$  is equal to  $DEF$  (Axiom I.)—that is, a part equal to the whole, which is absurd. *Therefore  $AD$  must be parallel to  $BF$ .*

**DEF.**—*The altitude of a triangle is the perpendicular from the vertex on the base.*

#### Exercises.

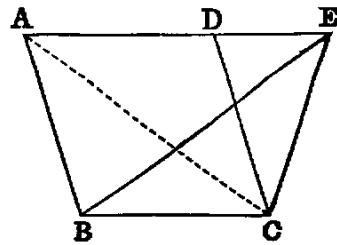
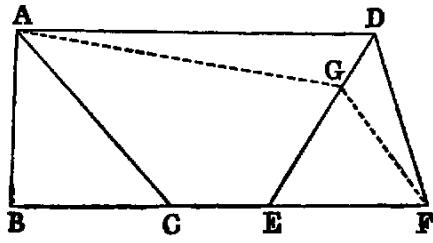
1. Triangles and parallelograms of equal bases and altitudes are respectively equal.
2. The right line joining the middle points of two sides of a triangle is parallel to the third; for the medians from the extremities of the base to these points will each bisect the original triangle. Hence the two triangles whose base is the third side and whose vertices are the points of bisection are equal.
3. The parallel to any side of a triangle through the middle point of another bisects the third.
4. The lines of connexion of the middle points of the sides of a triangle divide it into four congruent triangles.
5. The line of connexion of the middle points of two sides of a triangle is equal to half the third side.
6. The middle points of the four sides of a convex quadrilateral, taken in order, are the angular points of a parallelogram whose area is equal to half the area of the quadrilateral.
7. The sum of the two parallel sides of a trapezium is double the line joining the middle points of the two remaining sides.
8. The parallelogram formed by the line of connexion of the middle points of two sides of a triangle, and any pair of parallels drawn through the same points to meet the third side, is equal to half the triangle.
9. The right line joining the middle points of opposite sides of a quadrilateral, and the right line joining the middle points of its diagonals, are concurrent.

#### PROP. XLI.—THEOREM.

*If a parallelogram ( $ABCD$ ) and a triangle ( $EBC$ ) be on the same base ( $BC$ ) and between the same parallels, the parallelogram is double of the triangle.*

**Dem.**—Join  $AC$ . The parallelogram  $ABCD$  is double of the triangle  $ABC$  [XXXIV.]; but the triangle  $ABC$  is equal to the triangle  $EBC$  [XXXVII.]. *Therefore the parallelogram  $ABCD$  is double of the triangle  $EBC$ .*

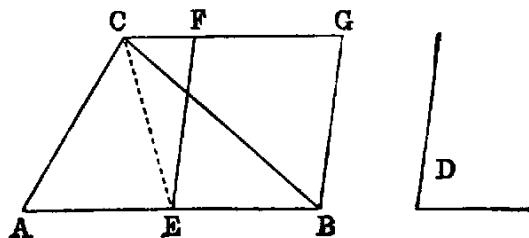
**Cor. 1.**—If a triangle and a parallelogram have equal altitudes, and if the base of the triangle be double of the base of the parallelogram, the areas are equal.



*Cor.* 2.—The sum of the triangles whose bases are two opposite sides of a parallelogram, and which have any point between these sides as a common vertex, is equal to half the parallelogram.

PROP. XLII.—PROBLEM.

*To construct a parallelogram equal to a given triangle (ABC), and having an angle equal to a given angle (D).*

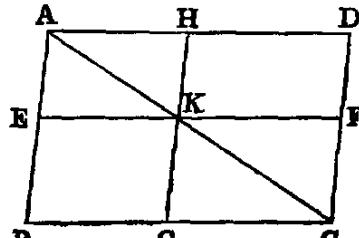


**Sol.**—Bisect  $AB$  in  $E$ . Join  $EC$ . Make the angle  $BEF$  [xxiii.] equal to  $D$ . Draw  $CG$  parallel to  $AB$  [xxxii.], and  $BG$  parallel to  $EF$ .  $EG$  is a parallelogram fulfilling the required conditions.

**Dem.**—Because  $AE$  is equal to  $EB$  (const.), the triangle  $AEC$  is equal to the triangle  $EBC$  [xxxviii.], therefore the triangle  $ABC$  is double of the triangle  $EBC$ ; but the parallelogram  $EG$  is also double of the triangle  $EBC$  [xli.], because they are on the same base  $EB$ , and between the same parallels  $EB$  and  $CG$ . Therefore the parallelogram  $EG$  is equal to the triangle  $ABC$ , and it has (const.) the angle  $BEG$  equal to  $D$ . Hence  $EG$  is a parallelogram fulfilling the required conditions.

PROP. XLIII.—THEOREM.

*The parallels (EF, GH) through any point (K) in one of the diagonals (AC) of a parallelogram divide it into four parallelograms, of which the two (BK, KD) through which the diagonal does not pass, and which are called the COMPLEMENTS of the other two, are equal.*



**Dem.**—Because the diagonal bisects the parallelograms  $AC$ ,  $AK$ ,  $KC$ , we have [xxxiv.] the triangle  $ADC$  equal to the triangle  $ABC$ , the triangle  $AHK$  equal to  $AEK$ , and the triangle  $KFC$  equal to the triangle  $KGC$ . Hence, subtracting the sums of the two last equalities from the first, we get the parallelogram  $DK$  equal to the parallelogram  $KB$ .

*Cor.* 1.—If through a point  $K$  within a parallelogram  $ABCD$  lines drawn parallel to the sides make the parallelograms  $DK$ ,  $KB$  equal,  $K$  is a point in the diagonal  $AC$ .

*Cor.* 2.—The parallelogram  $BH$  is equal to  $AF$ , and  $BF$  to  $HC$ .

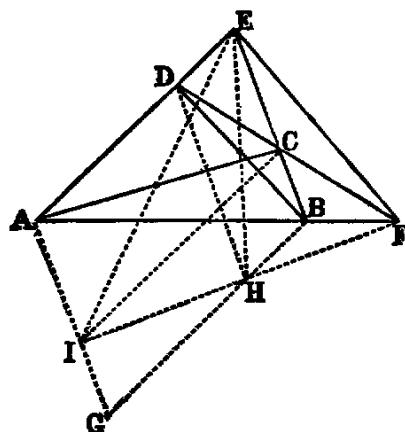
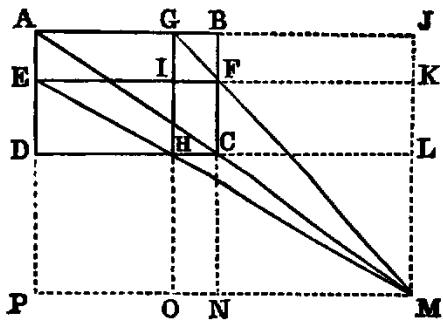
*Cor.* 2. supplies an easy demonstration of a fundamental Proposition in Statics.

Exercises.

1. If  $EF, GH$  be parallels to the adjacent sides of a parallelogram  $ABCD$ , the diagonals  $EH, GF$  of two of the four  $\square$ s into which they divide it and one of the diagonals of  $ABCD$  are concurrent.

**Dem.**—Let  $EH, GF$  meet in  $M$ ; through  $M$  draw  $MP, MJ$  parallel to  $AB, BC$ . Produce  $AD, GH, BC$  to meet  $MP$ , and  $AB, EF, DC$  to meet  $MJ$ . Now the complement  $OF = FJ$ : to each add the  $\square FL$ , and we get the figure  $OFL = \square CJ$ . Again, the complement  $PH = HK$  [XLIII.]: to each add the  $\square OC$ , and we get the  $\square PC = \text{figure } OFL$ . Hence the  $\square PC = CJ$ . Therefore they are about the same diagonal [XLIII., Cor. 1]. Hence  $AC$  produced will pass through  $M$ .

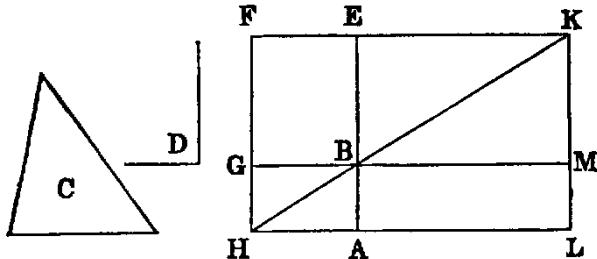
2. The middle points of the three diagonals  $AC, BD, EF$  of a quadrilateral  $ABCD$  are collinear.



**Dem.**—Complete the  $\square AEBG$ . Draw  $DH, CI$  parallel to  $AG, BG$ . Join  $IH$ , and produce; then  $AB, CD, IH$  are concurrent (Ex. 1); therefore  $IH$  will pass through  $F$ . Join  $EI, EH$ . Now [xi., Ex. 2, 3] the middle points of  $EI, EH, EF$  are collinear, but [XXXIV., Ex. 1] the middle points of  $EI, EH$  are the middle points of  $AC, BD$ . Hence the middle points of  $AC, BD, EF$  are collinear.

PROP. XLIV.—PROBLEM.

To a given, right line ( $AB$ ) to apply a parallelogram which shall be equal to a given triangle ( $C$ ), and have one of its angles equal to a given angle ( $D$ ).

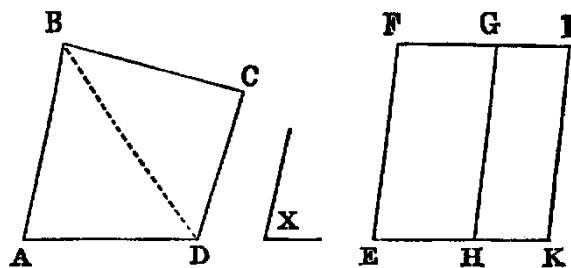


**Sol.**—Construct the parallelogram  $BEFG$  [XLII.] equal to the given triangle  $C$ , and having the angle  $B$  equal to the given angle  $D$ , and so that its side  $BE$  shall be in the same right line with  $AB$ . Through  $A$  draw  $AH$  parallel to  $BG$  [XXXI.], and produce  $FG$  to meet it in  $H$ . Join  $HB$ . Then because  $HA$  and  $FE$  are parallels, and  $HF$  intersects them, the sum of the angles  $AHF$ ,  $HFE$  is two right angles [XXIX.]; therefore the sum of the angles  $BHF$ ,  $HFE$  is less than two right angles; and therefore (Axiom XII.) the lines  $HB$ ,  $FE$ , if produced, will meet as at  $K$ . Through  $K$  draw  $KL$  parallel to  $AB$  [XXXI.], and produce  $HA$  and  $GB$  to meet it in the points  $L$  and  $M$ . *Then AM is a parallelogram fulfilling the required conditions.*

**Dem.**—The parallelogram  $AM$  is equal to  $GE$  [XLIII.]; but  $GE$  is equal to the triangle  $C$  (const.); therefore  $AM$  is equal to the triangle  $C$ . Again, the angle  $ABM$  is equal to  $EBG$  [XV.], and  $EBG$  is equal to  $D$  (const.); therefore the angle  $ABM$  is equal to  $D$ ; and  $AM$  is constructed on the given line; *therefore it is the parallelogram required.*

#### PROP. XLV.—PROBLEM.

*To construct a parallelogram equal to a given rectilineal figure (ABCD), and having an angle equal to a given rectilineal angle (X).*



**Sol.**—Join  $BD$ . Construct a parallelogram  $EG$  [XLII.] equal to the triangle  $ABD$ , and having the angle  $E$  equal to the given angle  $X$ ; and to the right line  $GH$  apply the parallelogram  $HI$  equal to the triangle  $BCD$ , and having the angle  $GHK$  equal to  $X$  [XLIV.], and so on for additional triangles if there be any. *Then EI is a parallelogram fulfilling the required conditions.*

**Dem.**—Because the angles  $GHK$ ,  $FEH$  are each equal to  $X$  (const.), they are equal to one another: to each add the angle  $GHE$ , and we have the sum of the angles  $GHK$ ,  $GHE$  equal to the sum of the angles  $FEH$ ,  $GHE$ ; but since  $HG$  is parallel to  $EF$ , and  $EH$  intersects them, the sum of  $FEH$ ,  $GHE$  is two right angles [XXIX.]. Hence the sum of  $GHK$ ,  $GHE$  is two right angles; therefore  $EH$ ,  $HK$  are in the same right line [XIV.].

Again, because  $GH$  intersects the parallels  $FG$ ,  $EK$ , the alternate angles  $FGH$ ,  $GHK$  are equal [XXIX.]: to each add the angle  $HGI$ , and we have the sum of the angles  $FGH$ ,  $HGI$  equal to the sum of the angles  $GHK$ ,  $HGI$ ; but since  $GI$  is parallel to  $HK$ , and  $GH$  intersects them, the sum of the angles  $GHK$ ,  $HGI$  is equal to two right angles [XXIX.]. Hence the sum of the angles  $FGH$ ,  $HGI$  is two right angles; therefore  $FG$  and  $GI$  are in the same right line [XIV.].

Again, because  $EG$  and  $HI$  are parallelograms,  $EF$  and  $KI$  are each parallel to  $GH$ ; hence [XXX.]  $EF$  is parallel to  $KI$ , and the opposite sides  $EK$  and  $FI$  are parallel; therefore  $EI$  is a parallelogram; and because the parallelogram  $EG$  (const.) is equal to the triangle  $ABD$ , and  $HI$  to the triangle  $BCD$ , the whole parallelogram  $EI$  is equal to the rectilineal figure  $ABCD$ , and it has the angle  $E$  equal to the given angle  $X$ . *Hence EI is a parallelogram fulfilling the required conditions.*

It would simplify Problems XLIV., XLV., if they were stated as the constructing of rectangles, and in this special form they would be better understood by the student, since rectangles are the simplest areas to which others are referred.

#### Exercises.

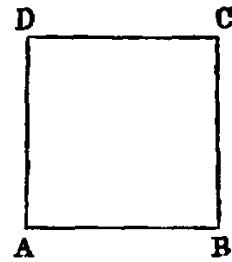
1. Construct a rectangle equal to the sum of two or any number of rectilineal figures.
2. Construct a rectangle equal to the difference of two given figures.

#### PROP. XLVI.—PROBLEM.

*On a given right line (AB) to describe a square.*

**Sol.**—Erect  $AD$  at right angles to  $AB$  [XI.], and make it equal to  $AB$  [III.]. Through  $D$  draw  $DC$  parallel to  $AB$  [XXXI.], and through  $B$  draw  $BC$  parallel to  $AD$ ; then  $AC$  is the square required.

**Dem.**—Because  $AC$  is a parallelogram,  $AB$  is equal to  $CD$  [XXXIV.]; but  $AB$  is equal to  $AD$  (const.); therefore  $AD$  is equal to  $CD$ , and  $AD$  is equal to  $BC$  [XXXIV.]. Hence the four sides are equal; therefore  $AC$  is a lozenge, and the angle  $A$  is a right angle. *Therefore AC is a square (Def. XXX.).*



Exercises.

1. The squares on equal lines are equal; and, conversely, the sides of equal squares are equal.
2. The parallelograms about the diagonal of a square are squares.
3. If on the four sides of a square, or on the sides produced, points be taken equidistant from the four angles, they will be the angular points of another square, and similarly for a regular pentagon, hexagon, &c.
4. Divide a given square into five equal parts; namely, four right-angled triangles, and a square.

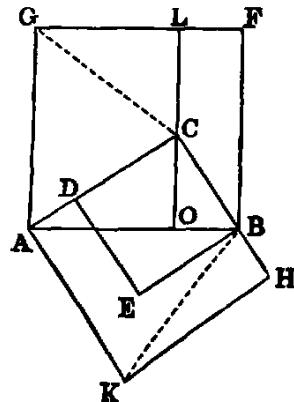
PROP. XLVII.—THEOREM.

*In a right-angled triangle (ABC) the square on the hypotenuse (AB) is equal to the sum of the squares on the other two sides (AC, BC).*

**Dem.**—On the sides  $AB$ ,  $BC$ ,  $CA$  describe squares [XLVI.]. Draw  $CL$  parallel to  $AG$ . Join  $CG$ ,  $BK$ . Then because the angle  $ACB$  is right (hyp.), and  $ACH$  is right, being the angle of a square, the sum of the angles  $ACB$ ,  $ACH$  is two right angles; therefore  $BC$ ,  $CH$  are in the same right line [xiv.]. In like manner  $AC$ ,  $CD$  are in the same right line. Again, because  $BAG$  is the angle of a square it is a right angle: in like manner  $CAK$  is a right angle. Hence  $BAG$  is equal to  $CAK$ : to each add  $BAC$ , and we get the angle  $CAG$  equal to  $KAB$ . Again, since  $BG$  and  $CK$  are squares,  $BA$  is equal to  $AG$ , and  $CA$  to  $AK$ . Hence the two triangles  $CAG$ ,  $KAB$  have the sides  $CA$ ,  $AG$  in one respectively equal to the sides  $KA$ ,  $AB$  in the other, and the contained angles  $CAG$ ,  $KAB$  also equal. Therefore [iv.] the triangles are equal; but the parallelogram  $AL$  is double of the triangle  $CAG$  [XLI.], because they are on the same base  $AG$ , and between the same parallels  $AG$  and  $CL$ . In like manner the parallelogram  $AH$  is double of the triangle  $KAB$ , because they are on the same base  $AK$ , and between the same parallels  $AK$  and  $BH$ ; and since doubles of equal things are equal (Axiom VI.), the parallelogram  $AL$  is equal to  $AH$ . In like manner it can be proved that the parallelogram  $BL$  is equal to  $BD$ . Hence the whole square  $AF$  is equal to the sum of the two squares  $AH$  and  $BD$ .

*Or thus:* Let all the squares be made in reversed directions. Join  $CG$ ,  $BK$ , and through  $C$  draw  $OL$  parallel to  $AG$ . Now, taking the  $\angle BAC$  from the right  $\angle s BAG$ ,  $CAK$ , the remaining  $\angle s CAG$ ,  $BAK$  are equal. Hence the  $\triangle s CAG$ ,  $BAK$  have the side  $CA = AK$ , and  $AG = AB$ , and the  $\angle CAG = BAK$ ; therefore [iv.] they are equal; and since [XLI.] the  $\square s AL$ ,  $AH$  are respectively the doubles of these triangles, they are equal. In like manner the  $\square s BL$ ,  $BD$  are equal; hence the whole square  $AF$  is equal to the sum of the two squares  $AH$ ,  $BD$ .

This proof is shorter than the usual one, since it is not necessary to prove that  $AC$ ,  $CD$  are in one right line. In a similar way the Proposition may be proved by taking any of the eight figures formed by turning the squares in all possible directions. Another simplification of the proof would be got by considering that the point  $A$  is such that one of the  $\triangle s CAG$ ,  $BAK$  can be turned round it in its own plane until it coincides with the other; and hence that they are congruent.



### Exercises.

1. The square on  $AC$  is equal to the rectangle  $AB \cdot AO$ , and the square on  $BC = AB \cdot BO$ .
2. The square on  $CO = AO \cdot OB$ .
3.  $AC^2 - BC^2 = AO^2 - BO^2$ .
4. Find a line whose square shall be equal to the sum of two given squares.
5. Given the base of a triangle and the difference of the squares of its sides, the locus of its vertex is a right line perpendicular to the base.
6. The transverse lines  $BK$ ,  $CG$  are perpendicular to each other.
7. If  $EG$  be joined, its square is equal to  $AC^2 + 4BC^2$ .
8. The square described on the sum of the sides of a right-angled triangle exceeds the square on the hypotenuse by four times the area of the triangle (see fig., XLVI., Ex. 3). More generally, if the vertical angle of a triangle be equal to the angle of a regular polygon of  $n$  sides, then the regular polygon of  $n$  sides, described on a line equal to the sum of its sides, exceeds the area of the regular polygon of  $n$  sides described on the base by  $n$  times the area of the triangle.
9. If  $AC$  and  $BK$  intersect in  $P$ , and through  $P$  a line be drawn parallel to  $BC$ , meeting  $AB$  in  $Q$ ; then  $CP$  is equal to  $PQ$ .
10. Each of the triangles  $AGK$  and  $BEF$ , formed by joining adjacent corners of the squares, is equal to the right-angled triangle  $ABC$ .
11. Find a line whose square shall be equal to the difference of the squares on two lines.
12. The square on the difference of the sides  $AC$ ,  $CB$  is less than the square on the hypotenuse by four times the area of the triangle.
13. If  $AE$  be joined, the lines  $AE$ ,  $BK$ ,  $CL$ , are concurrent.
14. In an equilateral triangle, three times the square on any side is equal to four times the square on the perpendicular to it from the opposite vertex.
15. On  $BE$ , a part of the side  $BC$  of a square  $ABCD$ , is described the square  $BEFG$ , having its side  $BG$  in the continuation of  $AB$ ; it is required to divide the figure  $AGFECD$  into three parts which will form a square.
16. Four times the sum of the squares on the medians which bisect the sides of a right-angled triangle is equal to five times the square on the hypotenuse.
17. If perpendiculars be let fall on the sides of a polygon from any point, dividing each side into two segments, the sum of the squares on one set of alternate segments is equal to the sum of the squares on the remaining set.
18. The sum of the squares on lines drawn from any point to one pair of opposite angles of a rectangle is equal to the sum of the squares on the lines from the same point to the remaining pair.
19. Divide the hypotenuse of a right-angled triangle into two parts, such that the difference between their squares shall be equal to the square on one of the sides.

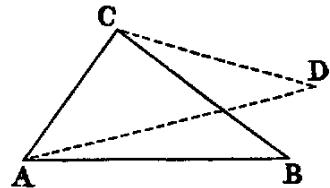
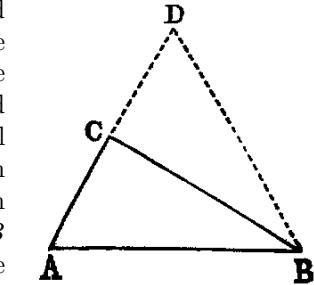
20. From the extremities of the base of a triangle perpendiculars are let fall on the opposite sides; prove that the sum of the rectangles contained by the sides and their lower segments is equal to the square on the base.

#### PROP. XLVIII.—THEOREM.

*If the square on one side (AB) of a triangle be equal to the sum of the squares on the remaining sides (AC, CB), the angle (C) opposite to that side is a right angle.*

**Dem.**—Erect  $CD$  at right angles to  $CB$  [xi.], and make  $CD$  equal to  $CA$  [iii.]. Join  $BD$ . Then because  $AC$  is equal to  $CD$ , the square on  $AC$  is equal to the square on  $CD$ : to each add the square on  $CB$ , and we have the sum of the squares on  $AC, CB$  equal to the sum of the squares on  $CD, CB$ ; but the sum of the squares on  $AC, CB$  is equal to the square on  $AB$  (hyp.), and the sum of the squares on  $CD, CB$  is equal to the square on  $BD$  [xlvi.]. Therefore the square on  $AB$  is equal to the square on  $BD$ . Hence  $AB$  is equal to  $BD$  [xlvi., Ex. 1]. Again, because  $AC$  is equal to  $CD$  (const.), and  $CB$  common to the two triangles  $ACB, DCB$ , and the base  $AB$  equal to the base  $DB$ , the angle  $ACB$  is equal to the angle  $DCB$ ; but the angle  $DCB$  is a right angle (const.). *Hence the angle  $ACB$  is a right angle.*

The foregoing proof forms an exception to Euclid's demonstrations of converse propositions, for it is direct. The following is an indirect proof:—If  $CB$  be not at right angles to  $AC$ , let  $CD$  be perpendicular to it. Make  $CD = CB$ . Join  $AD$ . Then, as before, it can be proved that  $AD$  is equal to  $AB$ , and  $CD$  is equal to  $CB$  (const.). This is contrary to Prop. vii. *Hence the angle  $ACB$  is a right angle.*



#### Questions for Examination on Book I.

1. What is Geometry?
2. What is geometric magnitude? *Ans.* That which has extension in space.
3. Name the primary concepts of geometry. *Ans.* Points, lines, surfaces, and solids.
4. How may lines be divided? *Ans.* Into straight and curved.
5. How is a straight line generated? *Ans.* By the motion of a point which has the same direction throughout.
6. How is a curved line generated? *Ans.* By the motion of a point which continually changes its direction.
7. How may surfaces be divided? *Ans.* Into planes and curved surfaces.
8. How may a plane surface be generated. *Ans.* By the motion of a right line which crosses another right line, and moves along it without changing its direction.
9. Why has a point no dimensions?
10. Why has a line neither breadth nor thickness?
11. How many dimensions has a surface?
12. What is Plane Geometry?

13. What portion of plane geometry forms the subject of the "First Six Books of Euclid's Elements"? *Ans.* The geometry of the *point*, *line*, and *circle*.
14. What is the subject-matter of Book I.?
15. How many conditions are necessary to fix the position of a point in a plane? *Ans.* Two; for it must be the intersection of two lines, straight or curved.
16. Give examples taken from Book I.
17. In order to construct a line, how many conditions must be given? *Ans.* Two; as, for instance, two points through which it must pass; or one point through which it must pass and a line to which it must be parallel or perpendicular, &c.
18. What problems on the drawing of lines occur in Book I.? *Ans.* II., IX., XI., XII., XXIII., XXXI., in each of which, except Problem 2, there are two conditions. The direction in Problem 2 is indeterminate.
19. How many conditions are required in order to describe a circle? *Ans.* Three; as, for instance, the position of the centre (which depends on two conditions) and the length of the radius (compare Post. III.).
20. How is a proposition proved indirectly? *Ans.* By proving that its contradictory is false.
21. What is meant by the obverse of a proposition?
22. What propositions in Book I. are the obverse respectively of Propositions IV., V., VI., XXVII.?
23. What proposition is an instance of the *rule of identity*?
24. What are congruent figures?
25. What other name is applied to them? *Ans.* They are said to be identically equal.
26. Mention all the instances of equality which are not congruence that occur in Book I.
27. What is the difference between the symbols denoting congruence and identity?
28. Classify the properties of triangles and parallelograms proved in Book I.
29. What proposition is the converse of Prop. XXVI., Part I.?
30. Define *adjacent*, *exterior*, *interior*, *alternate* angles respectively.
31. What is meant by the projection of one line on another?
32. What are meant by the medians of a triangle?
33. What is meant by the third diagonal of a quadrilateral?
34. Mention some propositions in Book I. which are particular cases of more general ones that follow.
35. What is the sum of all the exterior angles of any rectilineal figure equal to?
36. How many conditions must be given in order to construct a triangle? *Ans.* Three; such as the three sides, or two sides and an angle, &c.

### Exercises on Book I.

1. Any triangle is equal to the fourth part of that which is formed by drawing through each vertex a line parallel to its opposite side.
2. The three perpendiculars of the first triangle in question 1 are the perpendiculars at the middle points of the sides of the second triangle.
3. Through a given point draw a line so that the portion intercepted by the legs of a given angle may be bisected in the point.
4. The three medians of a triangle are concurrent.
5. The medians of a triangle divide each other in the ratio of 2 : 1.
6. Construct a triangle, being given two sides and the median of the third side.
7. In every triangle the sum of the medians is less than the perimeter, and greater than three-fourths of the perimeter.
8. Construct a triangle, being given a side and the two medians of the remaining sides.
9. Construct a triangle, being given the three medians.
10. The angle included between the perpendicular from the vertical angle of a triangle on the base, and the bisector of the vertical angle, is equal to half the difference of the base angles.
11. Find in two parallels two points which shall be equidistant from a given point, and whose line of connexion shall be parallel to a given line.
12. Construct a parallelogram, being given two diagonals and a side.

13. The smallest median of a triangle corresponds to the greatest side.
14. Find in two parallels two points subtending a right angle at a given point and equally distant from it.
15. The sum of the distances of any point in the base of an isosceles triangle from the equal sides is equal to the distance of either extremity of the base from the opposite side.
16. The three perpendiculars at the middle points of the sides of a triangle are concurrent. Hence prove that perpendiculars from the vertices on the opposite sides are concurrent [see Ex. 2].
17. Inscribe a lozenge in a triangle having for an angle one angle of the triangle.
18. Inscribe a square in a triangle having its base on a side of the triangle.
19. Find the locus of a point, the sum or the difference of whose distance from two fixed lines is equal to a given length.
20. The sum of the perpendiculars from any point in the interior of an equilateral triangle is equal to the perpendicular from any vertex on the opposite side.
21. The distance of the foot of the perpendicular from either extremity of the base of a triangle on the bisector of the vertical angle, from the middle point of the base, is equal to half the difference of the sides.
22. In the same case, if the bisector of the external vertical angle be taken, the distance will be equal to half the sum of the sides.
23. Find a point in one of the sides of a triangle such that the sum of the intercepts made by the other sides, on parallels drawn from the same point to these sides, may be equal to a given length.
24. If two angles have their legs respectively parallel, their bisectors are either parallel or perpendicular.
25. If lines be drawn from the extremities of the base of a triangle to the feet of perpendiculars let fall from the same points on either bisector of the vertical angle, these lines meet on the other bisector of the vertical angle.
26. The perpendiculars of a triangle are the bisectors of the angles of the triangle whose vertices are the feet of these perpendiculars.
27. Inscribe in a given triangle a parallelogram whose diagonals shall intersect in a given point.
28. Construct a quadrilateral, the four sides being given in magnitude, and the middle points of two opposite sides being given in position.
29. The bases of two or more triangles having a common vertex are given, both in magnitude and position, and the sum of the areas is given; prove that the locus of the vertex is a right line.
30. If the sum of the perpendiculars let fall from a given point on the sides of a given rectilineal figure be given, the locus of the point is a right line.
31.  $ABC$  is an isosceles triangle whose equal sides are  $AB, AC$ ;  $B'C'$  is any secant cutting the equal sides in  $B', C'$ , so that  $AB' + AC' = AB + AC$ : prove that  $B'C'$  is greater than  $BC$ .
32.  $A, B$  are two given points, and  $P$  is a point in a given line  $L$ ; prove that the difference of  $AP$  and  $PB$  is a maximum when  $L$  bisects the angle  $APB$ ; and that their sum is a minimum if it bisects the supplement.
33. Bisect a quadrilateral by a right line drawn from one of its angular points.
34.  $AD$  and  $BC$  are two parallel lines cut obliquely by  $AB$ , and perpendicularly by  $AC$ ; and between these lines we draw  $BED$ , cutting  $AC$  in  $E$ , such that  $ED = 2AB$ ; prove that the angle  $DBC$  is one-third of  $ABC$ .
35. If  $O$  be the point of concurrence of the bisectors of the angles of the triangle  $ABC$ , and if  $AO$  produced meet  $BC$  in  $D$ , and from  $O$ ,  $OE$  be drawn perpendicular to  $BC$ ; prove that the angle  $BOD$  is equal to the angle  $COE$ .
36. If the exterior angles of a triangle be bisected, the three external triangles formed on the sides of the original triangle are equiangular.
37. The angle made by the bisectors of two consecutive angles of a convex quadrilateral is equal to half the sum of the remaining angles; and the angle made by the bisectors of two opposite angles is equal to half the difference of the two other angles.

38. If in the construction of the figure, Proposition XLVII.,  $EF$ ,  $KG$  be joined,

$$EF^2 + KG^2 = 5AB^2.$$

39. Given the middle points of the sides of a convex polygon of an odd number of sides, construct the polygon.

40. Trisect a quadrilateral by lines drawn from one of its angles.

41. Given the base of a triangle in magnitude and position and the sum of the sides; prove that the perpendicular at either extremity of the base to the adjacent side, and the external bisector of the vertical angle, meet on a given line perpendicular to the base.

42. The bisectors of the angles of a convex quadrilateral form a quadrilateral whose opposite angles are supplemental. If the first quadrilateral be a parallelogram, the second is a rectangle; if the first be a rectangle, the second is a square.

43. The middle points of the sides  $AB$ ,  $BC$ ,  $CA$  of a triangle are respectively  $D$ ,  $E$ ,  $F$ ;  $DG$  is drawn parallel to  $BF$  to meet  $EF$ ; prove that the sides of the triangle  $DCG$  are respectively equal to the three medians of the triangle  $ABC$ .

44. Find the path of a billiard ball started from a given point which, after being reflected from the four sides of the table, will pass through another given point.

45. If two lines bisecting two angles of a triangle and terminated by the opposite sides be equal, the triangle is isosceles.

46. State and prove the Proposition corresponding to Exercise 41, when the base and difference of the sides are given.

47. If a square be inscribed in a triangle, the rectangle under its side and the sum of the base and altitude is equal to twice the area of the triangle.

48. If  $AB$ ,  $AC$  be equal sides of an isosceles triangle, and if  $BD$  be a perpendicular on  $AC$ ; prove that  $BC^2 = 2AC \cdot CD$ .

49. The sum of the equilateral triangles described on the legs of a right-angled triangle is equal to the equilateral triangle described on the hypotenuse.

50. Given the base of a triangle, the difference of the base angles, and the sum or difference of the sides; construct it.

51. Given the base of a triangle, the median that bisects the base, and the area; construct it.

52. If the diagonals  $AC$ ,  $BD$  of a quadrilateral  $ABCD$  intersect in  $E$ , and be bisected in the points  $F$ ,  $G$ , then

$$4 \triangle EFG = (AEB + ECD) - (AED + EBC).$$

53. If squares be described on the sides of any triangle, the lines of connexion of the adjacent corners are respectively—(1) the doubles of the medians of the triangle; (2) perpendicular to them.

## BOOK II.

### THEORY OF RECTANGLES

Every Proposition in the Second Book has either a square or a rectangle in its enunciation. Before commencing it the student should read the following preliminary explanations: by their assistance it will be seen that this Book, which is usually considered difficult, will be rendered not only easy, but almost intuitively evident.

1. As the linear unit is that by which we express all linear measures, so the square unit is that to which all superficial measures are referred. Again, as there are different linear units in use, such as in this country, inches, feet, yards, miles, &c., and in France, metres, and their multiples or sub-multiples, so different square units are employed.

2. A square unit is the square described on a line whose length is the linear unit. Thus a square inch is the square described on a line whose length is an inch; a square foot is the square described on a line whose length is a foot, &c.

3. If we take a linear foot, describe a square on it, divide two adjacent sides each into twelve equal parts, and draw parallels to the sides, we evidently divide the square foot into square inches; and as there will manifestly be 12 rectangular parallelograms, each containing 12 square inches, the square foot contains 144 square inches.

In the same manner it can be shown that a square yard contains 9 square feet; and so in general the square described on any line contains  $n^2$  times the square described on the  $n^{th}$  part of the line. Thus, as a simple case, the square on a line is four times the square on its half. On account of this property the second power of a quantity is called its square; and, conversely, the square on a line  $AB$  is expressed symbolically by  $AB^2$ .

4. If a rectangular parallelogram be such that two adjacent sides contain respectively  $m$  and  $n$  linear units, by dividing one side into  $m$  and the other into  $n$  equal parts, and drawing parallels to the sides, the whole area is evidently divided into  $mn$  square units. Hence the area of the parallelogram is found by multiplying its length by its breadth, and this explains why we say (*see Def. IV.*) a rectangle is contained by any two adjacent sides; for if we multiply the length of one by the length of the other we have the area. Thus, if  $AB$ ,  $AD$  be two adjacent sides of a rectangle, the rectangle is expressed by  $AB \cdot AD$ .

#### DEFINITIONS.

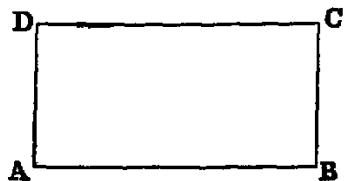
I. If a point  $C$  be taken in a line  $AB$ , the parts  $AC$ ,  $CB$  are called *segments*, and  $C$  a *point of division*.



II. If  $C$  be taken in the line  $AB$  produced,  $AC$ ,  $CB$  are still called the segments of the line  $AB$ ; but  $C$  is called a point of *external* division.



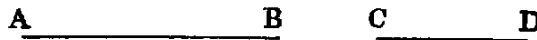
III. A parallelogram whose angles are right angles is called a *rectangle*.



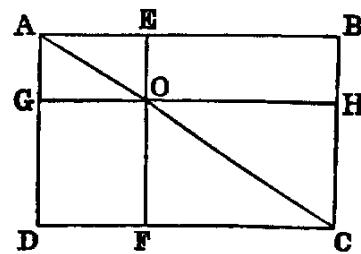
IV. A rectangle is said to be contained by any two adjacent sides. Thus the rectangle  $ABCD$  is said to be contained by  $AB$ ,  $AD$ , or by  $AB$ ,  $BC$ , &c.

V. The rectangle contained by two separate lines such as  $AB$  and  $CD$  is the parallelogram formed by erecting a perpendicular to

$AB$ , at  $A$ , equal to  $CD$ , and drawing parallels:  
the area of the rectangle will be  $AB \cdot CD$ .



VI. In any parallelogram the figure which is composed of either of the parallelograms about a diagonal and the two complements [see I., XLIII.] is called a gnomon. Thus, if we take away either of the parallelograms  $AO$ ,  $OC$  from the parallelogram  $AC$ , the remainder is called a *gnomon*.



#### PROP. I.—THEOREM.

*If there be two lines ( $A$ ,  $BC$ ), one of which is divided into any number of parts ( $BD$ ,  $DE$ ,  $EC$ ), the rectangle contained by the two lines ( $A$ ,  $BC$ ), is equal to the sum of the rectangles contained by the undivided line ( $A$ ) and the several parts of the divided line.*

**Dem.**—Erect  $BF$  at right angles to  $BC$  [I., xi.] and make it equal to  $A$ . Complete the parallelogram  $BK$  (Def. v.). Through  $D$ ,  $E$  draw  $DG$ ,  $EH$  parallel to  $BF$ . Because the angles at  $B$ ,  $D$ ,  $E$  are right angles, each of the quadrilaterals  $BG$ ,  $DH$ ,  $EK$  is a rectangle.

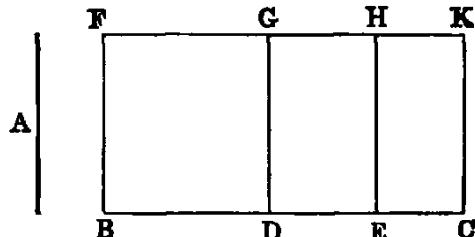
Again, since  $A$  is equal to  $BF$  (const.), the rectangle contained by  $A$  and  $BC$  is the rectangle contained by  $BF$  and  $BC$  (Def. v.); but  $BK$  is the rectangle contained by  $BF$  and  $BC$ . Hence the rectangle contained by  $A$  and  $BC$  is  $BK$ . In like manner the rectangle contained by  $A$  and  $BD$  is  $BG$ . Again, since  $A$  is equal to  $BF$  (const.), and  $BF$  is equal to  $DG$  [I. XXXIV.],  $A$  is equal to  $DG$ . Hence the rectangle contained by  $A$  and  $DE$  is the figure  $DH$  (Def. v.). In like manner the rectangle contained by  $A$  and  $EC$  is the figure  $EK$ . Hence we have the following identities:—

$$\text{Rectangle contained by } A \text{ and } BD \equiv BG.$$

$$\text{“ “ “ } A \text{, } DE \equiv DH.$$

$$\text{“ “ “ } A \text{, } EC \equiv EK.$$

$$\text{“ “ “ } A \text{, } BC \equiv BK.$$



But  $BK$  is equal to the sum of  $BG$ ,  $DH$ ,  $EK$  (I., Axiom IX.). Therefore the rectangle contained by  $A$  and  $BC$  is equal to the sum of the rectangles contained by  $A$  and  $BD$ ,  $A$  and  $DE$ ,  $A$  and  $EC$ .

If we denote the lines  $BD$ ,  $DE$ ,  $EC$  by  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$ , the Proposition asserts that the rectangle contained by  $A$ , and  $a + b + c$  is equal to the sum of the rectangles contained by  $A$  and  $a$ ,  $A$

and  $b$ ,  $A$  and  $c$ , or, as it may be written,  $A(a + b + c) = Aa + Ab + Ac$ . This corresponds to the distributive law in multiplication, and shows that rectangles in Geometry, and products in Arithmetic and Algebra, are subject to the same rules.

**Illustration.**—Suppose  $A$  to be 6 inches;  $BD$ , 5 inches;  $DE$ , 4 inches;  $EC$ , 3 inches; then  $BC$  will be 12 inches; and the rectangles will have the following values:—

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Rectangle } A \cdot BC &= 6 \times 12 = 72 \text{ square inches.} \\ \text{,, } A \cdot BD &= 6 \times 5 = 30 \quad " \\ \text{,, } A \cdot DE &= 6 \times 4 = 24 \quad " \\ \text{,, } A \cdot EC &= 6 \times 3 = 18 \quad " \end{aligned}$$

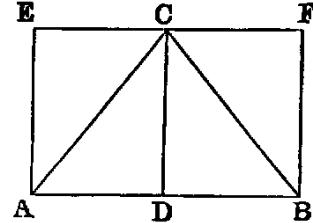
Now the sum of the three last rectangles, viz. 30, 24, 18, is 72. Hence the rectangle  $A \cdot BC = A \cdot BD + A \cdot DE + A \cdot EC$ .

The Second Book is occupied with the relations between the segments of a line divided in various ways. All these can be proved in the most simple manner by Algebraic Multiplication. We recommend the student to make himself acquainted with the proofs by this method as well as with those of Euclid. He will thus better understand the meaning of each Proposition.

*Cor. 1.—The rectangle contained by a line and the difference of two others is equal to the difference of the rectangles contained by the line and each of the others.*

*Cor. 2.—The area of a triangle is equal to half the rectangle contained by its base and perpendicular.*

**Dem.**—From the vertex  $C$  let fall the perpendicular  $CD$ . Draw  $EF$  parallel to  $AB$ , and  $AE, BF$  each parallel to  $CD$ . Then  $AF$  is the rectangle contained by  $AB$  and  $BF$ ; but  $BF$  is equal to  $CD$ . Hence  $AF = AB \cdot CD$ ; but [I. xli.] the triangle  $ABC$  is = half the parallelogram  $AF$ . Therefore the triangle  $ABC$  is  $= \frac{1}{2}AB \cdot CD$ .



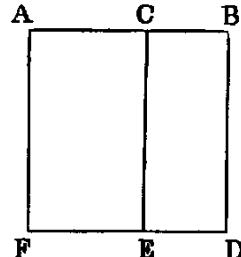
#### PROP. II.—THEOREM.

*If a line (AB) be divided into any two parts (at C), the square on the whole line is equal to the sum of the rectangles contained by the whole and each of the segments (AC, CB).*

**Dem.**—On  $AB$  describe the square  $ABDF$  [I. xlvi.], and through  $C$  draw  $CE$  parallel to  $AF$  [I. xxxi.]. Now, since  $AB$  is equal to  $AF$ , the rectangle contained by  $AB$  and  $AC$  is equal to the rectangle contained by  $AF$  and  $AC$ ; but  $AE$  is the rectangle contained by  $AF$  and  $AC$ . Hence the rectangle contained by  $AB$  and  $AC$  is equal to  $AE$ . In like manner the rectangle contained by  $AB$  and  $CB$  is equal to the figure  $CD$ . Therefore the sum of the two rectangles  $AB \cdot AC, AB \cdot CB$  is equal to the square on  $AB$ .

Or thus:  
and

Hence, multiplying, we get  $AB^2 = AB \cdot AC + AB \cdot CB$ .

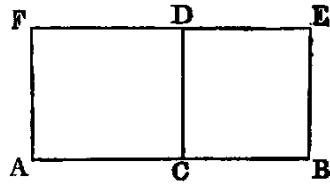


This Proposition is the particular case of I. when the divided and undivided lines are equal, hence it does not require a separate Demonstration.

### PROP. III.—THEOREM.

*If a line (AB) be divided into two segments (at C), the rectangle contained by the whole line and either segment (CB) is equal to the square on that segment together with the rectangle contained by the segments.*

**Dem.**—On BC describe the square BCDE [I. XLVI.]. Through A draw AF parallel to CD; produce ED to meet AF in F. Now since CB is equal to CD, the rectangle contained by AC, CB is equal to the rectangle contained by AC, CD; but the rectangle contained by AC, CD is the figure AD. Hence the rectangle AC.CB is equal to the figure AD, and the square on CB is the figure CE. Hence the rectangle AC.CB, together with the square on CB, is equal to the figure AE.



Again, since CB is equal to BE, the rectangle AB.CB is equal to the rectangle AB.BE; but the rectangle AB.BE is equal to the figure AE. Hence the rectangle AB.CB is equal to the figure AE. And since things which are equal to the same are equal to one another, *the rectangle AC.CB, together with the square on CB, is equal to the rectangle AB.CB.*

Or thus:

$$AB = AC + CB,$$

$$CB = CB.$$

Hence

$$AB \cdot CB = AC \cdot CB + CB^2.$$

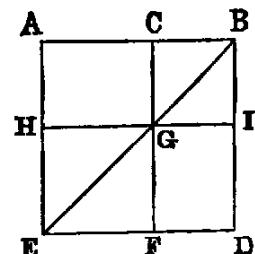
Prop. III. is the particular case of Prop. I., when the undivided line is equal to a segment of the divided line.

### PROP. IV.—THEOREM.

*If a line (AB) be divided into any two parts (at C), the square on the whole line is equal to the sum of the squares on the parts (AC, CB), together with twice their rectangle.*

**Dem.**—On AB describe a square ABDE. Join EB; through C draw CF parallel to AE, intersecting BE in G; and through G draw HI parallel to AB.

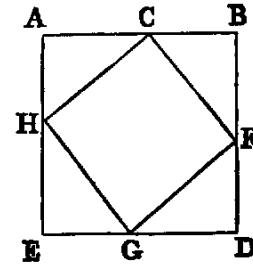
Now since AE is equal to AB, the angle ABE is equal to AEB [I. v.]; but since BE intersects the parallels AE, CF, the angle AEB is equal to CGB [I. XXIX.]. Hence the angle CBG is equal to CGB, and therefore [I. vi.] CG is equal to CB; but CG is equal to BI and CB to GI. Hence the figure CBIG is a lozenge, and the angle CBI is right. Hence (I., Def. XXX.) it is a square. In like manner the figure EFGH is a square.



Again, since  $CB$  is equal to  $CG$ , the rectangle  $AC \cdot CB$  is equal to the rectangle  $AC \cdot CG$ ; but  $AC \cdot CG$  is the figure  $AG$  (Def. IV.). Therefore the rectangle  $AC \cdot CB$  is equal to the figure  $AG$ . Now the figures  $AG$ ,  $GD$  are equal [I. XLIII.], being the complements about the diagonal of the parallelogram  $AD$ . Hence the parallelograms  $AG$ ,  $GD$  are together equal to twice the rectangle  $AC \cdot CB$ . Again, the figure  $HF$  is the square on  $HG$ , and  $HG$  is equal to  $AC$ . Therefore  $HF$  is equal to the square on  $AC$ , and  $CI$  is the square on  $CB$ ; but the whole figure  $AD$ , which is the square on  $AB$ , is the sum of the four figures  $HF$ ,  $CI$ ,  $AG$ ,  $GD$ . *Therefore the square on  $AB$  is equal to the sum of the squares on  $AC$ ,  $CB$ , and twice the rectangle  $AC \cdot CB$ .*

*Or thus:* On  $AB$  describe the square  $ABDE$ , and cut off  $AH$ ,  $EG$ ,  $DF$  each equal to  $CB$ . Join  $CF$ ,  $FG$ ,  $GH$ ,  $HC$ . Now the four  $\triangle$ s  $ACH$ ,  $CBF$ ,  $FDG$ ,  $GEH$  are evidently equal; therefore their sum is equal to four times the  $\triangle ACH$ ; but the  $\triangle ACH$  is half the rectangle  $AC \cdot AH$  (I. Cor. 2)—that is, equal to half the rectangle  $AC \cdot CB$ . Therefore the sum of the four triangles is equal to  $2AC \cdot CB$ .

Again, the figure  $CFGH$  is a square [I. XLVI., Cor. 3], and equal to  $AC^2 + AH^2$  [I. XLVII.]—that is, equal to  $AC^2 + CB^2$ . *Hence the whole figure  $ABDE = AC^2 + CB^2 + 2AC \cdot CB$ .*



*Or thus:*

$$AB = AC + CB.$$

Squaring, we get

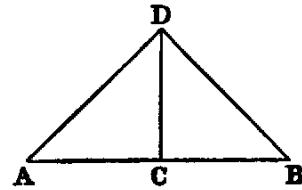
$$AB^2 = AC^2 + 2AC \cdot CB + CB^2.$$

*Cor. 1.—The parallelograms about the diagonal of a square are squares.*

*Cor. 2.—The square on a line is equal to four times the square on its half.*

For let  $AB = 2AC$ , then  $AB^2 = 4AC^2$ .

This Cor. may be proved by the First Book thus: Erect  $CD$  at right angles to  $AB$ , and make  $CD = AC$  or  $CB$ . Join  $AD$ ,  $DB$ .



Then  $AD^2 = AC^2 + CD^2 = 2AC^2$

In like manner,  $DB^2 = 2CB^2$ ;

therefore  $AD^2 + DB^2 = 2AC^2 + 2CB^2 = 4AC^2$ .

But since the angle  $ADB$  is right,  $AD^2 + DB^2 = AB^2$ ;

therefore  $AB^2 = 4AC^2$ .

*Cor. 3.—If a line be divided into any number of parts, the square on the whole is equal to the sum of the squares on all the parts, together with twice the sum of the rectangles contained by the several distinct pairs of parts.*

### Exercises.

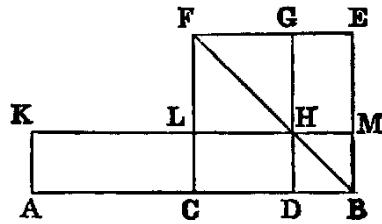
1. Prove Proposition IV. by using Propositions II. and III.
2. If from the vertical angle of a right-angled triangle a perpendicular be let fall on the hypotenuse, its square is equal to the rectangle contained by the segments of the hypotenuse.
3. From the hypotenuse of a right-angled triangle portions are cut off equal to the adjacent sides; prove that the square on the middle segment is equal to twice the rectangle contained by the extreme segments.
4. In any right-angled triangle the square on the sum of the hypotenuse and perpendicular, from the right angle on the hypotenuse, exceeds the square on the sum of the sides by the square on the perpendicular.
5. The square on the perimeter of a right-angled triangle is equal to twice the rectangle contained by the sum of the hypotenuse and one side, and the sum of the hypotenuse and the other side.

### PROP. V.—THEOREM.

*If a line (AB) be divided into two equal parts (at C), and also into two unequal parts (at D), the rectangle (AD . DB) contained by the unequal parts, together with the square on the part (CD) between the points of section, is equal to the square on half the line.*

**Dem.**—On  $CB$  describe the square  $CBEF$  [I. XLVI.]. Join  $BF$ . Through  $D$  draw  $DG$  parallel to  $CF$ , meeting  $BF$  in  $H$ . Through  $H$  draw  $KM$  parallel to  $AB$ , and through  $A$  draw  $AK$  parallel to  $CL$  [I. XXXI.].

The parallelogram  $CM$  is equal to  $DE$  [I. XLIII., Cor. 2]; but  $AL$  is equal to  $CM$  [I. XXXVI.], because they are on equal bases  $AC, CB$ , and between the same parallels; therefore  $AL$  is equal to  $DE$ : to each add  $CH$ , and we get the parallelogram  $AH$  equal to the gnomon  $CMG$ ; but  $AH$  is equal to the rectangle  $AD . DH$ , and therefore equal to the rectangle  $AD . DB$ , since  $DH$  is equal to  $DB$  [IV., Cor. 1]; therefore the rectangle  $AD . DB$  is equal to the gnomon  $CMG$ , and the square on  $CD$  is equal to the figure  $LG$ . Hence the rectangle  $AD . DB$ , together with the square on  $CD$ , is equal to the whole figure  $CBEF$ —that is, to the square on  $CB$ .



Or thus:

$$AD = AC + CD = BC + CD;$$

$$DB = BC - CD;$$

therefore  $AD . DB = (BC + CD)(BC - CD) = BC^2 - CD^2$ .

Hence  $AD . DB + CD^2 = BC^2$ .

*Cor. 1.*—The rectangle  $AD . DB$  is the rectangle contained by the sum of the lines  $AC, CD$  and their difference; and we have proved it equal to the difference between the square on  $AC$  and the square on  $CD$ . Hence the difference of the

*squares on two lines is equal to the rectangle contained by their sum and their difference.*

*Cor. 2.*—The perimeter of the rectangle  $AH$  is equal to  $2AB$ , and is therefore independent of the position of the point  $D$  on the line  $AB$ ; and the area of the same rectangle is less than the square on half the line by the square on the segment between  $D$  and the middle point of the line; therefore, when  $D$  is the middle point, the rectangle will have the maximum area. *Hence, of all rectangles having the same perimeter, the square has the greatest area.*

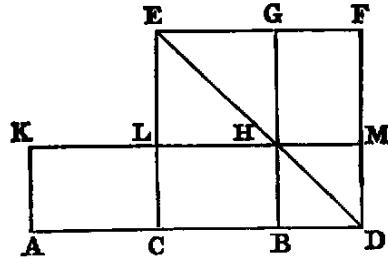
#### Exercises.

1. Divide a given line so that the rectangle contained by its parts may have a maximum area.
2. Divide a given line so that the rectangle contained by its segments may be equal to a given square, not exceeding the square on half the given line.
3. The rectangle contained by the sum and the difference of two sides of a triangle is equal to the rectangle contained by the base and the difference of the segments of the base, made by the perpendicular from the vertex.
4. The difference of the sides of a triangle is less than the difference of the segments of the base, made by the perpendicular from the vertex.
5. The difference between the square on one of the equal sides of an isosceles triangle, and the square on any line drawn from the vertex to a point in the base, is equal to the rectangle contained by the segments of the base.
6. The square on either side of a right-angled triangle is equal to the rectangle contained by the sum and the difference of the hypotenuse and the other side.

#### PROP. VI.—THEOREM.

*If a line ( $AB$ ) be bisected (at  $C$ ), and divided externally in any point ( $D$ ), the rectangle ( $AD \cdot BD$ ) contained by the segments made by the external point, together with the square on half the line, is equal to the square on the segment between the middle point and the point of external division.*

**Dem.**—On  $CD$  describe the square  $CDFE$  [I. XLVI.], and join  $DE$ ; through  $B$  draw  $BHG$  parallel to  $CE$  [I. XXXI.], meeting  $DE$  in  $H$ ; through  $H$  draw  $KLM$  parallel to  $AD$ ; and through  $A$  draw  $AK$  parallel to  $CL$ . Then because  $AC$  is equal to  $CB$ , the rectangle  $AL$  is equal to  $CH$  [I. XXXVI.]; but the complements  $CH$ ,  $HF$  are equal [I. XLIII.]; therefore  $AL$  is equal to  $HF$ . To each of these equals add  $CM$  and  $LG$ , and we get  $AM$  and  $LG$  equal to the square  $CDFE$ ; but  $AM$  is equal to the rectangle  $AD \cdot DM$ , and therefore equal to the rectangle  $AD \cdot DB$ , since  $DB$  is equal to  $DM$ ; also  $LG$  is equal to the square on  $CB$ , and  $CDFE$  is the square on  $CD$ . *Hence the rectangle  $AD \cdot DB$ , together with the square on  $CB$ , is equal to the square on  $CD$ .*



*Or thus:—*

**Dem.**—On  $CB$  describe the square  $CBEF$  [I. XLVI.]. Join  $BF$ . Through  $D$  draw  $DG$  parallel to  $CF$ , meeting  $FB$  produced in  $H$ . Through  $H$  draw  $KM$  parallel to  $AB$ . Through  $A$  draw  $AK$  parallel to  $CL$  [I. XXXI.].

The parallelogram  $CM$  is equal to  $DE$  [I. XLIII.]; but  $AL$  is equal to  $CM$  [I. XXXVI.], because they are on equal bases  $AC, CB$ , and between the same parallels; therefore  $AL$  is equal to  $DE$ . To each add  $CH$ , and we get the parallelogram  $AH$  equal to the gnomon  $CMG$ ; but  $AH$  is equal to the rectangle  $AD \cdot DH$ , and therefore equal to the rectangle  $AD \cdot DB$ , since  $DH$  is equal to  $DB$  [iv., Cor. 1]; therefore the rectangle  $AD \cdot DB$  is equal to the gnomon  $CMG$ , and the square on  $CB$  is the figure  $CE$ . *Therefore the rectangle  $AD \cdot DB$ , together with the square on  $CB$ , is equal to the whole figure  $LHGF$ —that is, equal to the square on  $LH$  or to the square on  $CD$ .*

$$\text{Or thus: } AD = AC + CD = CD + CB;$$

$$BD = CD - CB.$$

$$\text{Hence } AD \cdot DB = (CD + CB)(CD - CB) = CD^2 - CB^2;$$

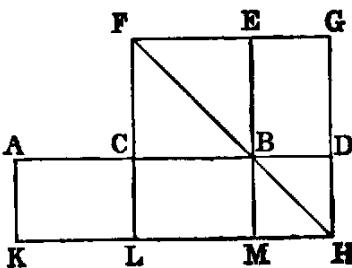
$$\text{therefore } AD \cdot DB + CB^2 = CD^2.$$

### Exercises.

1. Show that Proposition VI. is reduced to Proposition V. by producing the line in the opposite direction.
2. Divide a given line externally, so that the rectangle contained by its segments may be equal to the square on a given line.
3. Given the difference of two lines and the rectangle contained by them; find the lines.
4. The rectangle contained by any two lines is equal to the square on half the sum, minus the square on half the difference.
5. Given the sum or the difference of two lines and the difference of their squares; find the lines.
6. If from the vertex  $C$  of an isosceles triangle a line  $CD$  be drawn to any point in the base produced, prove that  $CD^2 - CB^2 = AD \cdot DB$ .
7. Give a common enunciation which will include Propositions V. and VI.

### PROP. VII.—THEOREM.

*If a right line (AB) be divided into any two parts (at C), the sum of the squares on the whole line (AB) and either segment (CB) is equal to twice the rectangle ( $2AB \cdot CB$ ) contained by the whole line and that segment, together with the square on the other segment.*



**Dem.**—On  $AB$  describe the square  $ABDE$ . Join  $BE$ . Through  $C$  draw  $CG$  parallel to  $AE$ , intersecting  $BE$  in  $F$ . Through  $F$  draw  $HK$  parallel to  $AB$ .

Now the square  $AD$  is equal to the three figures  $AK$ ,  $FD$ , and  $GH$ : to each add the square  $CK$ , and we have the sum of the squares  $AD$ ,  $CK$  equal to the sum of the three figures  $AK$ ,  $CD$ ,  $GH$ ; but  $CD$  is equal to  $AK$ ; therefore the sum of the squares  $AD$ ,  $CK$  is equal to twice the figure  $AK$ , together with the figure  $GH$ . Now  $AK$  is the rectangle  $AB \cdot BK$ ; but  $BK$  is equal to  $BC$ ; therefore  $AK$  is equal to the rectangle  $AB \cdot BC$ , and  $AD$  is the square on  $AB$ ;  $CK$  the square on  $CB$ ; and  $GH$  is the square on  $HF$ , and therefore equal to the square on  $AC$ . Hence the sum of the squares on  $AB$  and  $BC$  is equal to twice the rectangle  $AB \cdot BC$ , together with the square on  $AC$ .

*Or thus:* On  $AC$  describe the square  $ACDE$ . Produce the sides  $CD$ ,  $DE$ ,  $EA$ , and make each produced part equal to  $CB$ . Join  $BF$ ,  $FG$ ,  $GH$ ,  $HB$ . Then the figure  $BFGH$  is a square [I. XLVI., Ex. 3], and it is equal to the square on  $AC$ , together with the four equal triangles  $HAB$ ,  $BCF$ ,  $FDG$ ,  $GEH$ . Now [I. XLVII.], the figure  $BFGH$  is equal to the sum of the squares on  $AB$ ,  $AH$ —that is, equal to the sum of the squares on  $AB$ ,  $BC$ ; and the sum of the four triangles is equal to twice the rectangle  $AB \cdot BC$ , for each triangle is equal to half the rectangle  $AB \cdot BC$ . Hence the sum of the squares on  $AB$ ,  $BC$  is equal to twice the rectangle  $AB \cdot BC$ , together with the square on  $AC$ .

*Or thus:*

$$AC = AB - BC;$$

therefore

$$AC^2 = AB^2 - 2AB \cdot BC + BC^2;$$

therefore

$$AC^2 + 2AB \cdot BC = AB^2 + BC^2.$$

Comparison of IV. and VII.

By IV., square on sum = sum of squares + twice rectangle.

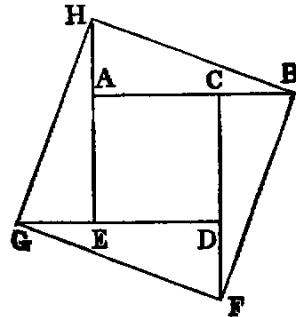
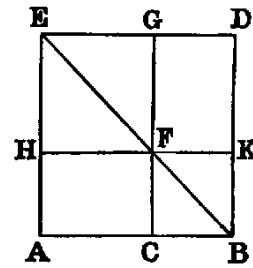
By VII., square on difference = sum of squares - twice rectangle.

*Cors.* from IV. and VII.

1. Square on the sum, the sum of the squares, and the square on the difference of any two lines, are in arithmetical progression.

2. Square on the sum + square on the difference of any two lines = twice the sum of the squares on the lines (Props. IX. and X.).

3. The square on the sum – the square on the difference of any two lines = four times the rectangle under lines (Prop. VIII.).



#### PROP. VIII.—THEOREM.

If a line ( $AB$ ) be divided into two parts (at  $C$ ), the square on the sum of the whole line ( $AB$ ) and either segment ( $BC$ ) is equal to four times the rectangle contained by the whole line ( $AB$ ) and that segment, together with the square on the other segment ( $AC$ ).

**Dem.**—Produce  $AB$  to  $D$ . Make  $BD$  equal to  $BC$ . On  $AD$  describe the square  $AEDF$  [I. xlvi.]. Join  $DE$ . Through  $C, B$  draw  $CH, BL$  parallel to  $AE$  [I. xxxi.], and through  $K, I$  draw  $MN, PO$  parallel to  $AD$ .

Since  $CO$  is the square on  $CD$ , and  $CK$  the square on  $CB$ , and  $CB$  is the half of  $CD$ ,  $CO$  is equal to four times  $CK$  [iv., Cor. 1]. Again, since  $CG, GI$  are the sides of equal squares, they are equal [I. xlvi., Cor. 1]. Hence the parallelogram  $AG$  is equal to  $MI$  [I. xxxvi.]. In like manner  $IL$  is equal to  $JF$ ; but  $MI$  is equal to  $IL$  [I. xlvi.]. Therefore the four figures  $AG, MI, IL, JF$  are all equal; hence their sum is equal to four times  $AG$ ; and the square  $CO$  has been proved to be equal to four times  $CK$ . Hence the gnomon  $AOH$  is equal to four times the rectangle  $AK$ —that is, equal to four times the rectangle  $AB \cdot BC$ , since  $BC$  is equal to  $BK$ .

Again, the figure  $PH$  is the square on  $PI$ , and therefore equal to the square on  $AC$ . Hence the whole figure  $AF$ , that is, *the square on  $AD$ , is equal to four times the rectangle  $AB \cdot BC$ , together with the square on  $AC$ .*

*Or thus:* Produce  $BA$  to  $D$ , and make  $AD = BC$ . On  $DB$  describe the square  $DBEF$ . Cut off  $BG, EI, FL$  each equal to  $BC$ . Through  $A$  and  $I$  draw lines parallel to  $DF$ , and through  $G$  and  $L$ , lines parallel to  $AB$ .

Now it is evident that the four rectangles  $AG, GI, IL, LA$  are all equal; but  $AG$  is the rectangle  $AB \cdot BG$  or  $AB \cdot BC$ . Therefore the sum of the four rectangles is equal to  $4AB \cdot BC$ . Again, the figure  $NP$  is evidently equal to the square on  $AC$ . Hence the whole figure, which is the square on  $BD$ , or *the square on the sum of  $AB$  and  $BC$ , is equal to  $4AB \cdot BC + AC^2$ .*

*Or thus:*

$$AB + BC = AC + 2BC;$$

therefore

$$\begin{aligned} (AB + BC)^2 &= AC^2 + 4AC \cdot CB + 4BC^2 \\ &= AC^2 + 4(AC + CB) \cdot CB \\ &= AC^2 + 4AB \cdot BC. \end{aligned}$$

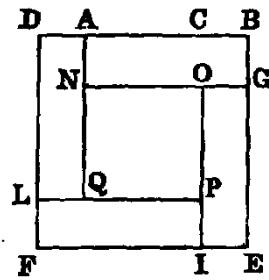
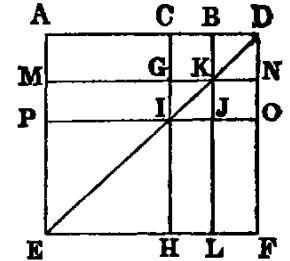
Direct sequence from V. or VI.

Since by V. or VI. the rectangle contained by any two lines is = the square on half their sum — the square on half their difference; therefore four times the rectangle contained by any two lines = the square on their sum — the square on their difference.

Direct sequence of VIII. from IV. and VII.

By IV., the square on the sum = the sum of the squares + twice the rectangle.

By VII., the square on the difference = the sum of the squares — twice the rectangle. Therefore, by subtraction, the square on the sum — the square on the difference = four times the rectangle.



Exercises.

1. In the figure [I. XLVII.] if  $EF$ ,  $GK$  be joined, prove  $EF^2 - CO^2 = (AB + BO)^2$ .
2. Prove  $GK^2 - EF^2 = 3AB(AB - BO)$ .
- 3.<sup>1</sup> Given the difference of two lines =  $R$ , and their rectangle =  $4R^2$ ; find the lines.

PROP. IX.—THEOREM.

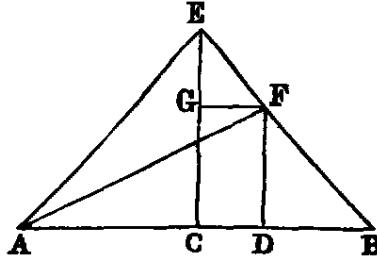
*If a line (AB) be bisected (at C) and divided into two unequal parts (at D), the sum of the squares on the unequal parts (AD, DB) is double the sum of the squares on half the line (AC), and on the segment (CD) between the points of section.*

**Dem.**—Erect  $CE$  at right angles to  $AB$ , and make it equal to  $AC$  or  $CB$ . Join  $AE$ ,  $EB$ . Draw  $DF$  parallel to  $CE$ , and  $FG$  parallel to  $CD$ . Join  $AF$ .

Because  $AC$  is equal to  $CE$ , and the angle  $ACE$  is right, the angle  $CEA$  is half a right angle. In like manner the angles  $CEB$ ,  $CBE$  are half right angles; therefore the whole angle  $AEB$  is right. Again, because  $GF$  is parallel to  $CB$ , and  $CE$  intersects them, the angle  $EGF$  is equal to  $ECB$ ; but  $ECB$  is right (const.); therefore  $EGF$  is right; and  $GEF$  has been proved to be half a right angle; therefore the angle  $GFE$  is half a right angle [I. XXXII.]. Therefore [I. VI.]  $GE$  is equal to  $GF$ . In like manner  $FD$  is equal to  $DB$ .

Again, since  $AC$  is equal to  $CE$ ,  $AC^2$  is equal to  $CE^2$ ; but  $AE^2$  is equal to  $AC^2 + CE^2$  [I. XLVII.]. Therefore  $AE^2$  is equal to  $2AC^2$ . In like manner  $EF^2$  is equal to  $2GF^2$  or  $2CD^2$ . Therefore  $AE^2 + EF^2$  is equal to  $2AC^2 + 2CD^2$ ; but  $AE^2 + EF^2$  is equal to  $AF^2$  [I. XLVII.]. Therefore  $AF^2$  is equal to  $2AC^2 + 2CD^2$ .

Again, since  $DF$  is equal to  $DB$ ,  $DF^2$  is equal to  $DB^2$ : to each add  $AD^2$ , and we get  $AD^2 + DF^2$  equal to  $AD^2 + DB^2$ ; but  $AD^2 + DF^2$  is equal to  $AF^2$ ; therefore  $AF^2$  is equal to  $AD^2 + DB^2$ ; and we have proved  $AF^2$  equal to  $2AC^2 + 2CD^2$ . Therefore  $AD^2 + DB^2$  is equal to  $2AC^2 + 2CD^2$ .



Or thus:

$$AD = AC + CD; \quad DB = AC - CD.$$

Square and add, and we get  $AD^2 + DB^2 = 2AC^2 + 2CD^2$ .

---

<sup>1</sup>Ex. 3 occurs in the solution of the problem of the inscription of a regular polygon of seventeen sides in a circle. See note C.

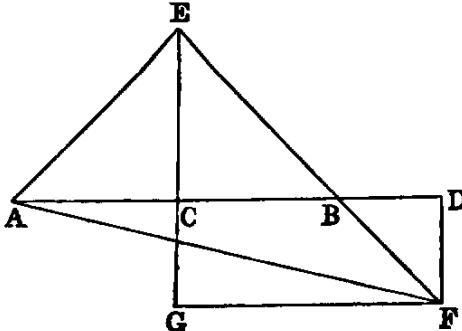
### Exercises.

1. The sum of the squares on the segments of a line of given length is a minimum when it is bisected.
  2. Divide a given line internally, so that the sum of the squares on the parts may be equal to a given square, and state the limitation to its possibility.
  3. If a line  $AB$  be bisected in  $C$  and divided unequally in  $D$ ,
- $$AD^2 + DB^2 = 2AD \cdot DB + 4CD^2.$$
4. Twice the square on the line joining any point in the hypotenuse of a right-angled isosceles triangle to the vertex is equal to the sum of the squares on the segments of the hypotenuse.
  5. If a line be divided into any number of parts, the continued product of all the parts is a maximum, and the sum of their squares is a minimum when all the parts are equal.

### PROP. X.—THEOREM.

*If a line (AB) be bisected (at C) and divided externally (at D), the sum of the squares on the segments (AD, DB) made by the external point is equal to twice the square on half the line, and twice the square on the segment between the points of section.*

**Dem.**—Erect  $CE$  at right angles to  $AB$ , and make it equal to  $AC$  or  $CB$ . Join  $AE$ ,  $EB$ . Draw  $DF$  parallel to  $CE$ , and produce  $EB$ . Now since  $DF$  is parallel to  $EC$ , the angle  $BDF$  is = to  $BCE$  [I. xxix.], and [I. xv.] the angle  $DBF$  is = to  $EBC$ ; but the sum of the angles  $BCE, EBC$  is less than two right angles [I. xvii.]; therefore the sum of the angles  $BDF, DBF$  is less than two right angles, and therefore [I., Axiom XII.] the lines  $EB, DF$ , if produced, will meet. Let them meet in  $F$ . Through  $F$  draw  $FG$  parallel to  $AB$ , and produce  $EC$  to meet it in  $G$ . Join  $AF$ .



Because  $AC$  is equal to  $CE$ , and the angle  $ACE$  is right, the angle  $CEA$  is half a right angle. In like manner the angles  $CEB, CBE$  are half right angles; therefore the whole angle  $AEF$  is right. Again, because  $GF$  is parallel to  $CB$ , and  $GE$  intersects them, the angle  $EGF$  is equal to  $ECB$  [I. xxix.]; but  $ECB$  is right (const.); therefore  $EGF$  is right, and  $GEF$  has been proved to be half a right angle; therefore [I. xxxii.]  $GFE$  is half a right angle, and therefore [I. vi.]  $GE$  is equal to  $GF$ . In like manner  $FD$  is equal to  $DB$ .

Again, since  $AC$  is equal to  $CE$ ,  $AC^2$  is equal to  $CE^2$ ; but  $AE^2$  is equal to  $AC^2 + CE^2$  [I. xlvi.]; therefore  $AE^2$  is equal to  $2AC^2$ . In like manner  $EF^2$  is equal to  $2GF^2$  or  $2CD^2$ ; therefore  $AE^2 + EF^2$  is equal to  $2AC^2 + 2CD^2$ ; but  $AE^2 + EF^2$  is equal to  $AF^2$  [I. xlvi.]. Therefore  $AF^2$  is equal to  $2AC^2 + 2CD^2$ .

Again, since  $DF$  is equal to  $DB$ ,  $DF^2$  is equal to  $DB^2$ : to each add  $AD^2$ , and we get  $AD^2 + DF^2$  equal to  $AD^2 + DB^2$ ; but  $AD^2 + DF^2$  is equal to

$AF^2$ ; therefore  $AF^2$  is equal to  $AD^2 + DB^2$ ; and  $AF^2$  has been proved equal to  $2AC^2 + 2CD^2$ . Therefore  $AD^2 + DB^2$  is equal to  $2AC^2 + 2CD^2$ .

Or thus:

$$AD = CD + AC,$$

$$BD = CD - AC.$$

Square and add, and we get  $AD^2 + BD^2 = 2CD^2 + 2AC^2$ .

The following enunciations include Propositions IX. and X.:—

1. *The square on the sum of any two lines plus the square on their difference equal twice the sum of their squares.*
2. *The sum of the squares on any two lines is equal to twice the square on half the sum plus twice the square on half the difference of the lines.*
3. *If a line be cut into two unequal parts, and also into two equal parts, the sum of the squares on the two unequal parts exceeds the sum of the squares on the two equal parts by the sum of the squares of the two differences between the equal and unequal parts.*

### Exercises

1. Given the sum or the difference of any two lines, and the sum of their squares; find the lines.
2. The sum of the squares on two sides  $AC, CB$  of a triangle is equal to twice the square on half the base  $AB$ , and twice the square on the median which bisects  $AB$ .
3. If the base of a triangle be given both in magnitude and position, and the sum of the squares on the sides in magnitude, the locus of the vertex is a circle.
4. If in the  $\triangle ABC$  a point  $D$  in the base  $BC$  be such that

$$BA^2 + BD^2 = CA^2 + CD^2;$$

prove that the middle point of  $AD$  is equally distant from  $B$  and  $C$ .

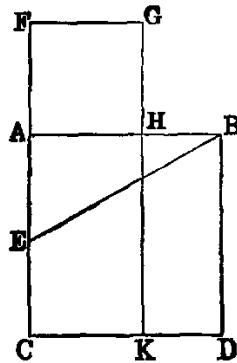
5. The sum of the squares on the sides of a parallelogram is equal to the sum of the squares on its diagonals.

### PROP. XI.—PROBLEM.

*To divide a given finite line ( $AB$ ) into two segments (in  $H$ ), so that the rectangle ( $AB \cdot BH$ ) contained by the whole line and one segment may be equal to the square on the other segment.*

**Sol.**—On  $AB$  describe the square  $ABDC$  [I. XLVI.]. Bisect  $AC$  in  $E$ . Join  $BE$ . Produce  $EA$  to  $F$ , and make  $EF$  equal to  $EB$ . On  $AF$  describe the square  $AFGH$ .  $H$  is the point required.

**Dem.**—Produce  $GH$  to  $K$ . Then because  $CA$  is bisected in  $E$ , and divided externally in  $F$ , the rectangle  $CF \cdot AF$ , together with the square on  $EA$ , is equal to the square on  $EF$  [VI.]; but  $EF$  is equal to  $EB$  (const.);



therefore the rectangle  $CF \cdot AF$ , together with  $EA^2$ , is equal to  $EB^2$ —that is [I. XLVII.] equal to  $EA^2 + AB^2$ . Rejecting  $EA^2$ , which is common, we get the rectangle  $CF \cdot AF$  equal to  $AB^2$ . Again, since  $AF$  is equal to  $FG$ , being the sides of a square, the rectangle  $CF \cdot AF$  is equal to  $CF \cdot FG$ —that is, to the figure  $CG$ ; and  $AB^2$  is equal to the figure  $AD$ ; therefore  $CG$  is equal to  $AD$ . Reject the part  $AK$ , which is common, and we get the figure  $FH$  equal to the figure  $HD$ ; but  $HD$  is equal to the rectangle  $AB \cdot BH$ , because  $BD$  is equal to  $AB$ , and  $FH$  is the square on  $AH$ . *Therefore the rectangle  $AB \cdot BH$  is equal to the square on  $AH$ .*

**DEF.**—A line divided as in this Proposition is said to be divided in “extreme and mean ratio.”

*Cor. 1.*—The line  $CF$  is divided in “extreme and mean ratio” at  $A$ .

*Cor. 2.*—If from the greater segment  $CA$  of  $CF$  we take a segment equal to  $AF$ , it is evident that  $CA$  will be divided into parts respectively equal to  $AH$ ,  $HB$ . Hence, if a line be divided in extreme and mean ratio, the greater segment will be cut in the same manner by taking on it a part equal to the less; and the less will be similarly divided by taking on it a part equal to the difference, and so on, &c.

*Cor. 3.*—Let  $AB$  be divided in “extreme and mean ratio” in  $C$ , then it is evident (*Cor.*)



2) that  $AC$  is greater than  $CB$ . Cut off  $CD = CB$ ; then (*Cor. 2*)  $AC$  is cut in “extreme and mean ratio” at  $D$ , and  $CD$  is greater than  $AD$ . Next, cut off  $DE$  equal to  $AD$ , and in the same manner we have  $DE$  greater than  $EC$ , and so on. Now since  $CD$  is greater than  $AD$ , it is evident that  $CD$  is not a common measure of  $AC$  and  $CB$ , and therefore not a common measure of  $AB$  and  $AC$ . In like manner  $AD$  is not a common measure of  $AC$  and  $CD$ , and therefore not a common measure of  $AB$  and  $AC$ . Hence, no matter how far we proceed we cannot arrive at any remainder which will be a common measure of  $AB$  and  $AC$ . *Hence, the parts of a line divided in “extreme and mean ratio” are incommensurable.*

### Exercises.

1. Cut a line externally in “extreme and mean ratio.”
2. The difference between the squares on the segments of a line divided in “extreme and mean ratio” is equal to their rectangle.
3. In a right-angled triangle, if the square on one side be equal to the rectangle contained by the hypotenuse and the other side, the hypotenuse is cut in “extreme and mean ratio” by the perpendicular on it from the right angle.
4. If  $AB$  be cut in “extreme and mean ratio” at  $C$ , prove that
  - (1)  $AB^2 + BC^2 = 3AC^2$ .
  - (2)  $(AB + BC)^2 = 5AC^2$ .
5. The three lines joining the pairs of points  $G, B$ ;  $F, D$ ;  $A, K$ , in the construction of Proposition xi., are parallel.
6. If  $CH$  intersect  $BE$  in  $O$ ,  $AO$  is perpendicular to  $CH$ .
7. If  $CH$  be produced, it meets  $BF$  at right angles.
8.  $ABC$  is a right-angled triangle having  $AB = 2AC$ : if  $AH$  be made equal to the difference between  $BC$  and  $AC$ ,  $AB$  is divided in “extreme and mean ratio” at  $H$ .

PROP. XII.—THEOREM.

*In an obtuse-angled triangle (ABC), the square on the side (AB) subtending the obtuse angle exceeds the sum of the squares on the sides (BC, CA) containing the obtuse angle, by twice the rectangle contained by either of them (BC), and its continuation (CD) to meet a perpendicular (AD) on it from the opposite angle.*

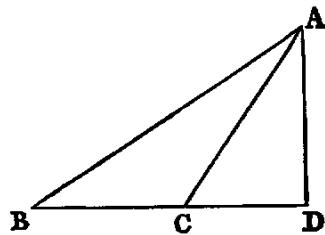
**Dem.**—Because  $BD$  is divided into two parts in  $C$ , we have

$$BD^2 = BC^2 + CD^2 + 2BC \cdot CD \text{ [iv.]}$$

and

$$AD^2 = AD^2.$$

Hence, adding, since [I. XLVII.]  $BD^2 + AD^2 = AB^2$ , and  $CD^2 + AD^2 = CA^2$ , we get



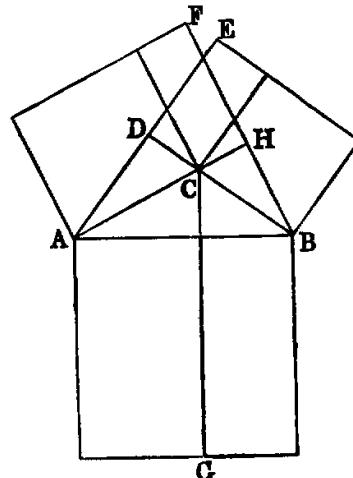
$$AB^2 = BC^2 + CA^2 + 2BC \cdot CD.$$

Therefore  $AB^2$  is greater than  $BC^2 + CA^2$  by  $2BC \cdot CD$ .

The foregoing proof differs from Euclid's only in the use of symbols. I have found by experience that pupils more readily understand it than any other method.

*Or thus:* By the First Book: Describe squares on the three sides. Draw  $AE$ ,  $BF$ ,  $CG$  perpendicular to the sides of the squares. Then it can be proved exactly as in the demonstration of [I. XLVII.], that the rectangle  $BG$  is equal to  $BE$ ,  $AG$  to  $AF$ , and  $CE$  to  $CF$ . Hence the sum of the two squares on  $AC$ ,  $CB$  is less than the square on  $AB$  by twice the rectangle  $CE$ ; that is, by twice the rectangle  $BC \cdot CD$ .

*Cor. 1.*—If perpendiculars from  $A$  and  $B$  to the opposite sides meet them in  $H$  and  $D$ , the rectangle  $AC \cdot CH$  is equal to the rectangle  $BC \cdot CD$ .



Exercises.

1. If the angle  $ACB$  of a triangle be equal to twice the angle of an equilateral triangle,  $AB^2 = BC^2 + CA^2 + BC \cdot CA$ .
2.  $ABCD$  is a quadrilateral whose opposite angles  $B$  and  $D$  are right, and  $AD$ ,  $BC$  produced meet in  $E$ ; prove  $AE \cdot DE = BE \cdot CE$ .
3.  $ABC$  is a right-angled triangle, and  $BD$  is a perpendicular on the hypotenuse  $AC$ ; Prove  $AB \cdot DC = BD \cdot BC$ .
4. If a line  $AB$  be divided in  $C$  so that  $AC^2 = 2CB^2$ ; prove that  $AB^2 + BC^2 = 2AB \cdot AC$ .
5. If  $AB$  be the diameter of a semicircle, find a point  $C$  in  $AB$  such that, joining  $C$  to a fixed point  $D$  in the circumference, and erecting a perpendicular  $CE$  meeting the circumference in  $E$ ,  $CE^2 - CD^2$  may be equal to a given square.
6. If the square of a line  $CD$ , drawn from the angle  $C$  of an equilateral triangle  $ABC$  to a point  $D$  in the side  $AB$  produced, be equal to  $2AB^2$ ; prove that  $AD$  is cut in “extreme and mean ratio” at  $B$ .

PROP. XIII.—THEOREM.

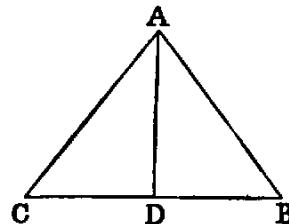
*In any triangle (ABC), the square on any side subtending an acute angle (C) is less than the sum of the squares on the sides containing that angle, by twice the rectangle (BC, CD) contained by either of them (BC) and the intercept (CD) between the acute angle and the foot of the perpendicular on it from the opposite angle.*

**Dem.**—Because  $BC$  is divided into two segments in  $D$ ,

$$BC^2 + CD^2 = BD^2 + 2BC \cdot CD \quad [\text{VII.}];$$

and  $AD^2 = AD^2$ .

Hence, adding, since



$$CD^2 + AD^2 = AC^2 \text{ [I. XLVII.]},$$

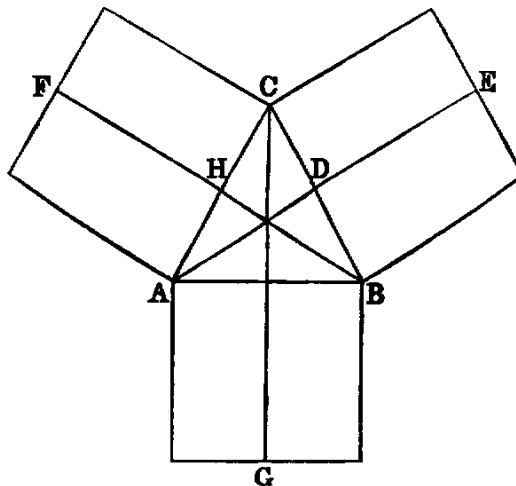
and

$$BD^2 + AD^2 = AB^2,$$

we get

$$BC^2 + AC^2 = AB^2 + 2BC \cdot CD.$$

Therefore  $AB^2$  is less than  $BC^2 + AC^2$  by  $2BC \cdot CD$ .



*Or thus:* Describe squares on the sides. Draw  $AE$ ,  $BF$ ,  $CG$  perpendicular to the sides; then, as in the demonstration of [I. XLVII.], the rectangle  $BG$  is equal to  $BE$ ;  $AG$  to  $AF$ , and  $CE$  to  $CF$ . Hence the sum of the squares on  $AC$ ,  $CB$  exceeds the square on  $AB$  by twice  $CE$ —that is, by  $2BC \cdot CD$ .

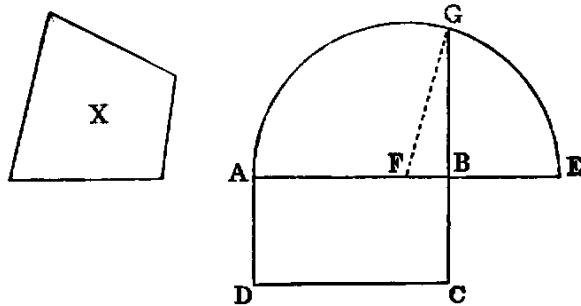
**Observation.**—By comparing the proofs of the pairs of Props. IV. and VII.; V. and VI.; IX. and X.; XII. and XIII., it will be seen that they are virtually identical. In order to render this identity more apparent, we have made some slight alterations in the usual proofs. The pairs of Propositions thus grouped are considered in Modern Geometry not as distinct, but each pair is regarded as one Proposition.

Exercises.

1. If the angle  $C$  of the  $\triangle ACB$  be equal to an angle of an equilateral  $\triangle$ ,  $AB^2 = AC^2 + BC^2 - AC \cdot BC$ .
2. The sum of the squares on the diagonals of a quadrilateral, together with four times the square on the line joining their middle points, is equal to the sum of the squares on its sides.
3. Find a point  $C$  in a given line  $AB$  produced, so that  $AC^2 + BC^2 = 2AC \cdot BC$ .

PROP. XIV.—PROBLEM.

*To construct a square equal to a given rectilineal figure ( $X$ ).*



**Sol.**—Construct [I. XLV.] the rectangle  $AC$  equal to  $X$ . Then, if the adjacent sides  $AB$ ,  $BC$  be equal,  $AC$  is a square, and the problem is solved; if not, produce  $AB$  to  $E$ , and make  $BE$  equal to  $BC$ ; bisect  $AE$  in  $F$ ; with  $F$  as centre and  $FE$  as radius, describe the semicircle  $AGE$ ; produce  $CB$  to meet it in  $G$ . *The square described on  $BG$  will be equal to  $X$ .*

**Dem.**—Join  $FG$ . Then because  $AE$  is divided equally in  $F$  and unequally in  $B$ , the rectangle  $AB \cdot BE$ , together with  $FB^2$  is equal to  $FE^2$  [v.], that is, to  $FG^2$ ; but  $FG^2$  is equal to  $FB^2 + BG^2$  [I. XLVII.]. Therefore the rectangle  $AB \cdot BE + FB^2$  is equal to  $FB^2 + BG^2$ . Reject  $FB^2$ , which is common, and we have the rectangle  $AB \cdot BE = BG^2$ ; but since  $BE$  is equal to  $BC$ , the rectangle  $AB \cdot BE$  is equal to the figure  $AC$ . Therefore  $BG^2$  is equal to the figure  $AC$ , and therefore equal to the given rectilineal figure ( $X$ ).

**Cor.**—The square on the perpendicular from any point in a semicircle on the diameter is equal to the rectangle contained by the segments of the diameter.

Exercises.

1. Given the difference of the squares on two lines and their rectangle; find the lines.
2. Divide a given line, so that the rectangle contained by another given line and one segment may be equal to the square on the other segment.

### Questions for Examination on Book II.

1. What is the subject-matter of Book II.? *Ans.* Theory of rectangles.
2. What is a rectangle? A gnomon?
3. What is a square inch? A square foot? A square perch? A square mile? *Ans.* The square described on a line whose length is an inch, a foot, a perch, &c.
4. What is the difference between linear and superficial measurement? *Ans.* Linear measurement has but one dimension; superficial has two.
5. When is a line said to be divided internally? When externally?
6. How is the area of a rectangle found?
7. How is a line divided so that the rectangle contained by its segments may be a maximum?
8. How is the area of a parallelogram found?
9. What is the altitude of a parallelogram whose base is 65 metres and area 1430 square metres?
10. How is a line divided when the sum of the squares on its segments is a minimum?
11. The area of a rectangle is 108.60 square metres and its perimeter is 48.20 linear metres; find its dimensions.
12. What Proposition in Book II. expresses the distributive law of multiplication?
13. On what proposition is the rule for extracting the square root founded?
14. Compare I. XLVII. and II. XII. and XIII.
15. If the sides of a triangle be expressed by  $x^2 + 1$ ,  $x^2 - 1$ , and  $2x$  linear units, respectively; prove that it is right-angled.
16. How would you construct a square whose area would be exactly an acre? Give a solution by I. XLVII.
17. What is meant by incommensurable lines? Give an example from Book II.
18. Prove that a side and the diagonal of a square are incommensurable.
19. The diagonals of a lozenge are 16 and 30 metres respectively; find the length of a side.
20. The diagonal of a rectangle is 4.25 perches, and its area is 7.50 square perches; what are its dimensions?
21. The three sides of a triangle are 8, 11, 15; prove that it has an obtuse angle.
22. The sides of a triangle are 13, 14, 15; find the lengths of its medians; also the lengths of its perpendiculars, and prove that all its angles are acute.
23. If the sides of a triangle be expressed by  $m^2 + n^2$ ,  $m^2 - n^2$ , and  $2mn$  linear units, respectively; prove that it is right-angled.
24. If on each side of a square containing 5.29 square perches we measure from the corners respectively a distance of 1.5 linear perches; find the area of the square formed by joining the points thus found.

### Exercises on Book II.

1. The squares on the diagonals of a quadrilateral are together double the sum of the squares on the lines joining the middle points of opposite sides.
2. If the medians of a triangle intersect in  $O$ ,  $AB^2 + BC^2 + CA^2 = 3(OA^2 + OB^2 + OC^2)$ .
3. Through a given point  $O$  draw three lines  $OA$ ,  $OB$ ,  $OC$  of given lengths, such that their extremities may be collinear, and that  $AB = BC$ .
4. If in any quadrilateral two opposite sides be bisected, the sum of the squares on the other two sides, together with the sum of the squares on the diagonals, is equal to the sum of the squares on the bisected sides, together with four times the square on the line joining the points of bisection.
5. If squares be described on the sides of any triangle, the sum of the squares on the lines joining the adjacent corners is equal to three times the sum of the squares on the sides of the triangle.
6. Divide a given line into two parts, so that the rectangle contained by the whole and one segment may be equal to any multiple of the square on the other segment.
7. If  $P$  be any point in the diameter  $AB$  of a semicircle, and  $CD$  any parallel chord, then

$$CP^2 + PD^2 = AP^2 + PB^2.$$

8. If  $A, B, C, D$  be four collinear points taken in order,

$$AB \cdot CD + BC \cdot AD = AC \cdot BD.$$

9. Three times the sum of the squares on the sides of any pentagon exceeds the sum of the squares on its diagonals, by four times the sum of the squares on the lines joining the middle points of the diagonals.

10. In any triangle, three times the sum of the squares on the sides is equal to four times the sum of the squares on the medians.

11. If perpendiculars be drawn from the angular points of a square to any line, the sum of the squares on the perpendiculars from one pair of opposite angles exceeds twice the rectangle of the perpendiculars from the other pair by the area of the square.

12. If the base  $AB$  of a triangle be divided in  $D$ , so that  $mAD = nBD$ , then

$$mAC^2 + nBC^2 = mAD^2 + nDB^2 + (m+n)CD^2.$$

13. If the point  $D$  be taken in  $AB$  produced, so that  $mAD = nDB$ , then

$$mAC^2 - nBC^2 = mAD^2 - nDB^2 + (m-n)CD^2.$$

14. Given the base of a triangle in magnitude and position, and the sum or the difference of  $m$  times the square on one side and  $n$  times the square on the other side, in magnitude, the locus of the vertex is a circle.

15. Any rectangle is equal to half the rectangle contained by the diagonals of squares described on its adjacent sides.

16. If  $A, B, C, \&c.$ , be any number of fixed points, and  $P$  a variable point, find the locus of  $P$ , if  $AP^2 + BP^2 + CP^2 + \&c.$ , be given in magnitude.

17. If the area of a rectangle be given, its perimeter is a minimum when it is a square.

18. If a transversal cut in the points  $A, C, B$  three lines issuing from a point  $D$ , prove that

$$BC \cdot AD^2 + AC \cdot BD^2 - AB \cdot CD^2 = AB \cdot BC \cdot CA.$$

19. Upon the segments  $AC, CB$  of a line  $AB$  equilateral triangles are described: prove that if  $D, D'$  be the centres of circles described about these triangles,  $6DD'^2 = AB^2 + AC^2 + CB^2$ .

20. If  $a, b, p$  denote the sides of a right-angled triangle about the right angle, and the perpendicular from the right angle on the hypotenuse,  $\frac{1}{a^2} + \frac{1}{b^2} = \frac{1}{p^2}$ .

21. If, upon the greater segment  $AB$  of a line  $AC$ , divided in extreme and mean ratio, an equilateral triangle  $ABD$  be described, and  $CD$  joined,  $CD^2 = 2AB^2$ .

22. If a variable line, whose extremities rest on the circumferences of two given concentric circles, subtend a right angle at any fixed point, the locus of its middle point is a circle.

## BOOK III.

### THEORY OF THE CIRCLE

---

#### DEFINITIONS.

##### i. Equal circles are those whose radii are equal.

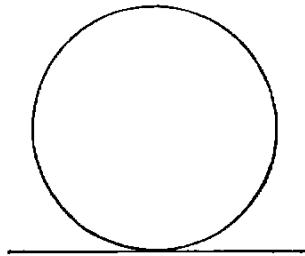
This is a theorem, and not a definition. For if two circles have equal radii, they are evidently congruent figures, and therefore equal. From this way of proving this theorem Props. XXVI.–XXIX. follow as immediate inferences.

##### ii. A chord of a circle is the line joining two points in its circumference.

If the chord be produced both ways, the whole line is called a secant, and each of the parts into which a secant divides the circumference is called an arc—the greater the *major conjugate arc*, and the lesser the *minor conjugate arc*.—NEWCOMB.

iii. A right line is said to touch a circle when it meets the circle, and, being produced both ways, does not cut it; the line is called a *tangent* to the circle, and the point where it touches it the *point of contact*.

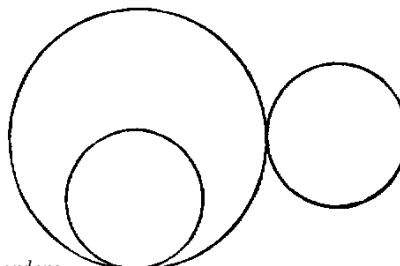
In Modern Geometry a curve is considered as made up of an infinite number of points, which are placed in order along the curve, and then the secant through two consecutive points is a tangent. Euclid's definition for a tangent is quite inadequate for any curve but the circle, and those derived from it by projection (the conic sections); and even for these the modern definition is better.



iv. Circles are said to touch one another when they meet, but do not intersect. There are two species of contact:

1. When each circle is external to the other.

2. When one is inside the other.



The following is the modern definition of curve-contact:— *When two curves have two, three, four, &c., consecutive points common, they have contact of the first, second, third, &c., orders.*

v. A segment of a circle is a figure bounded by a chord and one of the arcs into which it divides the circumference.

vi. Chords are said to be equally distant from the centre when the perpendiculars drawn to them from the centre are equal.

vii. The angle contained by two lines, drawn from any point in the circumference of a segment to the extremities of its chord, is called an *angle in the segment*.

VIII. The angle of a segment is the angle contained between its chord and the tangent at either extremity.

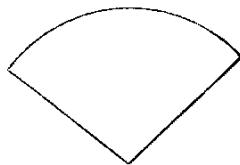
A theorem is tacitly assumed in this Definition, namely, that the angles which the chord makes with the tangent at its extremities are equal. We shall prove this further on.

IX. An angle in a segment is said to stand on its conjugate arc.

x. Similar segments of circles are those that contain equal angles.

xi. A sector of a circle is formed of two radii and the arc included between them.

To a pair of radii may belong either of the two conjugate arcs into which their ends divide the circle.—NEWCOMB.

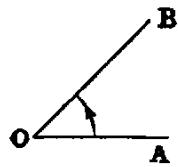


xii. Concentric circles are those that have the same centre.

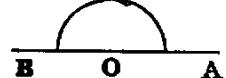
xiii. Points which lie on the circumference of a circle are said to be *conyclic*.

xiv. A *cyclic quadrilateral* is one which is inscribed in a circle.

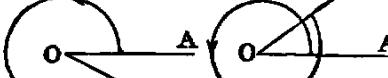
xv. It will be proper to give here an explanation of the extended meaning of the word *angle* in Modern Geometry. This extension is necessary in Trigonometry, in Mechanics—in fact, in every application of Geometry, and has been partly given in I. Def. IX.



**Fig. 1.**



**Fig. 2.**



**Fig. 3.**



**Fig. 4.**

Thus, if a line  $OA$  revolve about the point  $O$ , as in figures 1, 2, 3, 4, until it comes into the position  $OB$ , the amount of the *rotation* from  $OA$  to  $OB$  is called an *angle*. From the diagrams we see that in fig. 1 it is less than two right angles; in fig. 2 it is equal to two right angles; in fig. 3 greater than two right angles, but less than four; and in fig. 4 it is greater than four right angles. The arrow-heads denote the direction or *sense*, as it is technically termed, in which the line  $OA$  turns. It is usual to call the direction indicated in the above figures *positive*, and the opposite *negative*. A line such as  $OA$ , which turns about a fixed point, is called a *ray*, and then we have the following definition:—

XVI. A ray which turns in the sense *opposite* to the hands of a watch describes a *positive angle*, and one which turns in the *same* direction as the hands, a *negative angle*.

#### PROP. I.—PROBLEM.

*To find the centre of a given circle (ADB).*

**Sol.**—Take any two points  $A, B$  in the circumference. Join  $AB$ . Bisect it in  $C$ . Erect  $CD$  at right angles to  $AB$ . Produce  $DC$  to meet the circle again in  $E$ . Bisect  $DE$  in  $F$ . Then  $F$  is the centre.

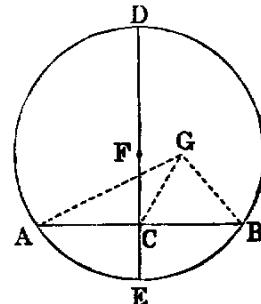
**Dem.**—If possible, let any other point  $G$  be the centre. Join  $GA, GC, GB$ . Then in the triangles  $ACG, BCG$  we have  $AC$  equal to  $CB$  (const.),  $CG$  common, and the base  $GA$  equal to  $GB$ , because they are drawn from  $G$ , which is, by hypothesis, the centre, to the circumference. Hence [I. VIII.] the angle  $ACG$  is equal to the adjacent angle  $BCG$ , and therefore [I. Def. XIII.] each is a right angle; but the angle  $ACD$  is right (const.); therefore  $ACD$  is equal to  $ACG$ —a part equal to the whole—which is absurd. Hence no point can be the centre which is not in the line  $DE$ . Therefore  $F$ , the middle point of  $DE$ , must be the centre.

The foregoing proof may be abridged as follows:—  
Because  $ED$  bisects  $AB$  at right angles, every point equally distant from, the points  $A, B$  must lie in  $ED$  [I. x. Ex. 2]; but the centre is equally distant from  $A$  and  $B$ ; hence the centre must be in  $ED$ ; and since it must be equally distant from  $E$  and  $D$ , it must be the middle point of  $DE$ .

*Cor.* 1.—The line which bisects any chord of a circle perpendicularly passes through the centre of the circle.

*Cor.* 2.—The locus of the centres of the circles which pass through two fixed points is the line bisecting at right angles that connecting the two points.

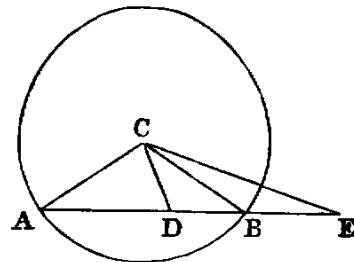
*Cor.* 3.—If  $A, B, C$  be three points in the circumference of a circle, the lines bisecting perpendicularly the chords  $AB, BC$  intersect in the centre.



#### PROP. II.—THEOREM.

If any two points ( $A, B$ ) be taken in the circumference of a circle—1. The segment ( $AB$ ) of the indefinite line through these points which lies between them falls within the circle. 2. The remaining parts of the line are without the circle.

**Dem.**—1. Let  $C$  be the centre. Take any point  $D$  in  $AB$ . Join  $CA, CD, CB$ . Now the angle  $ADC$  is [I. XVI.] greater than  $ABC$ ; but the angle  $ABC$  is equal to  $CAB$  [I. v.], because the triangle  $CAB$  is isosceles; therefore the angle  $ADC$  is greater than  $CAD$ . Hence  $AC$  is greater than  $CD$  [I. XIX.]; therefore  $CD$  is less than the radius of the circle, consequently the point  $D$  must be within the circle (note on I. Def. XXXIII.).



In the same manner every other point between  $A$  and  $B$  lies within the circle.

2. Take any point  $E$  in  $AB$  produced either way. Join  $CE$ . Then the angle  $ABC$  is greater than  $AEC$  [I. XVI.]; therefore  $CAB$  is greater than  $AEC$ . Hence  $CE$  is greater than  $CA$ , and the point  $E$  is without the circle.

We have added the second part of this Proposition. The indirect proof given of the first part in several editions of Euclid is very inelegant; it is one of those absurd things which give many students a dislike to Geometry.

*Cor.* 1.—Three collinear points cannot be concyclic.

*Cor.* 2.—A line cannot meet a circle in more than two points.

*Cor.* 3.—The circumference of a circle is everywhere concave towards the centre.

### PROP. III.—THEOREM.

*If a line (AB) passing through the centre of a circle bisect a chord (CD), which does not pass through the centre, it cuts it at right angles. 2. If it cuts it at right angles, it bisects it.*

**Dem.**—1. Let  $O$  be the centre of the circle. Join  $OC$ ,  $OD$ . Then the triangles  $CEO$ ,  $DEO$  have  $CE$  equal to  $ED$  (hyp.),  $EO$  common, and  $OC$  equal to  $OD$ , because they are radii of the circle; hence [I. viii.] the angle  $CEO$  is equal to  $DEO$ , and they are adjacent angles. Therefore [I. Def. XIII.] each is a right angle. Hence  $AB$  cuts  $CD$  at right angles.

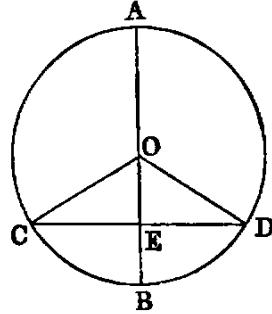
2. The same construction being made: because  $OC$  is equal to  $OD$ , the angle  $OCD$  is equal to  $ODC$  [I. v.], and  $CEO$  is equal to  $DEO$  (hyp.), because each is right. Therefore the triangles  $CEO$ ,  $DEO$  have two angles in one respectively equal to two angles in the other, and the side  $EO$  common. Hence [I. xxvi.] the side  $CE$  is equal to  $ED$ . Therefore  $CD$  is bisected in  $E$ .

2. May be proved as follows:—

$$OC^2 = OE^2 + EC^2 \text{ [I. xlvi.], and } OD^2 = OE^2 + ED^2;$$

$$\text{but } OC^2 = OD^2; \therefore OE^2 + EC^2 = OE^2 + ED^2.$$

$$\text{Hence } EC^2 = ED^2, \text{ and } EC = ED.$$



**Observation.**—The three theorems, namely, *Cor.* 1., Prop. i., and Parts 1, 2, of Prop. iii., are so related, that any one being proved directly, the other two follow by the Rule of Identity.

*Cor.* 1.—The line which bisects perpendicularly one of two parallel chords of a circle bisects the other perpendicularly.

*Cor.* 2.—The locus of the middle points of a system of parallel chords of a circle is the diameter of the circle perpendicular to them all.

*Cor.* 3.—If a line intersect two concentric circles, its intercepts between the circles are equal.

*Cor.* 4.—The line joining the centres of two intersecting circles bisects their common chord perpendicularly.

### Exercises.

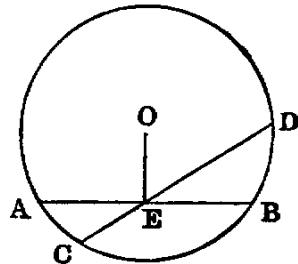
1. If a chord of a circle subtend a right angle at a given point, the locus of its middle point is a circle.
2. Every circle passing through a given point, and having its centre on a given line, passes through another given point.
3. Draw a chord in a given circle which shall subtend a right angle at a given point, and be parallel to a given line.

### PROP. IV.—THEOREM.

*Two chords of a circle (AB, CD) which are not both diameters cannot bisect each other, though either may bisect the other.*

**Dem.**—Let  $O$  be the centre. Let  $AB, CD$  intersect in  $E$ ; then since  $AB, CD$  are not both diameters, join  $OE$ . If possible let  $AE$  be equal to  $EB$ , and  $CE$  equal to  $ED$ . Now, since  $OE$  passing through the centre bisects  $AB$ , which does not pass through the centre, it is at right angles to it; therefore the angle  $AEO$  is right. In like manner the angle  $CEO$  is right. Hence  $AEO$  is equal to  $CEO$ —that is, a part equal to the whole—which is absurd. *Therefore AB and CD do not bisect each other.*

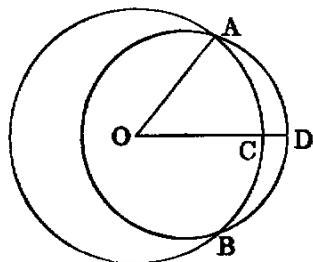
*Cor.*—If two chords of a circle bisect each other, they are both diameters.



### PROP. V.—THEOREM.

*If two circles (ABC, ABD) cut one another in any point (A), they are not concentric.*

**Dem.**—If possible let them have a common centre at  $O$ . Join  $OA$ , and draw any other line  $OD$ , cutting the circles in  $C$  and  $D$  respectively. Then because  $O$  is the centre of the circle  $ABC$ ,  $OA$  is equal to  $OC$ . Again, because  $O$  is the centre of the circle  $ABD$ ,  $OA$  is equal to  $OD$ . Hence  $OC$  is equal to  $OD$ —a part equal to the whole—which is absurd. *Therefore the circles are not concentric.*



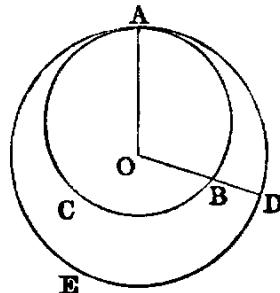
### Exercises.

1. If two non-concentric circles intersect in one point, they must intersect in another point. For, let  $O, O'$  be the centres,  $A$  the point of intersection; from  $A$  let fall the  $\perp AC$  on the line  $OO'$ . Produce  $AC$  to  $B$ , making  $BC = CA$ : then  $B$  is another point of intersection.
2. Two circles cannot have three points in common without wholly coinciding.

PROP. VI.—THEOREM.

*If one circle (ABC) touch another circle (ADE) internally in any point (A), it is not concentric with it.*

**Dem.**—If possible let the circles be concentric, and let  $O$  be the centre of each. Join  $OA$ , and draw any other line  $OD$ , cutting the circles in the points  $B, D$  respectively. Then because  $O$  is the centre of each circle (hyp.),  $OB$  and  $OD$  are each equal to  $OA$ ; therefore  $OB$  is equal to  $OD$ , which is impossible. *Hence the circles cannot have the same centre.*



PROP. VII.—THEOREM.

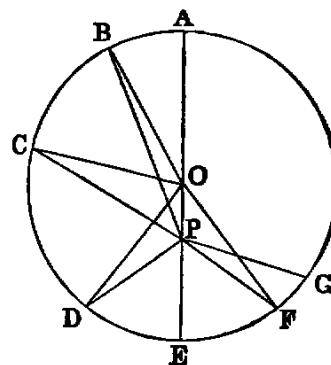
*If from any point (P) within a circle, which is not the centre, lines (PA, PB, PC, &c.), one of which passes through the centre, be drawn to the circumference, then—1. The greatest is the line (PA) which passes through the centre. 2. The production (PE) of this in the opposite direction is the least. 3. Of the others, that which is nearest to the line through the centre is greater than every one more remote. 4. Any two lines making equal angles with the diameter on opposite sides are equal. 5. More than two equal right lines cannot be drawn from the given point (P) to the circumference.*

**Dem.**—1. Let  $O$  be the centre. Join  $OB$ . Now since  $O$  is the centre,  $OA$  is equal to  $OB$ : to each add  $OP$ , and we have  $AP$  equal to the sum of  $OB, OP$ ; but the sum of  $OB, OP$  is greater than  $PB$  [I. xx.]. *Therefore PA is greater than PB.*

2. Join  $OD$ . Then [I. xx.] the sum of  $OP, PD$  is greater than  $OD$ ; but  $OD$  is equal to  $OE$  [I. Def. xxx.]. Therefore the sum of  $OP, PD$  is greater than  $OE$ . Reject  $OP$ , which is common, and we have  $PD$  greater than  $PE$ .

3. Join  $OC$ ; then two triangles  $POB, POC$  have the side  $OB$  equal to  $OC$  [I. Def. xxx.], and  $OP$  common; but the angle  $POB$  is greater than  $POC$ ; therefore [I. xxiv.] the base  $PB$  is greater than  $PC$ . In like manner  $PC$  is greater than  $PD$ .

4. Make at the centre  $O$  the angle  $POF$  equal to  $POD$ . Join  $PF$ . Then the triangles  $POD, POF$  have the two sides  $OP, OD$  in one respectively equal to the sides  $OP, OF$  in the other, and the angle  $POD$  equal to the angle  $POF$ ; hence  $PD$  is equal to  $PF$  [I. iv.], and the angle  $OPD$  equal to the angle  $OPF$ . *Therefore PD and PF make equal angles with the diameter.*



5. A third line cannot be drawn from  $P$  equal to either of the equal lines  $PD, PF$ . If possible let  $PG$  be equal to  $PD$ , then  $PG$  is equal to  $PF$ —that is, the line which is nearest to the one through the centre is equal to the one which is more remote, which is impossible. *Hence three equal lines cannot be drawn from  $P$  to the circumference.*

*Cor.* 1.—If two equal lines  $PD, PF$  be drawn from a point  $P$  to the circumference of a circle, the diameter through  $P$  bisects the angle  $DPF$  formed by these lines.

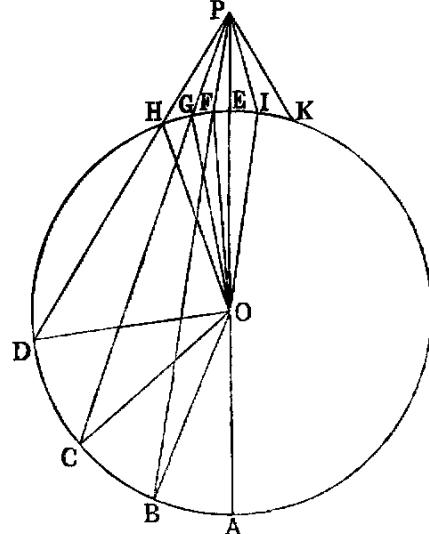
*Cor.* 2.—If  $P$  be the common centre of circles whose radii are  $PA, PB, PC, \&c.$ , then—1. The circle whose radius is the maximum line ( $PA$ ) lies outside the circle  $ADE$ , and touches it in  $A$  [Def. iv.]. 2. The circle whose radius is the minimum line ( $PE$ ) lies inside the circle  $ADE$ , and touches it in  $E$ . 3. A circle having any of the remaining lines ( $PD$ ) as radius cuts  $ADE$  in two points ( $D, F$ ).

**Observation.**—Proposition VII. affords a good illustration of the following important definition (see *Sequel to Euclid*, p. 13):—If a geometrical magnitude varies its position continuously according to any law, and if it retains the same value throughout, it is said to be a constant, such as the radius of a circle revolving round the centre; but if it goes on increasing for some time, and then begins to decrease, it is said to be a *maximum* at the end of the increase. Thus, in the foregoing figure,  $PA$ , supposed to revolve round  $P$  and meet the circle, is a maximum. Again, if it decreases for some time, and then begins to increase, it is a *minimum* at the commencement of the increase. Thus  $PE$ , supposed as before to revolve round  $P$  and meet the circle, is a minimum. Proposition VIII. will give other illustrations.

#### PROP. VIII.—THEOREM.

*If from any point ( $P$ ) outside a circle, lines ( $PA, PB, PC, \&c.$ ) be drawn to the concave circumference, then—*

1. *The maximum is that which passes through the centre.*
2. *Of the others, that which is nearer to the one through the centre is greater than the one more remote.*
3. *Again, if lines be drawn to the convex circumference—*
3. *The minimum is that whose production passes through the centre.*
4. *Of the others, that which is nearer to the minimum is less than one more remote.*
5. *From the given point ( $P$ ) there can be drawn two equal lines to the concave or the convex circumference, both of which make equal angles with the line passing through the centre.*
6. *More than two equal lines cannot be drawn from the given point ( $P$ ) to either circumference.*



**Dem.**—1. Let  $O$  be the centre. Join  $OB$ . Now since  $O$  is the centre,  $OA$  is equal to  $OB$ : to each add  $OP$ , and we have  $AP$  equal to the sum of  $OB, OP$ ;

but the sum of  $OB$ ,  $OP$  is greater than  $BP$  [I. xx.]. Therefore  $AP$  is greater than  $BP$ .

2. Join  $OC$ ,  $OD$ . The two triangles  $BOP$ ,  $COP$  have the side  $OB$  equal to  $OC$ , and  $OP$  common, and the angle  $BOP$  greater than  $COP$ ; therefore the base  $BP$  is greater than  $CP$  [I. xxiv.]. In like manner  $CP$  is greater than  $DP$ , &c.

3. Join  $OF$ . Now in the triangle  $OPF$  the sum of the sides  $OF$ ,  $FP$  is greater than  $OP$  [I. xx.]; but  $OF$  is equal to  $OE$  [I. Def. xxx.]. Reject them, and  $FP$  will remain greater than  $EP$ .

4. Join  $OG$ ,  $OH$ . The two triangles  $GOP$ ,  $FOP$  have two sides  $GO$ ,  $OP$  in one respectively equal to two sides  $FO$ ,  $OP$  in the other; but the angle  $GOP$  is greater than  $FOP$ ; therefore [I. xxiv.] the base  $GP$  is greater than  $FP$ . In like manner  $HP$  is greater than  $GP$ .

5. Make the angle  $POI$  equal  $POF$  [I. xxiii.]. Join  $IP$ . Now the triangles  $IOP$ ,  $FOP$  have two sides  $IO$ ,  $OP$  in one respectively equal to two sides  $FO$ ,  $OP$  in the other, and the angle  $IOP$  equal to  $FOP$  (const.); therefore [I. iv.]  $IP$  is equal to  $FP$ .

6. A third line cannot be drawn from  $P$  equal to either of the lines  $IP$ ,  $FP$ . For if possible let  $PK$  be equal to  $PF$ ; then  $PK$  is equal to  $PI$ —that is, one which is nearer to the minimum equal to one more remote—which is impossible.

*Cor.* 1.—If  $PI$  be produced to meet the circle again in  $L$ ,  $PL$  is equal to  $PB$ .

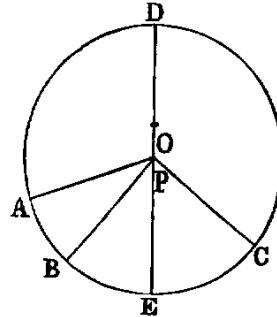
*Cor.* 2.—If two equal lines be drawn from  $P$  to either the convex or concave circumference, the diameter through  $P$  bisects the angle between them, and the parts of them intercepted by the circle are equal.

*Cor.* 3.—If  $P$  be the common centre of circles whose radii are lines drawn from  $P$  to the circumference of  $HDE$ , then—1. The circle whose radius is the minimum line ( $PE$ ) has contact of the *first kind* with  $ADE$  [Def. iv.]. 2. The circle whose radius is the maximum line ( $PA$ ) has contact of the *second kind*. 3. A circle having any of the remaining lines ( $PF$ ) as radius intersects  $HDE$  in two points ( $F$ ,  $I$ ).

#### PROP. IX.—THEOREM.

*A point ( $P$ ) within a circle ( $ABC$ ), from which more than two equal lines ( $PA$ ,  $PB$ ,  $PC$ , &c.) can be drawn to the circumference, is the centre.*

**Dem.**—If  $P$  be not the centre, let  $O$  be the centre. Join  $OP$ , and produce it to meet the circle in  $D$  and  $E$ ; then  $DE$  is the diameter, and  $P$  is a point in it which is not the centre: therefore [VII.] only two equal lines can be drawn from  $P$  to the circumference; but three equal lines are drawn (hyp.), which is absurd. Hence  $P$  must be the centre.



*Or thus:* Since the lines  $AP$ ,  $BP$  are equal, the line bisecting the angle  $APB$  [vii. Cor. 1] must pass through the centre: in like manner the line bisecting the angle  $BPC$  must pass through the centre. Hence the point of intersection of these bisectors, that is, the point  $P$ , must be the centre.

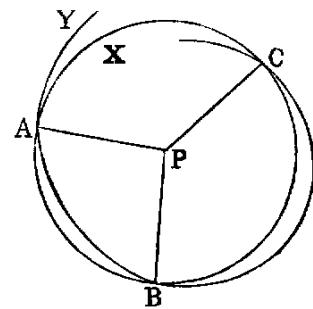
#### PROP. X.—THEOREM.

*If two circles have more than two points common, they must coincide.*

**Dem.**—Let  $X$  be one of the circles; and if possible let another circle  $Y$  have three points,  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ , in common with  $X$ , without coinciding with it. Find  $P$ , the centre of  $X$ . Join  $PA$ ,  $PB$ ,  $PC$ . Then since  $P$  is the centre of  $X$ , the three lines  $PA$ ,  $PB$ ,  $PC$  are equal to one another.

Again, since  $Y$  is a circle and  $P$  a point, from which three equal lines  $PA$ ,  $PB$ ,  $PC$  can be drawn to its circumference,  $P$  must be the centre of  $Y$ . Hence  $X$  and  $Y$  are concentric, which [v.] is impossible.

*Cor.*—Two circles not coinciding cannot have more than two points common. Compare I., Axiom x., that two right lines not coinciding cannot have more than one point common.

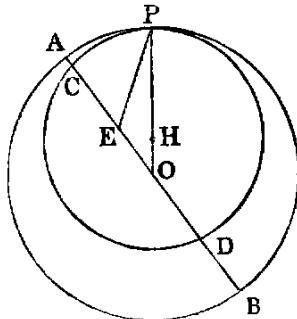


#### PROP. XI.—THEOREM.

*If one circle (CPD) touch another circle (APB) internally at any point  $P$ , the line joining the centres must pass through that point.*

**Dem.**—Let  $O$  be the centre of  $APB$ . Join  $OP$ . I say the centre of the smaller circle is in the line  $OP$ . If not, let it be in any other position such as  $E$ . Join  $OE$ ,  $EP$ , and produce  $OE$  through  $E$  to meet the circles in the points  $C$ ,  $A$ . Now since  $E$  is a point in the diameter of the larger circle between the centre and  $A$ ,  $EA$  is less than  $EP$  [vii. 2]; but  $EP$  is equal to  $EC$  (hyp.), being radii of the smaller circle. Hence  $EA$  is less than  $EC$ ; which is impossible; consequently the centre of the smaller circle must be in the line  $OP$ . Let it be  $H$ ; then we see that the line joining the centres passes through the point  $P$ .

*Or thus:* Since  $EP$  is a line drawn from a point within the circle  $APB$  to the circumference, but not forming part of the diameter through  $E$ , the circle whose centre is  $E$  and radius  $EP$  cuts [vii., Cor. 2]  $APB$  in  $P$ , but it touches it (hyp.) also in  $P$ , which is impossible. Hence the centre of the smaller circle  $CPD$  must be in the line  $OP$ .



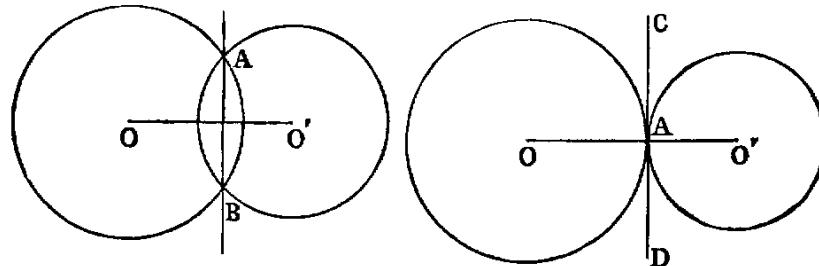
PROP. XII.—THEOREM.

*If two circles (PCF, PDE) have external contact at any point P, the line joining their centres must pass through that point.*

**Dem.**—Let A be the centre of one of the circles. Join AP, and produce it to meet the second circle again in E. I say the centre of the second circle is in the line PE. If not, let it be elsewhere, as at B. Join AB, intersecting the circles in C and D, and join BP. Now since A is the centre of the circle PCF, AP is equal to AC; and since B is the centre of the circle PDE, BP is equal to BD. Hence the sum of the lines AP, BP is equal to the sum of the lines AC, DB; but AB is greater than the sum of AC and DB; therefore AB is greater than the sum of AP, PB—that is, one side of a triangle greater than the sum of the other two—which [I. xx.] is impossible. Hence the centre of the second circle must be in the line PE. Let it be G, and we see that *the line through the centres passes through the point P.*

*Or thus:* Since BP is a line drawn from a point without the circle PCF to its circumference, and when produced does not pass through the centre, the circle whose centre is B and radius BP must cut the circle PCF in P [VIII., Cor. 3]; but it touches it (hyp.) also in P, which is impossible. *Hence the centre of the second circle must be in the line PE.*

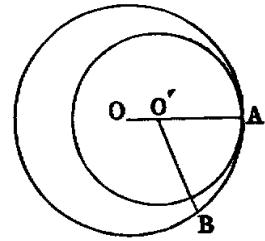
**Observation.**—Propositions XI, XII., may both be included in one enunciation as follows:—“If two circles touch each other at any point, the centres and that point are collinear.” And this latter Proposition is a limiting case of the theorem given in Proposition III., Cor. 4, that “The line joining the centres of two intersecting circles bisects the common chord perpendicularly.”



Suppose the circle whose centre is O and one of the points of intersection A to remain fixed, while the second circle turns round that point in such a manner that the second point of intersection B becomes ultimately consecutive to A; then, since the line  $OO'$  always bisects  $AB$ , we see that when B ultimately becomes consecutive to A, the line  $OO'$  passes through A. In consequence of the motion, the common chord will become in the limit a tangent to each circle, as in the second diagram.—COMBEROUSSE, *Géométrie Plane*, page 57.

*Cor. 1.*—If two circles touch each other, their point of contact is the union of two points of intersection. Hence a contact counts for two intersections.

*Cor. 2.*—If two circles touch each other at any point, they cannot have any other common point. For, since two circles cannot have more than two points common [x.], and that the point of contact is equivalent to two common points, circles that touch cannot have any other point common. The following is a formal proof of this Proposition:—Let  $O, O'$  be the centres of the two circles,  $A$  the point of contact, and let  $O'$  lie between  $O$  and  $A$ ; take any other point  $B$  in the circumference of  $O$ . Join  $O'B$ ; then [vii.]  $O'B$  is greater than  $O'A$ ; therefore the point  $C$  is outside the circumference of the smaller circle. Hence  $B$  cannot be common to both circles. In like manner, they cannot have any other common point but  $A$ .



#### PROP. XIII.—THEOREM.

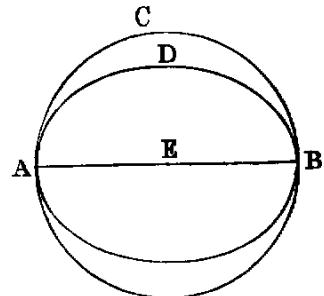
*Two circles cannot have double contact, that is, cannot touch each other in two points.*

**Dem.**—1. If possible let two circles touch each other at two points  $A$  and  $B$ . Now since the two circles touch each other in  $A$ , the line joining their centres passes through  $A$  [xi.]. In like manner, it passes through  $B$ . Hence the centres and the points  $A, B$  are in one right line; therefore  $AB$  is a diameter of each circle. Hence, if  $AB$  be bisected in  $E$ ,  $E$  must be the centre of each circle—that is, the circles are concentric—which [v.] is impossible.

2. If two circles touched each other externally in two distinct points, then [xii.] the line joining the centres should pass through each point, which is impossible.

*Or thus:* Draw a line bisecting  $AB$  at right angles. Then this line [I., Cor. 1] must pass through the centre of each circle, and therefore [xi. XII.] must pass through each point of contact, which is impossible. *Hence two circles cannot have double contact.*

This Proposition is an immediate inference from the theorem [xii., Cor. 1], that a point of contact counts for two intersections, for then two contacts would be equivalent to four intersections; but there cannot be more than two intersections [x.]. It also follows from Prop. XII., *Cor. 2*, that if two circles touch each other in a point  $A$ , they cannot have any other point common; hence they cannot touch again in  $B$ .



#### Exercises.

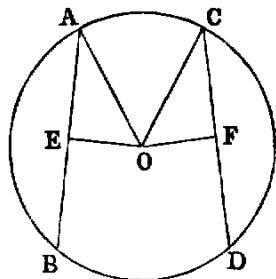
1. If a variable circle touch two fixed circles externally, the difference of the distances of its centre from the centres of the fixed circles is equal to the difference or the sum of their radii, according as the contacts are of the same or of opposite species (Def. IV.).
2. If a variable circle be touched by one of two fixed circles internally, and touch the other fixed circle either externally or internally, the sum of the distances of its centre from the centres of the fixed circles is equal to the sum or the difference of their radii, according as the contact with the second circle is of the first or second kind.
3. If through the point of contact of two touching circles any secant be drawn cutting the circles again in two points, the radii drawn to these points are parallel.

4. If two diameters of two touching circles be parallel, the lines from the point of contact to the extremities of one diameter pass through the extremities of the other.

#### PROP. XIV.—THEOREM.

*In equal circles—1. equal chords ( $AB$ ,  $CD$ ) are equally distant from the centre. 2. chords which are equally distant from the centre are equal.*

**Dem.**—1. Let  $O$  be the centre. Draw the perpendiculars  $OE$ ,  $OF$ . Join  $AO$ ,  $CO$ . Then because  $AB$  is a chord in a circle, and  $OE$  is drawn from the centre cutting it at right angles, it bisects it [III.]; therefore  $AE$  is the half of  $AB$ . In like manner,  $CF$  is the half of  $CD$ ; but  $AB$  is equal to  $CD$  (hyp.). Therefore  $AE$  is equal to  $CF$  [I., Axiom VII.]. And because  $E$  is a right angle,  $AO^2$  is equal to  $AE^2 + EO^2$ . In like manner,  $CO^2$  is equal to  $CF^2 + FO^2$ ; but  $AO^2$  is equal to  $CO^2$ . Therefore  $AE^2 + EO^2$  is equal to  $CF^2 + FO^2$ ; and  $AE^2$  has been proved equal to  $CF^2$ . Hence  $EO^2$  is equal to  $FO^2$ ; therefore  $EO$  is equal to  $FO$ . Hence  $AB$ ,  $CD$  are (Def. VI.) *equally distant from the centre*.



2. Let  $EO$  be equal to  $FO$ , it is required to prove  $AB$  equal to  $CD$ . The same construction being made, we have, as before,  $AE^2 + EO^2$  equal to  $CF^2 + FO^2$ ; but  $EO^2$  is equal to  $FO^2$  (hyp.). Hence  $AE^2$  is equal to  $CF^2$ , and  $AE$  is equal to  $CF$ ; but  $AB$  is double of  $AE$ , and  $CD$  double of  $CF$ . Therefore  $AB$  is equal to  $CD$ .

#### Exercise.

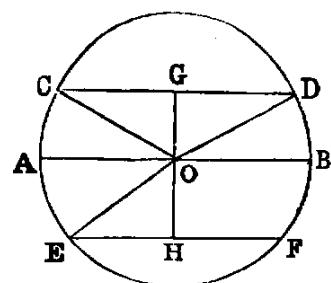
If a chord of given length slide round a fixed circle—1. the locus of its middle point is a circle; 2. the locus of any point fixed in the chord is a circle.

#### PROP. XV.—THEOREM.

*The diameter ( $AB$ ) is the greatest chord in a circle; and of the others, the chord ( $CD$ ) which is nearer to the centre is greater than ( $EF$ ) one more remote, and the greater is nearer to the centre than the less.*

**Dem.**—1. Join  $OC$ ,  $OD$ ,  $OE$ , and draw the perpendiculars  $OG$ ,  $OH$ ; then because  $O$  is the centre,  $OA$  is equal to  $OC$  [I., Def. XXXII.], and  $OB$  is equal to  $OD$ . Hence  $AB$  is equal to the sum of  $OC$  and  $OD$ ; but the sum of  $OC$ ,  $OD$  is greater than  $CD$  [I. xx.]. Therefore  $AB$  is greater than  $CD$ .

2. Because the chord  $CD$  is nearer to the centre than  $EF$ ,  $OG$  is less than  $OH$ ; and since the



triangles  $OGC$ ,  $OHE$  are right-angled, we have  $OC^2 = OG^2 + GC^2$ , and  $OE^2 = OH^2 + HE^2$ ; therefore  $OG^2 + GC^2 = OH^2 + HE^2$ ; but  $OG^2$  is less than  $OH^2$ ; therefore  $GC^2$  is greater than  $HE^2$ , and  $GC$  is greater than  $HE$ , but  $CD$  and  $EF$  are the doubles of  $GC$  and  $HE$ . Hence  $CD$  is greater than  $EF$ .

3. Let  $CD$  be greater than  $EF$ , it is required to prove that  $OG$  is less than  $OH$ .

As before, we have  $OG^2 + GC^2$  equal to  $OH^2 + HE^2$ ; but  $CG^2$  is greater than  $EH^2$ ; therefore  $OG^2$  is less than  $OH^2$ . Hence  $OG$  is less than  $OH$ .

#### Exercises.

1. The shortest chord which can be drawn through a given point within a circle is the perpendicular to the diameter which passes through that point.
2. Through a given point, within or without a given circle, draw a chord of length equal to that of a given chord.
3. Through one of the points of intersection of two circles draw a secant—1. the sum of whose segments intercepted by the circles shall be a maximum; 2. which shall be of any length less than that of the maximum.
4. Three circles touch each other externally at  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ ; the chords  $AB$ ,  $AC$  of two of them are produced to meet the third again in the points  $D$  and  $E$ ; prove that  $DE$  is a diameter of the third circle, and parallel to the line joining the centres of the others.

#### PROP. XVI.—THEOREM.

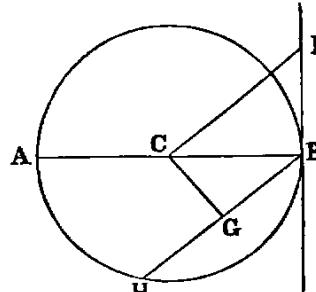
1. *The perpendicular ( $BI$ ) to the diameter ( $AB$ ) of a circle at its extremity ( $B$ ) touches the circle at that point.*
2. *Any other line ( $BH$ ) through the same point cuts the circle.*

**Dem.**—1. Take any point  $I$ , and join it to the centre  $C$ . Then because the angle  $CBI$  is a right angle,  $CI^2$  is equal to  $CB^2 + BI^2$  [I. XLVII.]; therefore  $CI^2$  is greater than  $CB^2$ . Hence  $CI$  is greater than  $CB$ , and the point  $I$  [note on I., Def. xxxii.] is without the circle. In like manner, every other point in  $BI$ , except  $B$ , is without the circle. Hence, since  $BI$  meets the circle at  $B$ , but does not cut it, it must touch it.

2. To prove that  $BH$ , which is not perpendicular to  $AB$ , cuts the circle. Draw  $CG$  perpendicular to  $HB$ . Now  $BC^2$  is equal to  $CG^2 + GB^2$ . Therefore  $BC^2$  is greater than  $CG^2$ , and  $BC$  is greater than  $CG$ . Hence [note on I., Def. xxxii.] the point  $G$  must be within the circle, and consequently the line  $BG$  produced must meet the circle again, and must therefore cut it.

This Proposition may be proved as follows:

*At every point on a circle the tangent is perpendicular to the radius.*



Let  $P$  and  $Q$  be two consecutive points on the circumference. Join  $CP$ ,  $CQ$ ,  $PQ$ ; produce  $PQ$  both ways. Now since  $P$  and  $Q$  are consecutive points,  $PQ$  is a tangent (Def. III.). Again, the sum of the three angles of the triangle  $CPQ$  is equal to two right angles; but the angle  $C$  is infinitely small, and the others are equal. Hence each of them is a right angle. *Therefore the tangent is perpendicular to the diameter.*

*Or thus:* A tangent is a limiting position of a secant, namely, when the secant moves out until the two points of intersection with the circle become consecutive; but the line through the centre which bisects the part of the secant within the circle [III.] is perpendicular to it. *Hence, in the limit the tangent is perpendicular to the line from the centre to the point of contact.*

*Or again:* The angle  $CPR$  is always equal to  $CQS$ ; hence, when  $P$  and  $Q$  come together each is a right angle, *and the tangent is perpendicular to the radius.*

#### Exercises.

1. If two circles be concentric, all chords of the greater which touch the lesser are equal.
2. Draw a parallel to a given line to touch a given circle.
3. Draw a perpendicular to a given line to touch a given circle.
4. Describe a circle having its centre at a given point—1. and touching a given line; 2. and touching a given circle. How many solutions of this case?
5. Describe a circle of given radius that shall touch two given lines. How many solutions?
6. Find the locus of the centres of a system of circles touching two given lines.
7. Describe a circle of given radius that shall touch a given circle and a given line, or that shall touch two given circles.

#### PROP. XVII.—PROBLEM.

*From a given point ( $P$ ) without a given circle ( $BCD$ ) to draw a tangent to the circle.*

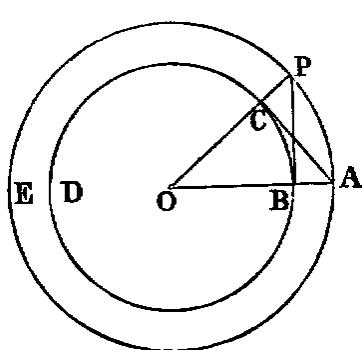


Fig. 1.

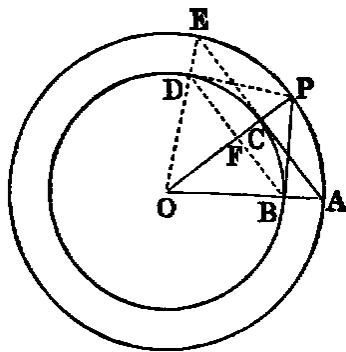


Fig. 2.

**Sol.**—Let  $O$  (fig. 1) be the centre of the given circle. Join  $OP$ , cutting the circumference in  $C$ . With  $O$  as centre, and  $OP$  as radius, describe the circle  $APE$ . Erect  $CA$  at right angles to  $OP$ . Join  $OA$ , intersecting the circle  $BCD$  in  $B$ . Join  $BP$ ; it will be the tangent required.

**Dem.**—Since  $O$  is the centre of the two circles, we have  $OA$  equal to  $OP$ , and  $OC$  equal to  $OB$ . Hence the two triangles  $AOC$ ,  $POB$  have the sides  $OA$ ,  $OC$  in one respectively equal to the sides  $OP$ ,  $OB$  in the other, and the contained angle common to both. Hence [I. iv.] the angle  $OCA$  is equal to  $OBP$ ; but  $OCA$  is a right angle (const.); therefore  $OBP$  is a right angle, and [xvi.]  $PB$  touches the circle at  $B$ .

**Cor.**—If  $AC$  (fig. 2) be produced to  $E$ ,  $OE$  joined, cutting the circle  $BCD$  in  $D$ , and the line  $DP$  drawn,  $DP$  will be another tangent from  $P$ .

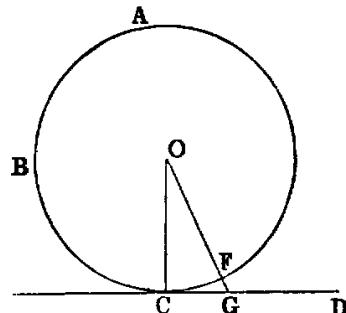
#### Exercises.

1. The two tangents  $PB$ ,  $PD$  (fig. 2) are equal to one another, because the square of each is equal to the square of  $OP$  minus the square of the radius.
2. If two circles be concentric, all tangents to the inner from points on the outer are equal.
3. If a quadrilateral be circumscribed to a circle, the sum of one pair of opposite sides is equal to the sum of the other pair.
4. If a parallelogram be circumscribed to a circle it must be a lozenge, and its diagonals intersect in the centre.
5. If  $BD$  be joined, intersecting  $OP$  in  $F$ ,  $OP$  is perpendicular to  $BD$ .
6. The locus of the intersection of two equal tangents to two circles is a right line (*called the radical axis of the two circles*).
7. Find a point such that tangents from it to three given circles shall be equal. (*This point is called the radical centre of the three circles.*)
8. The rectangle  $OF \cdot OP$  is equal to the square of the radius.
- DEF. *Two points, such as F and P, the rectangle of whose distances OF, OP from the centre is equal to the square of the radius, are called inverse points with respect to the circle.*
9. The intercept made on a variable tangent by two fixed tangents subtends a constant angle at the centre.
10. Draw a common tangent to two circles. Hence, show how to draw a line cutting two circles, so that the intercepted chords shall be of given lengths.

#### PROP. XVIII.—THEOREM

*If a line (CD) touch a circle, the line (OC) from the centre to the point of contact is perpendicular to it.*

**Dem.**—If not, suppose another line  $OG$  drawn from the centre to be perpendicular to  $CD$ . Let  $OG$  cut the circle in  $F$ . Then because the angle  $OGC$  is right (hyp.) the angle  $OCG$  [I. xvii.] must be acute. Therefore [I. xix.]  $OC$  is greater than  $OG$ ; but  $OC$  is equal to  $OF$  [I. Def. xxxii.]; therefore  $OF$  is greater than  $OG$ —that is, a part greater than the whole, which is impossible. Hence  $OC$  must be perpendicular to  $CD$ .



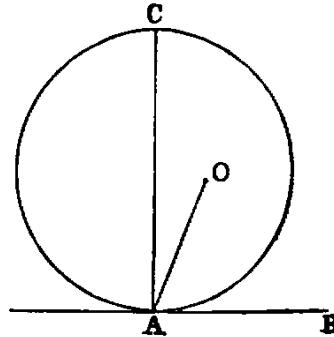
*Or thus:* Since the perpendicular must be the shortest line from  $O$  to  $CD$ , and  $OC$  is evidently the shortest line; therefore  $OC$  must be perpendicular to  $CD$ .

#### PROP. XIX.—THEOREM.

*If a line (AB) be a tangent to a circle, the line (AC) drawn at right angles to it from the point of contact passes through the centre.*

If the centre be not in  $AC$ , let  $O$  be the centre. Join  $AO$ . Then because  $AB$  touches the circle, and  $OA$  is drawn from the centre to the point of contact,  $OA$  is at right angles to  $AB$  [XVIII.]; therefore the angle  $OAB$  is right, and the angle  $CAB$  is right (hyp.); therefore  $OAB$  is equal to  $CAB$ —a part equal to the whole, which is impossible. *Hence the centre must be in the line  $AC$ .*

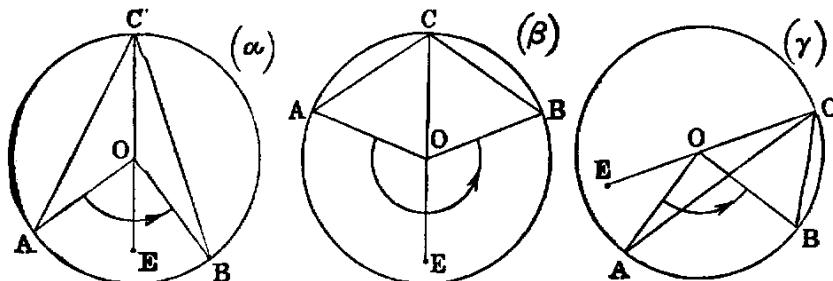
*Cor.*—If a number of circles touch the same line at the same point, the locus of their centres is the perpendicular to the line at the point.



*Observation.*—Propositions XVI., XVIII., XIX., are so related that any two can be inferred from the third by the “Rule of Identity.” Hence it would, in strict logic, be sufficient to prove any one of the three, and the others would follow. Again, these three theorems are limiting cases of Proposition I., *Cor.* 1., and Parts 1, 2, of Proposition III., namely, when the points in which the chord cuts the circle become consecutive.

#### PROP. XX.—THEOREM.

*The angle (AOB) at the centre (O) of a circle is double the angle (ACB) at the circumference standing on the same arc.*



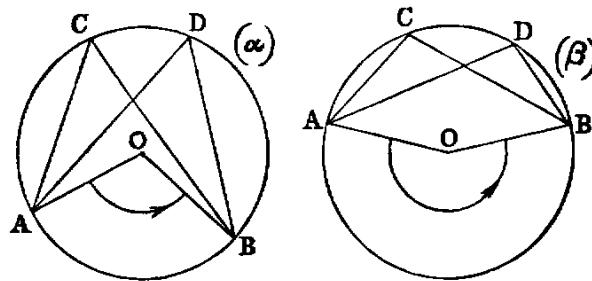
**Dem.**—Join  $CO$ , and produce it to  $E$ . Then because  $OA$  is equal to  $OC$ , the angle  $ACO$  is equal to  $OAC$ ; but the angle  $AOE$  is equal to the sum of the two angles  $OAC$ ,  $ACO$ . Hence the angle  $AOE$  is double the angle  $ACO$ . In like

manner the angle  $EOB$  is double the angle  $OCB$ . Hence (by adding in figs. ( $\alpha$ ), ( $\beta$ ), and subtracting in ( $\gamma$ )), *the angle  $AOB$  is double of the angle  $ACB$ .*

*Cor.*—If  $AOB$  be a straight line,  $ACB$  will be a right angle—that is, *the angle in a semicircle is a right angle* (compare XXXI.).

#### PROP. XXI.—THEOREM.

*The angles ( $ACB$ ,  $ADB$ ) in the same segment of a circle are equal.*

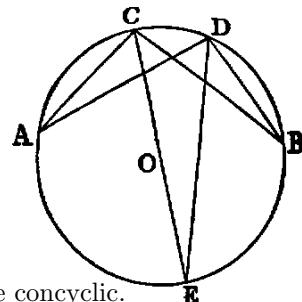


**Dem.**—Let  $O$  be the centre. Join  $OA$ ,  $OB$ . Then the angle  $AOB$  is double of the angle  $ACB$  [xx.], and also double of the angle  $ADB$ . *Therefore the angle  $ACB$  is equal to the angle  $ADB$ .*

The following is the proof of the second part—that is, when the arc  $AB$  is not greater than a semicircle, without using angles greater than two right angles:—

Let  $O$  be the centre. Join  $CO$ , and produce it to meet the circle again in  $E$ . Join  $DE$ . Now since  $O$  is the centre, the segment  $ACE$  is greater than a semicircle; hence, by the first case, fig. ( $\alpha$ ), the angle  $ACE$  is equal to  $ADE$ . In like manner the angle  $ECB$  is equal to  $EDB$ . *Hence the whole angle  $ACB$  is equal to the whole angle  $ADB$ .*

*Cor.* 1.—If two triangles  $ACB$ ,  $ADB$  on the same base  $AB$ , and on the same side of it, have equal vertical angles, the four points  $A$ ,  $C$ ,  $D$ ,  $B$  are concyclic.



*Cor.* 2.—If  $A$ ,  $B$  be two fixed points, and if  $C$  varies its position in such a way that the angle  $ACB$  retains the same value throughout, the locus of  $C$  is a circle.

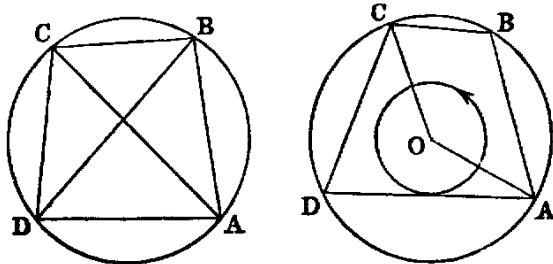
In other words—*Given the base of a triangle and the vertical angle, the locus of the vertex is a circle.*

Exercises.

1. Given the base of a triangle and the vertical angle, find the locus—
  - (1) of the intersection of its perpendiculars;
  - (2) of the intersection of the internal bisectors of its base angles;
  - (3) of the intersection of the external bisectors of the base angles;
  - (4) of the intersection of the external bisector of one base angle and the internal bisector of the other.
2. If the sum of the squares of two lines be given, their sum is a maximum when the lines are equal.
3. Of all triangles having the same base and vertical angle, the sum of the sides of an isosceles triangle is a maximum.
4. Of all triangles inscribed in a circle, the equilateral triangle has the maximum perimeter.
5. Of all concyclic figures having a given number of sides, the area is a maximum when the sides are equal.

PROP. XXII.—THEOREM.

*The sum of the opposite angles of a quadrilateral (ABCD) inscribed in a circle is two right angles.*



**Fig. 1.**

**Fig. 2.**

**Dem.**—Join  $AC$ ,  $BD$ . The angle  $ABD$  is equal to  $ACD$ , being in the same segment  $ABCD$  [XXI.]; and the angle  $DBC$  is equal to  $DAC$ , because they are in the same segment  $DABC$ . Hence the whole angle  $ABC$  is equal to the sum of the two angles  $ACD$ ,  $DAC$ . To each add the angle  $CDA$ , and we have the sum of the two angles  $ABC$ ,  $CDA$  equal to the sum of the three angles  $ACD$ ,  $DAC$ ,  $CDA$  of the triangle  $ACD$ ; but the sum of the three angles of a triangle is equal to two right angles [I. XXXII.]. *Therefore the sum of  $ABC$ ,  $CDA$  is two right angles.*

*Or thus:* Let  $O$  be the centre of the circle. Join  $OA$ ,  $OC$  (see fig. 2). Now the angle  $AOC$  is double of  $CDA$  [xx.], and the angle  $COA$  is double of  $ABC$ . Hence the sum of the angles [I. Def. IX., note]  $AOC$ ,  $COA$  is double of the sum of the angles  $CDA$ ,  $ABC$ ; but the sum of two angles  $AOC$ ,  $COA$  is four right angles. *Therefore the sum of the angles  $CDA$ ,  $ABC$  is two right angles.*

*Or again:* Let  $O$  be the centre (fig. 2). Join  $OA$ ,  $OB$ ,  $OC$ ,  $OD$ . Then the four triangles  $AOB$ ,  $BOC$ ,  $COD$ ,  $DOA$  are each isosceles. Hence the angle  $OAB$  is equal to the angle  $OBA$ , and the angle  $OAD$  equal to the angle  $ODA$ ; therefore the angle  $BAD$  is equal to the sum of the angles  $OBA$ ,  $ODA$ . In like

manner the angle  $BCD$  is equal to the sum of the angles  $OBC, ODC$ . Hence the sum of the two angles  $BAD, BCD$  is equal to the sum of the two angles  $ABC, ADC$ , and hence each sum is two right angles.

*Cor.*—If a parallelogram be inscribed in a circle it is a rectangle.

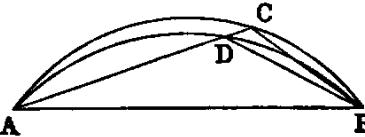
### Exercises.

1. If the opposite angles of a quadrilateral be supplemental, it is cyclic.
  2. If a figure of six sides be inscribed in a circle, the sum of any three alternate angles is four right angles.
  3. A line which makes equal angles with one pair of opposite sides of a cyclic quadrilateral, makes equal angles with the remaining pair and with the diagonals.
  4. If two opposite sides of a cyclic quadrilateral be produced to meet, and a perpendicular be let fall on the bisector of the angle between them from the point of intersection of the diagonals, this perpendicular will bisect the angle between the diagonals.
  5. If two pairs of opposite sides of a cyclic hexagon be respectively parallel to each other, the remaining pair of sides are also parallel.
  6. If two circles intersect in the points  $A, B$ , and any two lines  $ACD, BFE$ , be drawn through  $A$  and  $B$ , cutting one of the circles in the points  $C, E$ , and the other in the points  $D, F$ , the line  $CE$  is parallel to  $DF$ .
  7. If equilateral triangles be described on the sides of any triangle, the lines joining the vertices of the original triangle to the opposite vertices of the equilateral triangles are concurrent.
  8. In the same case prove that the centres of the circles described about the equilateral triangles form another equilateral triangle.
  9. If a quadrilateral be described about a circle, the angles at the centre subtended by the opposite sides are supplemental.
  10. The perpendiculars of a triangle are concurrent.
  11. If a variable tangent meets two parallel tangents it subtends a right angle at the centre.
  12. The feet of the perpendiculars let fall on the sides of a triangle from any point in the circumference of the circumscribed circle are collinear (SIMSON).
- DEF.—*The line of collinearity is called Simson's line.*
13. If a hexagon be circumscribed about a circle, the sum of the angles subtended at the centre by any three alternate sides is equal to two right angles.

### PROP. XXIII—THEOREM.

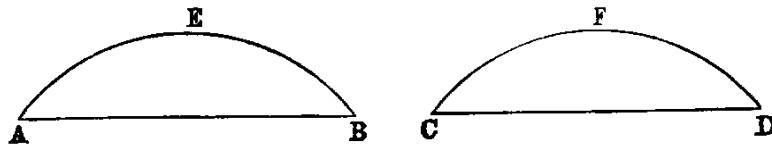
*Two similar segments of circles which do not coincide cannot be constructed on the same chord ( $AB$ ), and on the same side of that chord.*

**Dem.**—If possible, let  $ACB, ADB$ , be two similar segments constructed on the same side of  $AB$ . Take any point  $D$  in the inner one. Join  $AD$ , and produce it to meet the outer one in  $C$ . Join  $BC, BD$ . Then since the segments are similar, the angle  $ADB$  is equal to  $ACB$  (Def. x.), which is impossible [I. XVI.]. Hence two similar segments not coinciding cannot be described on the same chord and on the same side of it.



PROP. XXIV.—THEOREM.

*Similar segments of circles ( $AEB$ ,  $CFD$ ) on equal chords ( $AB$ ,  $CD$ ) are equal to one another.*



**Dem.**—Since the lines are equal, if  $AB$  be applied to  $CD$ , so that the point  $A$  will coincide with  $C$ , and the line  $AB$  with  $CD$ , the point  $B$  shall coincide with  $D$ ; and because the segments are similar, they must coincide [XXIII.]. Hence they are equal.

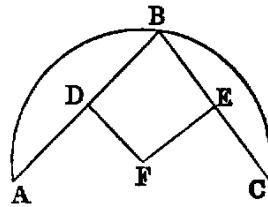
This demonstration may be stated as follows:—Since the chords are equal, they are congruent; and therefore the segments, being similar, must be congruent.

PROP. XXV.—PROBLEM.

*An arc ( $ABC$ ) of a circle being given, it is required to describe the whole circle.*

**Sol.**—Take any three points  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$  in the arc. Join  $AB$ ,  $BC$ . Bisect  $AB$  in  $D$ , and  $BC$  in  $E$ . Erect  $DF$ ,  $EF$  at right angles to  $AB$ ,  $BC$ ; then  $F$ , the point of intersection, will be the centre of the circle.

**Dem.**—Because  $DF$  bisects the chord  $AB$  and is perpendicular to it, it passes through the centre [I., Cor. 1]. In like manner  $EF$  passes through the centre. Hence the point  $F$  must be the centre; and the circle described from  $F$  as centre, with  $FA$  as radius, will be the circle required.



PROP. XXVI.—THEOREM.

The four Propositions XXVI.–XXIX. are so like in their enunciations that students frequently substitute one for another. The following scheme will assist in remembering them:—

In Proposition XXVI. are given angles  $=$ , to prove arcs  $=$ ,

,, XXVII. , arcs  $=$ , , angles  $=$ ,

,, XXVIII. , chords  $=$ , , arcs  $=$ ,

,, XXIX. , arcs  $=$ , , chords  $=$ ;

so that Proposition XXVII. is the converse of XXVI., and XXIX. of XXVIII.

*In equal circles ( $ACB$ ,  $DFE$ ), equal angles at the centres ( $AOB$ ,  $DHE$ ) or at the circumferences ( $ACB$ ,  $DFE$ ) stand upon equal arcs.*

**Dem.**—1. Suppose the angles at the centres to be given equal. Now because the circles are equal their radii are equal (Def. I.). Therefore the two triangles  $AOB$ ,  $DHE$  have the sides  $AO$ ,  $OB$  in one respectively equal to the sides  $DH$ ,  $HE$  in the other, and the angle  $AOB$  equal to  $DHE$  (hyp.).

Therefore [I. iv.] the base  $AB$  is equal to  $DE$ .

Again, since the angles  $ACB$ ,  $DFE$  are [xx.] the halves of the equal angles  $AOB$ ,  $DHE$ , they are equal [I. Axiom VII.]. Therefore (Def. x.) the segments  $ACB$ ,  $DFE$  are similar, and their chords  $AB$ ,  $DE$  have been proved equal; therefore [xxiv.] the segments are equal. And taking these equals from the whole circles, which are equal (hyp.), the remaining segments  $AGB$ ,  $DKE$  are equal. *Hence the arcs  $AGB$ ,  $DKE$  are equal.*

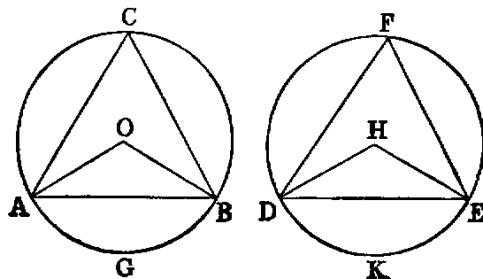
2. The demonstration of this case is included in the foregoing.

*Cor.* 1.—If the opposite angles of a cyclic quadrilateral be equal, one of its diagonals must be a diameter of the circumscribed circle.

*Cor.* 2.—Parallel chords in a circle intercept equal arcs.

*Cor.* 3.—If two chords intersect at any point within a circle, the sum of the opposite arcs which they intercept is equal to the arc which parallel chords intersecting on the circumference intercept. 2. If they intersect without the circle, the difference of the arcs they intercept is equal to the arc which parallel chords intersecting on the circumference intercept.

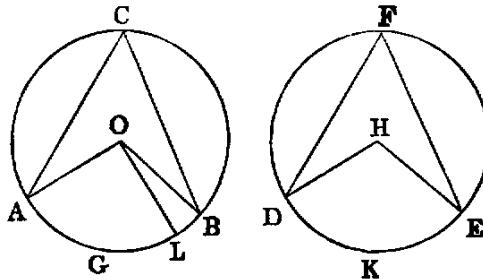
*Cor.* 4.—If two chords intersect at right angles, the sum of the opposite arcs which they intercept on the circle is a semicircle.



#### PROP. XXVII.—THEOREM.

*In equal circles ( $ACB$ ,  $DFE$ ), angles at the centres ( $AOB$ ,  $DHE$ ), or at the circumferences ( $ACB$ ,  $DFE$ ), which stand on equal arcs ( $AB$ ,  $DE$ ), are equal.*

**Dem.**—If possible let one of them, such as  $AOB$ , be greater than the other,  $DHE$ ; and suppose a part such as  $AOL$  to be equal to  $DHE$ . Then since the circles are equal, and the angles  $AOL$ ,  $DHE$  at the centres are equal (hyp.), the arc  $AL$  is equal to  $DE$  [xxvi.]; but  $AB$  is equal to  $DE$  (hyp.). Hence  $AL$  is equal to  $AB$ —that is, a part equal to the whole, which is absurd. *Therefore the angle  $AOB$  is equal to  $DHE$ .*

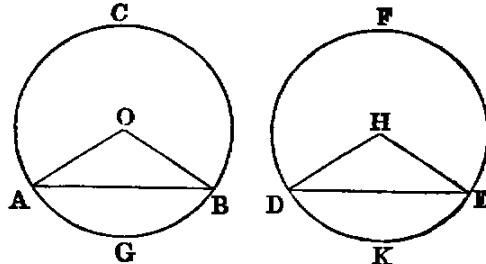


2. The angles at the circumference, being the halves of the central angles, are therefore equal.

PROP. XXVIII.—THEOREM.

*In equal circles ( $ACB, DFE$ ), equal chords ( $AB, DE$ ) divide the circumferences into arcs, which are equal each to each—that is, the lesser to the lesser, and the greater to the greater.*

**Dem.**—If the equal chords be diameters, the Proposition is evident. If not, let  $O, H$  be the centres. Join  $AO, OB, DH, HE$ ; then because the circles are equal their radii are equal (Def. 1.). Hence the two triangles  $AOB, DHE$  have the sides  $AO, OB$  in one respectively equal to the sides  $DH, HE$  in the other, and the base  $AB$  is equal to  $DE$  (hyp.). Therefore [I. VIII.] the angle  $AOB$  is equal to  $DHE$ . Hence the arc  $AGB$  is equal to  $DKE$  [xxvi.]; and since the whole circumference  $AGBC$  is equal to the whole circumference  $DKEF$ , the remaining arc  $ACB$  is equal to the remaining arc  $DFE$ .



Exercises.

1. The line joining the feet of perpendiculars from any point in the circumference of a circle, on two diameters given in position, is given in magnitude.
2. If a line of given length slide between two lines given in position, the locus of the intersection of perpendiculars to the given lines at its extremities is a circle. (This is the converse of 1.)

PROP. XXIX.—THEOREM.

*In equal circles ( $ACB, DFE$ ), equal arcs ( $AGB, DCK$ ) are subtended by equal chords.*

**Dem.**—Let  $O, H$  be the centres (see last fig.). Join  $AO, OB, DH, HE$ ; then because the circles are equal, the angles  $AOB, DHE$  at the centres, which stand on the equal arcs  $AGB, DKE$ , are equal [xxvii.]. Again, because the triangles  $AOB, DHE$  have the two sides  $AO, OB$  in one respectively equal to the two sides  $DH, HE$  in the other, and the angle  $AOB$  equal to the angle  $DHE$ , the base  $AB$  of one is equal to the base  $DE$  of the other.

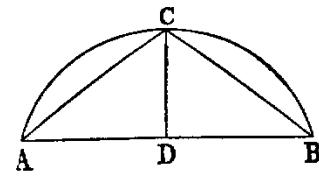
**Observation.**—Since the two circles in the four last Propositions are equal, they are congruent figures, and the truth of the Propositions is evident by superposition.

PROP. XXX.—PROBLEM.

*To bisect a given arc ACB.*

**Sol.**—Draw the chord  $AB$ ; bisect it in  $D$ ; erect  $DC$  at right angles to  $AB$ , meeting the arc in  $C$ ; then the arc is bisected in  $C$ .

**Dem.**—Join  $AC$ ,  $BC$ . Then the triangles  $ADC$ ,  $BDC$  have the side  $AD$  equal to  $DB$  (const.), and  $DC$  common to both, and the angle  $ADC$  equal to the angle  $BDC$ , each being right. Hence the base  $AC$  is equal to the base  $BC$ . Therefore [xxviii.] the arc  $AC$  is equal to the arc  $BC$ . *Hence the arc AB is bisected in C.*



Exercises.

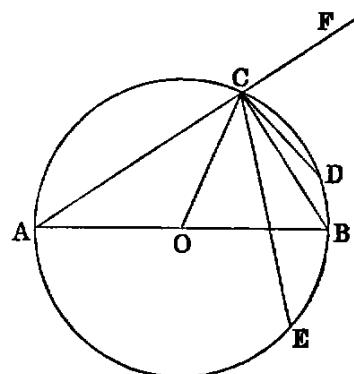
1.  $ABCD$  is a semicircle whose diameter is  $AD$ ; the chord  $BC$  produced meets  $AD$  produced in  $E$ : prove that if  $CE$  is equal to the radius, the arc  $AB$  is equal to three times  $CD$ .
2. The internal and the external bisectors of the vertical angle of a triangle inscribed in a circle meet the circumference again in points equidistant from the extremities of the base.
3. If from  $A$ , one of the points of intersection of two given circles, two chords  $ACD$ ,  $AC'D'$  be drawn, cutting the circles in the points  $C$ ,  $D$ ;  $C'$ ,  $D'$ , the triangles  $BCD$ ,  $BC'D'$ , formed by joining these to the second point  $B$  of intersection of the circles, are equiangular.
4. If the vertical angle  $ACB$  of a triangle inscribed in a circle be bisected by a line  $CD$ , which meets the circle again in  $D$ , and from  $D$  perpendiculars  $DE$ ,  $DF$  be drawn to the sides, one of which must be produced: prove that  $EA$  is equal to  $BF$ , and hence show that  $CE$  is equal to half the sum of  $AC$ ,  $BC$ .

PROP. XXXI.—THEOREM.

*In a circle—(1). The angle in a semicircle is a right angle. (2). The angle in a segment greater than a semicircle is an acute angle. (3). The angle in a segment less than a semicircle is an obtuse angle.*

**Dem.**—(1). Let  $AB$  be the diameter,  $C$  any point in the semicircle. Join  $AC$ ,  $CB$ . *The angle  $ACB$  is a right angle.*

For let  $O$  be the centre. Join  $OC$ , and produce  $AC$  to  $F$ . Then because  $AO$  is equal to  $OC$ , the angle  $ACO$  is equal to the angle  $OAC$ . In like manner, the angle  $OCB$  is equal to  $CBO$ . Hence the angle  $ACB$  is equal to the sum of the two angles  $BAC$ ,  $CBA$ ; but [I. xxxii.] the angle  $FCB$  is equal to the sum of the two interior angles  $BAC$ ,  $CBA$  of the triangle  $ABC$ . Hence the angle  $ACB$  is equal to its adjacent angle  $FCB$ , and therefore it is a right angle [I. Def. XIII.].



(2). Let the arc  $ACE$  be greater than a semicircle. Join  $CE$ . Then the angle  $ACE$  is evidently less than  $ACB$ ; but  $ACB$  is right; therefore  $ACE$  is acute.

(3). Let the arc  $ACD$  be less than a semicircle; then evidently, from (1), the angle  $ACD$  is obtuse.

*Cor.* 1.—If a parallelogram be inscribed in a circle, its diagonals intersect at the centre of the circle.

*Cor.* 2.—Find the centre of a circle by means of a carpenter's square.

*Cor.* 3.—From a point outside a circle draw two tangents to the circle.

#### PROP. XXXII.—THEOREM.

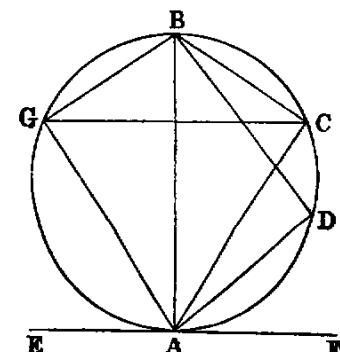
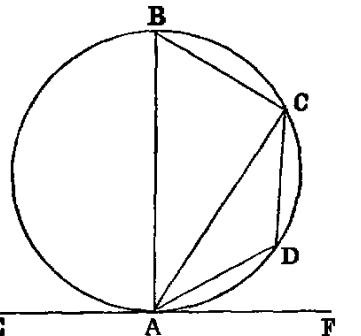
*If a line (EF) be a tangent to a circle, and from the point of contact (A) a chord (AC) be drawn cutting the circle, the angles made by this line with the tangent are respectively equal to the angles in the alternate segments of the circle.*

**Dem.**—(1). If the chord passes through the centre, the Proposition is evident, for the angles are right angles; but if not, from the point of contact  $A$  draw  $AB$  at right angles to the tangent. Join  $BC$ . Then because  $EF$  is a tangent to the circle, and  $AB$  is drawn from the point of contact perpendicular to  $EF$ ,  $AB$  passes through this centre [xix.]. Therefore the angle  $ACB$  is right [xxxI.]. Hence the sum of the two remaining angles  $ABC, CAB$  is one right angle; but the angle  $BAF$  is right (const.); therefore the sum of the angles  $ABC, BAC$  is equal to  $BAF$ . Reject  $BAC$ , which is common, and we get *the angle ABC equal to the angle FAC*.

(2). Take any point  $D$  in the arc  $AC$ . It is required to prove that the angle  $CAE$  is equal to  $CDA$ .

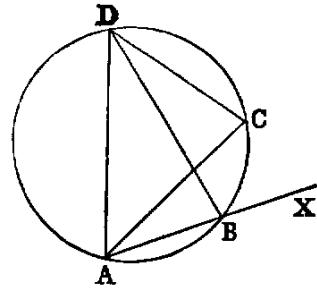
Since the quadrilateral  $ABCD$  is cyclic, the sum of the opposite angles  $ABC, CDA$  is two right angles [xxii.], and therefore equal to the sum of the angles  $FAC, CAE$ ; but the angles  $ABC, FAC$  are equal (1). Reject them, and we get *the angle CDA equal to CAE*.

*Or thus:* Take any point  $G$  in the semi-circle  $AGB$ . Join  $AG, GB, GC$ . Then the angle  $AGB = FAB$ , each being right, and  $CGB = CAB$  [xxi.]. Therefore the remaining angle  $AGC = FAC$ . Again, join  $BD, CD$ . The angle  $BDA = BAE$ , each being right, and  $CDB = CAB$  [xxi.]. Hence the angle  $CDA = CAE$ .—LARDNER.



*Or by the method of limits, see TOWNSEND'S Modern Geometry, vol. i., page 14.*

The angle  $BAC$  is equal to  $BDC$  [xxi.]. Now let the point  $B$  move until it becomes consecutive to  $A$ ; then  $AB$  will be a tangent, and  $BD$  will coincide with  $AD$ , and the angle  $BDC$  with  $ADC$ . Hence, if  $AX$  be a tangent at  $A$ ,  $AC$  any chord, the angle which the tangent makes with the chord is equal to the angle in the alternate segment.



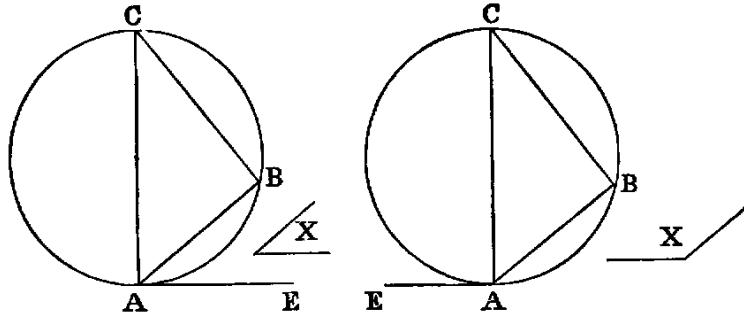
#### Exercises.

1. If two circles touch, any line drawn through the point of contact will cut off similar segments.
2. If two circles touch, and any two lines be drawn through the point of contact, cutting both circles again, the chord connecting their points of intersection with one circle is parallel to the chord connecting their points of intersection with the other circle.
3.  $ACB$  is an arc of a circle,  $CE$  a tangent at  $C$ , meeting the chord  $AB$  produced in  $E$ , and  $AD$  a perpendicular to  $AB$  in  $D$ : prove, if  $DE$  be bisected in  $C$ , that the arc  $AC = 2CB$ .
4. If two circles touch at a point  $A$ , and  $ABC$  be a chord through  $A$ , meeting the circles in  $B$  and  $C$ : prove that the tangents at  $B$  and  $C$  are parallel to each other, and that when one circle is within the other, the tangent at  $B$  meets the outer circle in two points equidistant from  $C$ .
5. If two circles touch externally, their common tangent at either side subtends a right angle at the point of contact, and its square is equal to the rectangle contained by their diameters.

#### PROP. XXXIII.—PROBLEM.

*On a given right line (AB) to describe a segment of a circle which shall contain an angle equal to a given rectilineal angle (X).*

**Sol.**—If  $X$  be a right angle, describe a semicircle on the given line, and the thing required is done; for the angle in a semicircle is a right angle.



If not, make with the given line  $AB$  the angle  $BAE$  equal to  $X$ . Erect  $AC$  at right angles to  $AE$ , and  $BC$  at right angles to  $AB$ . On  $AC$  as diameter describe a circle: it will be the circle required.

**Dem.**—The circle on  $AC$  as diameter passes through  $B$ , since the angle  $ABC$  is right [xxxI.] and touches  $AE$ , since the angle  $CAE$  is right [xvi.]. Therefore the angle  $BAE$  [xxxII.] is equal to the angle in the alternate segment; but the angle  $BAE$  is equal to the angle  $X$  (const.). *Therefore the angle  $X$  is equal to the angle in the segment described on  $AB$ .*

### Exercises.

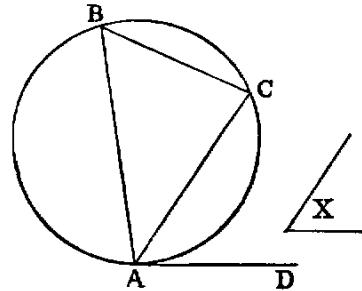
1. Construct a triangle, being given base, vertical angle, and any of the following data:—1. Perpendicular. 2. The sum or difference of the sides. 3. Sum or difference of the squares of the sides. 4. Side of the inscribed square on the base. 5. The median that bisects the base.
2. If lines be drawn from a fixed point to all the points of the circumference of a given circle, the locus of all their points of bisection is a circle.
3. Given the base and vertical angle of a triangle, find the locus of the middle point of the line joining the vertices of equilateral triangles described on the sides.
4. In the same case, find the loci of the angular points of a square described on one of the sides.

### PROP. XXXIV.—PROBLEM.

*To cut off from a given circle ( $ABC$ ) a segment which shall contain an angle equal to a given angle ( $X$ ).*

**Sol.**—Take any point  $A$  in the circumference. Draw the tangent  $AD$ , and make the angle  $DAC$  equal to the given angle  $X$ .  $AC$  will cut off the required segment.

**Dem.**—Take any point  $B$  in the alternate segment. Join  $BA, BC$ . Then the angle  $DAC$  is equal to  $ABC$  [xxxII.]; but  $DAC$  is equal to  $X$  (const.). *Therefore the angle  $ABC$  is equal to  $X$ .*



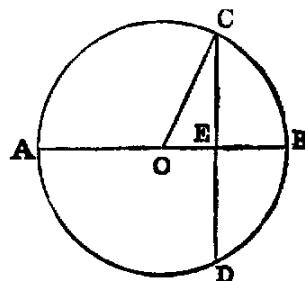
### PROP. XXXV.—THEOREM.

*If two chords ( $AB, CD$ ) of a circle intersect in a point ( $E$ ) within the circle, the rectangles ( $AE \cdot EB, CE \cdot ED$ ) contained by the segments are equal.*

**Dem.**—1. If the point of intersection be the centre, each rectangle is equal to the square of the radius. *Hence they are equal.*

2. Let one of the chords  $AB$  pass through the centre  $O$ , and cut the other chord  $CD$ , which does not pass through the centre, at right angles. Join  $OC$ . Now because  $AB$  passes through the centre, and cuts the other chord  $CD$ , which does not pass through the centre at right angles, it bisects it [III.].

Again, because  $AB$  is divided equally in  $O$  and unequally in  $E$ , the rectangle

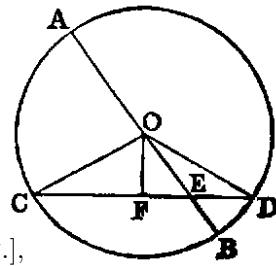


$AE \cdot EB$ , together with  $OE^2$ , is equal to  $OB^2$ —that is, to  $OC^2$  [II. v.]; but  $OC^2$  is equal to  $OE^2 + EC^2$  [I. XLVII.] Therefore

$$AE \cdot EB + OE^2 = OE^2 + EC^2.$$

Reject  $OE^2$ , which is common, and we have  $AE \cdot EB = EC^2$ ; but  $CE^2$  is equal to the rectangle  $CE \cdot ED$ , since  $CE$  is equal to  $ED$ . *Therefore the rectangle  $AE \cdot EB$  is equal to the rectangle  $CE \cdot ED$ .*

3. Let  $AB$  pass through the centre, and cut  $CD$ , which does not pass through the centre obliquely. Let  $O$  be the centre. Draw  $OF$  perpendicular to  $CD$  [I. XI.]. Join  $OC, OD$ . Then, since  $CD$  is cut at right angles by  $OF$ , which passes through the centre, it is bisected in  $F$  [III.], and divided unequally in  $E$ . Hence



$$CE \cdot ED + FE^2 = FD^2 \text{ [II. v.],}$$

and

$$OF^2 = OF^2.$$

Hence, adding, since  $FE^2 + OF^2 = OE^2$  [I. XLVII.], and  $FD^2 + OF^2 = OD^2$ , we get

$$CE \cdot ED + OE^2 = OD^2 \text{ or } OB^2.$$

Again, since  $AB$  is bisected in  $O$  and divided unequally in  $E$ ,

$$AE \cdot EB + OE^2 = OB^2 \text{ [II. v.].}$$

Therefore

$$CE \cdot ED + OE^2 = AE \cdot EB + OE^2.$$

Hence

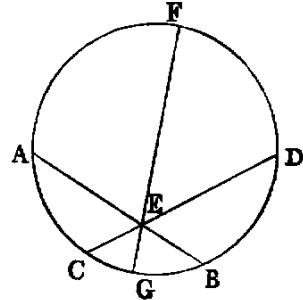
$$CE \cdot ED = AE \cdot EB.$$

4. Let neither chord pass through the centre. Through the point  $E$ , where they intersect, draw the diameter  $FG$ . Then by 3, the rectangle  $FE \cdot EG$  is equal to the rectangle  $AE \cdot EB$ , and also to the rectangle  $CE \cdot ED$ . *Hence the rectangle  $AE \cdot EB$  is equal to the rectangle  $CE \cdot ED$ .*

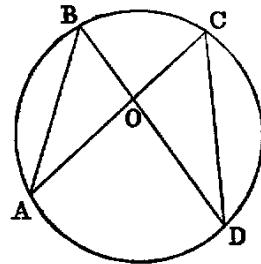
*Cor. 1.*—If a chord of a circle be divided in any point within the circle, the rectangle contained by its segments is equal to the difference between the square of the radius and the square of the line drawn from the centre to the point of section.

*Cor. 2.*—If the rectangle contained by the segments of one of two intersecting lines be equal to the rectangle contained by the segments of the other, the four extremities are concyclic.

*Cor. 3.*—*If two triangles be equiangular, the rectangle contained by the non-corresponding sides about any two equal angles are equal.*



Let  $ABO$ ,  $DCO$  be the equiangular triangles, and let them be placed so that the equal angles at  $O$  may be vertically opposite, and that the non-corresponding sides  $AO$ ,  $CO$  may be in one line; then the non-corresponding sides  $BO$ ,  $OD$  shall be in one line. Now, since the angle  $ABD$  is equal to  $ACD$ , the points  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ ,  $D$  are concyclic [xxi., Cor. 1]. Hence the rectangle  $AO \cdot OC$  is equal to the rectangle  $BO \cdot OD$  [xxxv.].



### Exercises.

1. In any triangle, the rectangle contained by two sides is equal to the rectangle contained by the perpendicular on the third side and the diameter of the circumscribed circle.

**Def.**—*The supplement of an arc is the difference between it and a semicircle.*

2. The rectangle contained by the chord of an arc and the chord of its supplement is equal to the rectangle contained by the radius and the chord of twice the supplement.

3. If the base of a triangle be given, and the sum of the sides, the rectangle contained by the perpendiculars from the extremities of the base on the external bisector of the vertical angle is given.

4. If the base and the difference of the sides be given, the rectangle contained by the perpendiculars from the extremities of the base on the internal bisector is given.

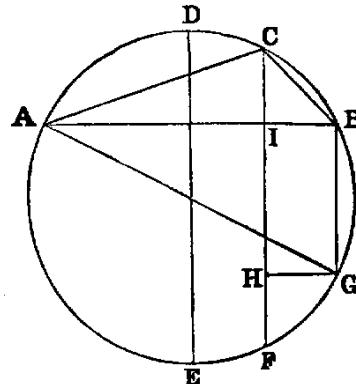
5. Through one of the points of intersection of two circles draw a secant, so that the rectangle contained by the intercepted chords may be given, or a maximum.

6. *If the sum of two arcs,  $AC$ ,  $CB$  of a circle be less than a semicircle, the rectangle  $AC \cdot CB$  contained by their chords is equal to the rectangle contained by the radius, and the excess of the chord of the supplement of their difference above the chord of the supplement of their sum.*—CATALAN.

**Dem.**—Draw  $DE$ , the diameter which is perpendicular to  $AB$ , and draw the chords  $CF$ ,  $BG$  parallel to  $DE$ . Now it is evident that the difference between the arcs  $AC$ ,  $CB$  is equal to  $2CD$ , and therefore  $= CD + EF$ . Hence the arc  $CBF$  is the supplement of the difference, and  $CF$  is the chord of that supplement. Again, since the angle  $ABG$  is right, the arc  $ABG$  is a semicircle. Hence  $BG$  is the supplement of the sum of the arcs  $AC$ ,  $CB$ ; therefore the line  $BG$  is the chord of the supplement of the sum. Now (Ex. 1), the rectangle  $AC \cdot CB$  is equal to the rectangle contained by the diameter and  $CI$ , and therefore equal to the rectangle contained by the radius and  $2CI$ ; but the difference between  $CF$  and  $BG$  is evidently equal to  $2CI$ . Hence the rectangle  $AC \cdot CB$  is equal to the rectangle contained by the radius and the difference between the chords  $CF$ ,  $BG$ .

7. If we join  $AF$ ,  $BF$  we find, as before, the rectangle  $AF \cdot FB$  equal to the rectangle contained by the radius and  $2FI$ —that is, equal to the rectangle contained by the radius and the sum of  $CF$  and  $BG$ . Hence—*If the sum of two arcs of a circle be greater than a semicircle, the rectangle contained by their chords is equal to the rectangle contained by the radius, and the sum of the chords of the supplements of their sum and their difference.*

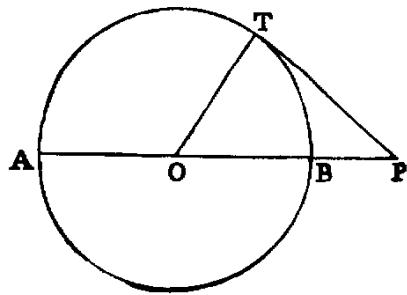
8. Through a given point draw a transversal cutting two lines given in position, so that the rectangle contained by the segments intercepted between it and the line may be given.



PROP. XXXVI.—THEOREM.

*If from any point (P) without a circle two lines be drawn to it, one of which (PT) is a tangent, and the other (PA) a secant, the rectangle (AP, BP) contained by the segments of the secant is equal to the square of the tangent.*

**Dem.**—1. Let  $PA$  pass through the centre  $O$ . Join  $OT$ . Then because  $AB$  is bisected in  $O$  and divided externally in  $P$ , the rectangle  $AP \cdot BP + OB^2$  is equal to  $OP^2$  [II. vi.]. But since  $PT$  is a tangent, and  $OT$  drawn from the centre to the point of contact, the angle  $OTP$  is right [XVIII.]. Hence  $OT^2 + PT^2$  is equal to  $OP^2$ .

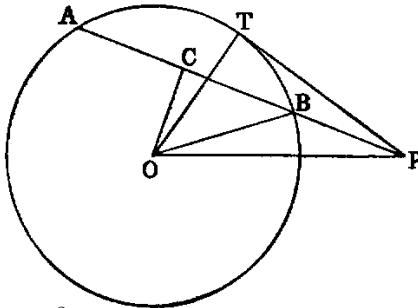


$$\text{Therefore } AP \cdot BP + OB^2 = OT^2 + PT^2;$$

$$\text{but } OB^2 = OT^2.$$

$$\text{Hence the rectangle } AP \cdot BP = PT^2.$$

2. If  $AB$  does not pass through the centre  $O$ , let fall the perpendicular  $OC$  on  $AB$ . Join  $OT$ ,  $OB$ ,  $OP$ . Then because  $OC$ , a line through the centre, cuts  $AB$ , which does not pass through the centre at right angles, it bisects it [III.]. Hence, since  $AB$  is bisected in  $C$  and divided externally in  $P$ , the rectangle



$$AP \cdot BP + CB^2 = CP^2 \text{ [II. vi.];}$$

$$\text{and } OC^2 = OC^2.$$

Hence, adding, since  $CB^2 + OC^2 = OB^2$  [I. XLVII.], and  $CP^2 + OC^2 = OP^2$ , we get

$$\text{rectangle } AP \cdot BP + OB^2 = OP^2;$$

$$\text{but } OT^2 + PT^2 = OP^2 \text{ [I. XLVII.].}$$

$$\text{Therefore } AP \cdot BP + OB^2 = OT^2 + PT^2;$$

and rejecting the equals  $OB^2$  and  $OT^2$ , we have the rectangle

$$AP \cdot BP = PT^2.$$

The two Propositions XXXV., XXXVI., may be included in one enunciation, as follows:—*The rectangle  $AP \cdot BP$  contained by the segments of any chord of a given circle passing through a fixed point  $P$ , either within or without the circle, is constant.* For let  $O$  be the centre: join

$OA, OB, OP$ . Then  $OAB$  is an isosceles triangle, and  $OP$  is a line drawn from its vertex to a point  $P$  in the base, or base produced. Then the rectangle  $AP \cdot BP$  is equal to the difference of the squares of  $OB$  and  $OP$ , and is therefore constant.

*Cor. 1.*—If two lines  $AB, CD$  produced meet in  $P$ , and if the rectangle  $AP \cdot BP = CP \cdot DP$ , the points  $A, B, C, D$  are concyclic (compare XXXV., *Cor. 2*).

*Cor. 2.*—Tangents to two circles from any point in their common chord are equal (compare XVII., Ex. 6).

*Cor. 3.*—The common chords of any three intersecting circles are concurrent (compare XVII., Ex. 7).

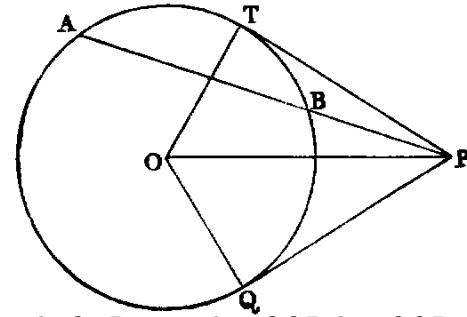
#### Exercise.

If from the vertex  $A$  of a  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $AD$  be drawn, meeting  $CB$  produced in  $D$ , and making the angle  $BAD = ACB$ , prove  $DB \cdot DC = DA^2$ .

#### PROP. XXXVII.—THEOREM.

*If the rectangle ( $AP \cdot BP$ ) contained by the segments of a secant, drawn from any point (P) without a circle, be equal to the square of a line (PT) drawn from the same point to meet the circle, the line which meets the circle is a tangent.*

**Dem.**—From  $P$  draw  $PQ$  touching the circle [XVII.]. Let  $O$  be the centre. Join  $OP, OQ, OT$ . Now the rectangle  $AP \cdot BP$  is equal to the square on  $PT$  (hyp.), and equal to the square on  $PQ$  [XXXVI.]. Hence  $PT^2$  is equal to  $PQ^2$ , and therefore  $PT$  is equal to  $PQ$ . Again, the triangles  $OTP, OQP$  have the side  $OT$  equal  $OQ$ ,  $TP$  equal  $QP$ , and the base  $OP$  common; hence [I. VIII.] the angle  $OTP$  is equal to  $OQP$ ; but  $OQP$  is a right angle, since  $PQ$  is a tangent [XVIII.]; hence  $OTP$  is right, and therefore [XVI.]  $PT$  is a tangent.



#### Exercises.

1. Describe a circle passing through two given points, and fulfilling either of the following conditions: 1, touching a given line; 2, touching a given circle.
2. Describe a circle through a given point, and touching two given lines; or touching a given file and a given circle.
3. Describe a circle passing through a given point, having its centre on a given line and touching a given circle.
4. Describe a circle through two given points, and intercepting a given arc on a given circle.
5.  $A, B, C, D$  are four collinear points, and  $EF$  is a common tangent to the circles described upon  $AB, CD$  as diameters: prove that the triangles  $AEB, CFD$  are equiangular.
6. The diameter of the circle inscribed in a right-angled triangle is equal to half the sum of the diameters of the circles touching the hypotenuse, the perpendicular from the right angle of the hypotenuse, and the circle described about the right-angled triangle.

### Questions for Examination on Book III.

1. What is the subject-matter of Book III.?
2. Define equal circles.
3. What is the difference between a chord and a secant?
4. When does a secant become a tangent?
5. What is the difference between a segment of a circle and a sector?
6. What is meant by an angle in a segment?
7. If an arc of a circle be one-sixth of the whole circumference, what is the magnitude of the angle in it?
8. What are linear segments?
9. What is meant by an angle standing on a segment?
10. What are concyclic points?
11. What is a cyclic quadrilateral?
12. How many intersections can a line and a circle have?
13. What does the line become when the points of intersection become consecutive?
14. How many points of intersection can two circles have?
15. What is the reason that if two circles touch they cannot have any other common point?
16. Give one enunciation that will include Propositions XI., XII. of Book III.
17. What Proposition is this a limiting case of?
18. Explain the extended meaning of the word angle.
19. What is Euclid's limit of an angle?
20. State the relations between Propositions XVI., XVIII., XIX.
21. What Propositions are these limiting cases of?
22. How many common tangents can two circles have?
23. What is the magnitude of the rectangle of the segments of a chord drawn through a point 3.65 metres distant from the centre of a circle whose radius is 4.25 metres?
24. The radii of two circles are 4.25 and 1.75 feet respectively, and the distance between their centres 6.5 feet; find the lengths of their direct and their transverse common tangents.
25. If a point be  $h$  feet outside the circumference of a circle whose diameter is 7920 miles, prove that the length of the tangent drawn from it to the circle is  $\sqrt{\frac{3h}{2}}$  miles.
26. Two parallel chords of a circle are 12 perches and 16 perches respectively, and their distance asunder is 2 perches; find the length of the diameter.
27. What is the locus of the centres of all circles touching a given circle in a given point?
28. What is the condition that must be fulfilled that four points may be concyclic?
29. If the angle in a segment of a circle be a right angle and a-half, what part of the whole circumference is it?
30. Mention the converse Propositions of Book III. which are proved directly.
31. What is the locus of the middle points of equal chords in a circle?
32. The radii of two circles are 6 and 8, and the distance between their centres 10; find the length of their common chord.
33. If a figure of any even number of sides be inscribed in a circle, prove that the sum of one set of alternate angles is equal to the sum of the remaining angles.

### Exercises on Book III.

1. If two chords of a circle intersect at right angles, the sum of the squares on their segments is equal to the square on the diameter.
2. If a chord of a given circle subtend a right angle at a fixed point, the rectangle of the perpendiculars on it from the fixed point and from the centre of the given circle is constant. Also the sum of the squares of perpendiculars on it from two other fixed points (which may be found) is constant.
3. If through either of the points of intersection of two equal circles any line be drawn meeting them again in two points, these points are equally distant from the other intersection of the circles.

4. Draw a tangent to a given circle so that the triangle formed by it and two fixed tangents to the circle shall be—1, a maximum; 2, a minimum.
5. If through the points of intersection  $A, B$  of two circles any two lines  $ACD, BEF$  be drawn parallel to each other, and meeting the circles again in  $C, D, E, F$ ; then  $CD = EF$ .
6. In every triangle the bisector of the greatest angle is the least of the three bisectors of the angles.
7. The circles whose diameters are the four sides of any cyclic quadrilateral intersect again in four concyclic points.
8. The four angular points of a cyclic quadrilateral determine four triangles whose orthocentres (the intersections of their perpendiculars) form an equal quadrilateral.
9. If through one of the points of intersection of two circles we draw two common chords, the lines joining the extremities of these chords make a given angle with each other.
10. The square on the perpendicular from any point in the circumference of a circle, on the chord of contact of two tangents, is equal to the rectangle of the perpendiculars from the same point on the tangents.
11. Find a point in the circumference of a given circle, the sum of the squares on whose distances from two given points may be a maximum or a minimum.
12. Four circles are described on the sides of a quadrilateral as diameters. The common chord of any two on adjacent sides is parallel to the common chord of the remaining two.
13. The rectangle contained by the perpendiculars from any point in a circle, on the diagonals of an inscribed quadrilateral, is equal to the rectangle contained by the perpendiculars from the same point on either pair of opposite sides.
14. The rectangle contained by the sides of a triangle is greater than the square on the internal bisector of the vertical angle, by the rectangle contained by the segments of the base.
15. If through  $A$ , one of the points of intersection of two circles, we draw any line  $ABC$ , cutting the circles again in  $B$  and  $C$ , the tangents at  $B$  and  $C$  intersect at a given angle.
16. If a chord of a given circle pass through a given point, the locus of the intersection of tangents at its extremities is a right line.
17. The rectangle contained by the distances of the point where the internal bisector of the vertical angle meets the base, and the point where the perpendicular from the vertex meets it from the middle point of the base, is equal to the square on half the difference of the sides.
18. State and prove the Proposition analogous to 17 for the external bisector of the vertical angle.
19. The square on the external diagonal of a cyclic quadrilateral is equal to the sum of the squares on the tangents from its extremities to the circumscribed circle.
20. If a variable circle touch a given circle and a given line, the chord of contact passes through a given point.
21. If  $A, B, C$  be three points in the circumference of a circle, and  $D, E$  the middle points of the arcs  $AB, AC$ ; then if the line  $DE$  intersect the chords  $AB, AC$  in the points  $F, G, AF$  is equal to  $AG$ .
22. Given two circles,  $O, O'$ ; then if any secant cut  $O$  in the points  $B, C$ , and  $O'$  in the points  $B', C'$ , and another secant cuts them in the points  $D, E; D', E'$  respectively; the four chords  $BD, CE, B'D', C'E'$  form a cyclic quadrilateral.
23. If a cyclic quadrilateral be such that a circle can be inscribed in it, the lines joining the points of contact are perpendicular to each other.
24. If through the point of intersection of the diagonals of a cyclic quadrilateral the minimum chord be drawn, that point will bisect the part of the chord between the opposite sides of the quadrilateral.
25. Given the base of a triangle, the vertical angle, and either the internal or the external bisector at the vertical angle; construct it.
26. If through the middle point  $A$  of a given arc  $BAC$  we draw any chord  $AD$ , cutting  $BC$  in  $E$ , the rectangle  $AD \cdot AE$  is constant.
27. The four circles circumscribing the four triangles formed by any four lines pass through a common point.
28. If  $X, Y, Z$  be any three points on the three sides of a triangle  $ABC$ , the three circles about the triangles  $YAZ, ZBX, XCY$  pass through a common point.

29. If the position of the common point in the last question be given, the three angles of the triangle  $XYZ$  are given, and conversely.
30. Place a given triangle so that its three sides shall pass through three given points.
31. Place a given triangle so that its three vertices shall lie on three given lines.
32. Construct the greatest triangle equiangular to a given one whose sides shall pass through three given points.
33. Construct the least triangle equiangular to a given one whose vertices shall lie on three given lines.
34. Construct the greatest triangle equiangular to a given one whose sides shall touch three given circles.
35. If two sides of a given triangle pass through fixed points, the third touches a fixed circle.
36. If two sides of a given triangle touch fixed circles, the third touches a fixed circle.
37. Construct an equilateral triangle having its vertex at a given point, and the extremities of its base on a given circle.
38. Construct an equilateral triangle having its vertex at a given point, and the extremities of its base on two given circles.
39. Place a given triangle so that its three sides shall touch three given circles.
40. Circumscribe a square about a given quadrilateral.
41. Inscribe a square in a given quadrilateral.
42. Describe circles—(1) orthogonal (cutting at right angles) to a given circle and passing through two given points; (2) orthogonal to two others, and passing through a given point; (3) orthogonal to three others.
43. If from the extremities of a diameter  $AB$  of a semicircle two chords  $AD, BE$  be drawn, meeting in  $C, AC \cdot AD + BC \cdot BE = AB^2$ .
44. If  $ABCD$  be a cyclic quadrilateral, and if we describe any circle passing through the points  $A$  and  $B$ , another through  $B$  and  $C$ , a third through  $C$  and  $D$ , and a fourth through  $D$  and  $A$ ; these circles intersect successively in four other points  $E, F, G, H$ , forming another cyclic quadrilateral.
45. If  $ABC$  be an equilateral triangle, what is the locus of the point  $M$ , if  $MA = MB + MC$ ?
46. In a triangle, given the sum or the difference of two sides and the angle formed by these sides both in magnitude and position, the locus of the centre of the circumscribed circle is a right line.
47. Describe a circle—(1) through two given points which shall bisect the circumference of a given circle; (2) through one given point which shall bisect the circumference of two given circles.
48. Find the locus of the centre of a circle which bisects the circumferences of two given circles.
49. Describe a circle which shall bisect the circumferences of three given circles.
50.  $AB$  is a diameter of a circle;  $AC, AD$  are two chords meeting the tangent at  $B$  in the points  $E, F$  respectively: prove that the points  $C, D, E, F$  are concyclic.
51.  $CD$  is a perpendicular from any point  $C$  in a semicircle on the diameter  $AB$ ;  $EFG$  is a circle touching  $DB$  in  $E$ ,  $CD$  in  $F$ , and the semicircle in  $G$ ; prove—(1) that the points  $A, F, G$  are collinear; (2) that  $AC = AE$ .
52. Being given an obtuse-angled triangle, draw from the obtuse angle to the opposite side a line whose square shall be equal to the rectangle contained by the segments into which it divides the opposite side.
53.  $O$  is a point outside a circle whose centre is  $E$ ; two perpendicular lines passing through  $O$  intercept chords  $AB, CD$  on the circle; then  $AB^2 + CD^2 + 4OE^2 = 8R^2$ .
54. The sum of the squares on the sides of a triangle is equal to twice the sum of the rectangles contained by each perpendicular and the portion of it comprised between the corresponding vertex and the orthocentre; also equal to  $12R^2$  minus the sum of the squares of the distances of the orthocentre from the vertices.
55. If two circles touch in  $C$ , and if  $D$  be any point outside the circles at which their radii through  $C$  subtend equal angles, if  $DE, DF$  be tangent from  $D$ ,  $DE \cdot DF = DC^2$ .

## BOOK IV.

### INSCRIPTION AND CIRCUMSCRIPTION OF TRIANGLES AND OF REGULAR POLYGONS IN AND ABOUT CIRCLES

#### DEFINITIONS.

I. If two rectilineal figures be so related that the angular points of one lie on the sides of the other—1, the former is said to be inscribed in the latter; 2, the latter is said to be described about the former.

II. A rectilineal figure is said to be inscribed in a circle when its angular points are on the circumference. *Reciprocally*, a rectilineal figure is said to be circumscribed to a circle when each side touches the circle.

III. A circle is said to be inscribed in a rectilineal figure when it touches each side of the figure. *Reciprocally*, a circle is said to be circumscribed to a rectilineal figure when it passes through each angular point of the figure.

IV. A rectilineal figure which is both equilateral and equiangular is said to be regular.

*Observation.*—The following summary of the contents of the Fourth Book will assist the student in remembering it:—

1. It contains sixteen Propositions, of which four relate to triangles, four to squares, four to pentagons, and four miscellaneous Propositions.

2. Of the four Propositions occupied with triangles—

- (α) One is to inscribe a triangle in a circle.
- (β) Its reciprocal, to describe a triangle about a circle.
- (γ) To inscribe a circle in a triangle.
- (δ) Its reciprocal, to describe a circle about a triangle.

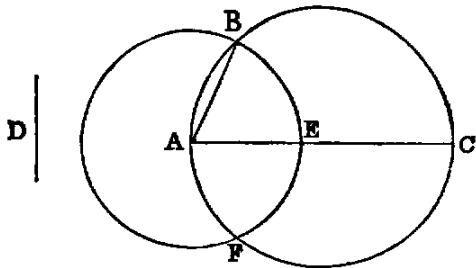
3. If we substitute in (α), (β), (γ), (δ) squares for triangles, and pentagons for triangles, we have the problems for squares and pentagons respectively.

4. Every Proposition in the fourth Book is a problem.

#### PROP. I.—PROBLEM.

*In a given circle (ABC) to place a chord equal to a given line (D) not greater than the diameter.*

**Sol.**—Draw any diameter  $AC$  of the circle; then, if  $AC$  be equal to  $D$ , the thing required is done; if not, from  $AC$  cut off the part  $AE$  equal to  $D$  [I. III.]; and with  $A$  as centre and  $AE$  as radius, describe the circle  $EBF$ , cutting the circle  $ABC$  in the points  $B, F$ . Join  $AB$ . Then  $AB$  is the chord required.



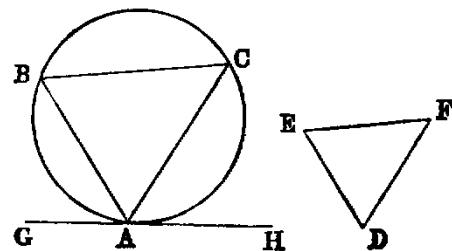
**Dem.**—Because  $A$  is the centre of the circle  $EBF$ ,  $AB$  is equal to  $AE$  [I. Def. xxxii.]; but  $AE$  is equal to  $D$  (const.); therefore  $AB$  is equal to  $D$ .

#### PROP. II.—PROBLEM.

*In a given circle (ABC) to inscribe a triangle equiangular to a given triangle (DEF).*

**Sol.**—Take any point  $A$  in the circumference, and at it draw the tangent  $GH$ ; then make the angle  $HAC$  equal to  $E$ , and  $GAB$  equal to  $F$  [I. xxiii.] Join  $BC$ .  $ABC$  is a triangle fulfilling the required conditions.

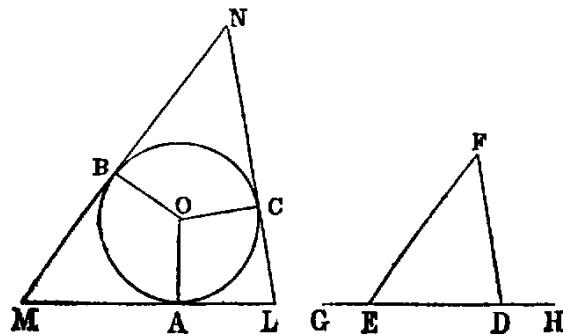
**Dem.**—The angle  $E$  is equal to  $HAC$  (const.), and  $HAC$  is equal to the angle  $ABC$  in the alternate segment [III. xxxii.]. Hence the angle  $E$  is equal to  $ABC$ . In like manner the angle  $F$  is equal to  $ACB$ . Therefore [I. xxxii.] the remaining angle  $D$  is equal to  $BAC$ . Hence the triangle  $ABC$  inscribed in the given circle is equiangular to  $DEF$ .



#### PROP. III.—PROBLEM.

*About a given circle (ABC) to describe a triangle equiangular to a given triangle (DEF).*

**Sol.**—Produce any side  $DE$  of the given triangle both ways to  $G$  and  $H$ , and from the centre  $O$  of the circle draw any radius  $OA$ ; make the angle  $AOB$  equal to  $GEF$  [I. xxiii.], and the angle  $AOC$  equal to  $HDF$ . At the points  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$  draw the tangents  $LM$ ,  $MN$ ,  $NL$  to the given circle.  $LMN$  is a triangle fulfilling the required conditions.



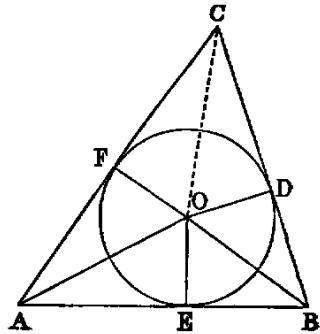
**Dem.**—Because  $AM$  touches the circle at  $A$ , the angle  $OAM$  is right. In like manner, the angle  $MBO$  is right; but the sum of the four angles of the quadrilateral  $OAMB$  is equal to four right angles. Therefore the sum of the two remaining angles  $AOB$ ,  $AMB$  is two right angles; and [I. XIII.] the sum of the two angles  $GEF$ ,  $FED$  is two right angles. Therefore the sum of  $AOB$ ,  $AMB$  is equal to the sum of  $GEF$ ,  $FED$ ; but  $AOB$  is equal to  $GEF$  (const.). Hence  $AMB$  is equal to  $FED$ . In like manner,  $ALC$  is equal to  $EDF$ ; therefore [I. XXXII.] the remaining angle  $BNC$  is equal to  $DFE$ . *Hence the triangle  $LMN$  is equiangular to  $DEF$ .*

#### PROP. IV.—PROBLEM.

*To inscribe a circle in a given triangle ( $ABC$ ).*

**Sol.**—Bisect any two angles  $A$ ,  $B$  of the given triangle by the lines  $AO$ ,  $BO$ ; then  $O$ , their point of intersection, is the centre of the required circle.

**Dem.**—From  $O$  let fall the perpendiculars  $OD$ ,  $OE$ ,  $OF$  on the sides of the triangle. Now, in the triangles  $OAE$ ,  $OAF$  the angle  $OAE$  is equal to  $OAF$  (const.), and the angle  $AEO$  equal to  $AFO$ , because each is right, and the side  $OA$  common. Hence [I. XXVI.] the side  $OE$  is equal to  $OF$ . In like manner  $OD$  is equal to  $OF$ ; therefore the three lines  $OD$ ,  $OE$ ,  $OF$  are all equal. And the circle described with  $O$  as centre and  $OD$  as radius will pass through the points  $E$ ,  $F$ ; and since the angles  $D$ ,  $E$ ,  $F$  are right, it will [III. XVI.] touch the three sides of the triangle  $ABC$ ; and therefore the circle  $DEF$  is inscribed in the triangle  $ABC$ .



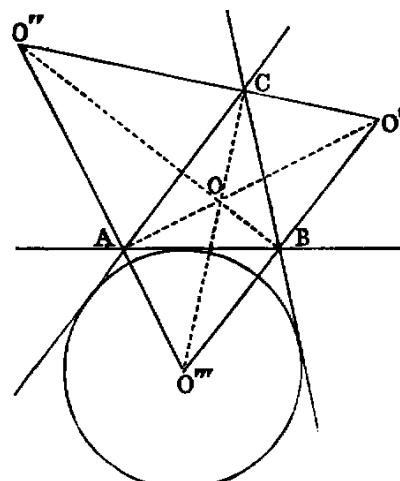
#### Exercises.

1. If the points  $O$ ,  $C$  be joined, the angle  $C$  is bisected. Hence “the bisectors of the angles of a triangle are concurrent” (compare I. XXVI., Ex. 7).

2. If the sides  $BC$ ,  $CA$ ,  $AB$  of the triangle  $ABC$  be denoted by  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$ , and half their sum by  $s$ , the distances of the vertices  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$  of the triangle from the points of contact of the inscribed circle are respectively  $s - a$ ,  $s - b$ ,  $s - c$ .

3. If the external angles of the triangle  $ABC$  be bisected as in the annexed diagram, the three angular points  $O'$ ,  $O''$ ,  $O'''$ , of the triangle formed by the three bisectors will be the centres of three circles, each touching one side externally, and the other two produced. These three circles are called the *escribed* circles of the triangle  $ABC$ .

4. The distances of the vertices  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$  from the points of contact of the escribed circle which touches  $AB$  externally are  $s - b$ ,  $s - a$ ,  $s$ .



5. The centre of the inscribed circle, the centre of each escribed circle, and two of the angular points of the triangle, are concyclic. Also any two of the escribed centres are concyclic with the corresponding two of the angular points of the triangle.

6. Of the four points  $O, O', O'', O'''$ , any one is the orthocentre of the triangle formed by the remaining three.

7. The three triangles  $BCO', CAO'', ABO'''$  are equiangular.

8. The rectangle  $CO \cdot CO''' = ab; AO \cdot AO' = bc; BO \cdot BO'' = ca$ .

9. Since the whole triangle  $ABC$  is made up of the three triangles  $AOB, BOC, COA$ , we see that the rectangle contained by the sum of the three sides, and the radius of the inscribed circle, is equal to twice the area of the triangle. Hence, if  $r$  denote the radius of the inscribed circle,  $rs = \text{area of the triangle}$ .

10. If  $r'$  denote the radius of the escribed circle which touches the side  $a$  externally, it may be shown in like manner that  $r'(s-a) = \text{area of the triangle}$ .

11.  $rr' = s - b \cdot s - c$ .

12. Square of area  $= s \cdot s - a \cdot s - b \cdot s - c$ .

13. Square of area  $= r \cdot r' \cdot r'' \cdot r'''$ .

14. If the triangle  $ABC$  be right-angled, having the angle  $C$  right,

$$r = s - c; r' = s - b; r'' = s - a; r''' = s.$$

15. Given the base of a triangle, the vertical angle, and the radius of the inscribed, or any of the escribed circles: construct it.

#### PROP. V.—PROBLEM.

*To describe a circle about a given triangle ( $ABC$ ).*

**Sol.**—Bisect any two sides  $BC, AC$  in the points  $D, E$ . Erect  $DO, EO$  at right angles to  $BC, CA$ ; then  $O$ , the point of intersection of the perpendiculars, is the centre of the required circle.

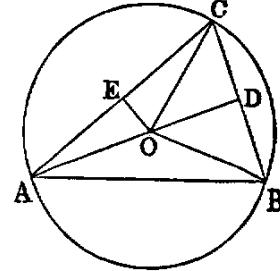
**Dem.**—Join  $OA, OB, OC$ . The triangles  $BDO, CDO$  have the side  $BD$  equal  $CD$  (const.), and  $DO$  common, and the angle  $BDO$  equal to the angle  $CDO$ , because each is right. Hence [I. IV.]  $BO$  is equal to  $OC$ . In like manner  $AO$  is equal to  $OC$ . Therefore the three lines  $AO, BO, CO$  are equal, and the circle described with  $O$  as centre, and  $OA$  as radius, will pass through the points  $A, B, C$ , and be described about the triangle  $ABC$ .

**Cor.** 1.—Since the perpendicular from  $O$  on  $AB$  bisects it [III. III.], we see that the perpendiculars at the middle points of the sides of a triangle are concurrent.

**DEF.**—The circle  $ABC$  is called the circumcircle, its radius the circumradius, and its centre the circumcentre of the triangle.

#### Exercises.

- The three perpendiculars of a triangle ( $ABC$ ) are concurrent.



**Dem.**—Describe a circle about the triangle. Let fall the perpendicular  $CF$ . Produce  $CF$  to meet the circle in  $G$ . Make  $FO = FG$ . Join  $AG, AO$ . Produce  $AO$  to meet  $BC$  in  $D$ . Then the triangles  $GFA, OFA$  have the sides  $GF, FA$  in one equal to the sides  $OF, FA$  in the other, and the contained angles equal. Hence [I. iv.] the angle  $GAF$  equal  $OAF$ ; but  $GAF = GCB$  [III. xxi.]; hence  $OAF = OCD$ , and  $FOA = DOC$ ; hence  $OFA = ODC$ ; but  $OFA$  is right, hence  $ODC$  is right. In like manner, if  $BO$  be joined to meet  $AC$  in  $E$ ,  $BE$  will be perpendicular to  $AC$ . Hence the three perpendiculars pass through  $O$ , and are concurrent. This Proposition may be proved simply as follows:—

Draw parallels to the sides of the original triangle  $ABC$  through its vertices, forming a new triangle  $A'B'C'$  described about  $ABC$ ; then the three perpendiculars at the middle points of the sides of  $A'B'C'$  are concurrent [v. Cor. 1], and these are evidently the perpendiculars from the vertices on the opposite sides of the triangle  $ABC$  (compare Ex. 16, Book I.).

**Def.**—The point  $O$  is called the orthocentre of the triangle  $ABC$ .

2. The three rectangles  $OA \cdot OP$ ,  $OB \cdot OQ$ ,  $OC \cdot OR$  are equal.

**Def.**—The circle round  $O$  as centre, the square of whose radius is equal  $OA \cdot OP = OB \cdot OQ = OC \cdot OR$ , is called the polar circle of the triangle  $ABC$ .

**Observation.**—If the orthocentre of the triangle  $ABC$  be within the triangle, the rectangles  $OA \cdot OP$ ,  $OB \cdot OQ$ ,  $OC \cdot OR$  are negative, because the lines  $OA \cdot OP$ , &c., are measured in opposite directions, and have contrary signs; hence the polar circle is imaginary; but it is real when the point  $O$  is without the triangle—that is, when the triangle has an obtuse angle.

3. If the perpendiculars of a triangle be produced to meet the circumscribed circle, the intercepts between the orthocentre and the circle are bisected by the sides of the triangle.

4. The point of bisection ( $I$ ) of the line ( $OP$ ) joining the orthocentre ( $O$ ) to the circumference ( $P$ ) of any triangle is equally distant from the feet of the perpendiculars, from the middle points of the sides, and from the middle points of the distances of the vertices from the orthocentre.

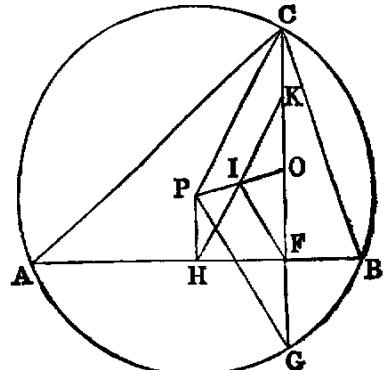
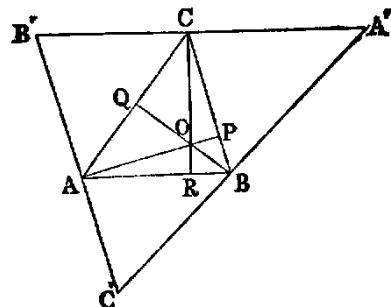
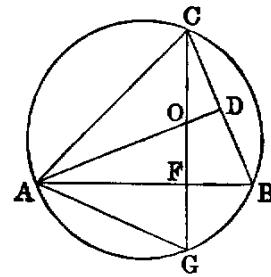
**Dem.**—Draw the perpendicular  $PH$ ; then, since  $OF, PH$  are perpendiculars on  $AB$ , and  $OP$  is bisected in  $I$ , it is easy to see that  $IH = IF$ . Again, since  $OP, OG$  are bisected in  $I$ ,  $F$ ;  $IF = \frac{1}{2}PG$ —that is,  $IF = \frac{1}{2}$  the radius. Hence the distance of  $I$  from the foot of each perpendicular, and from the middle point of each side, is  $= \frac{1}{2}$  the radius. In like manner, if  $OC$  be bisected in  $K$ , then  $IK = \frac{1}{2}$  the radius. Hence we have the following theorem:—*The nine points made up of the feet of the perpendiculars, the middle points of the sides, and the middle points of the lines from the vertices to the orthocentre, are concyclic.*

**Def.**—The circle through these nine points is called the “nine points circle” of the triangle.

5. The circumcircle of a triangle is the “nine points circle” of each of the four triangles formed by joining the centres of the inscribed and escribed circles.

6. The distances between the vertices of a triangle and its orthocentre are respectively the doubles of the perpendiculars from the circumcentre on the sides.

7. The radius of the “nine points circle” of a triangle is equal to half its circumradius.



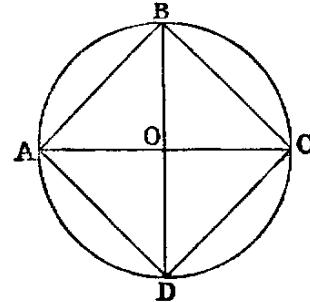
PROP. VI.—PROBLEM.

*In a given circle (ABCD) to inscribe a square.*

**Sol.**—Draw any two diameters  $AC$ ,  $BD$  at right angles to each other. Join  $AB$ ,  $BC$ ,  $CD$ ,  $DA$ .  $ABCD$  is a square.

**Dem.**—Let  $O$  be the centre. Then the four angles at  $O$ , being right angles, are equal. Hence the arcs on which they stand are equal [III. xxvi.], and hence the four chords are equal [III. xxix.]. Therefore the figure  $ABCD$  is equilateral.

Again, because  $AC$  is a diameter, the angle  $ABC$  is right [III. xxxi.]. In like manner the remaining angles are right. *Hence ABCD is a square.*



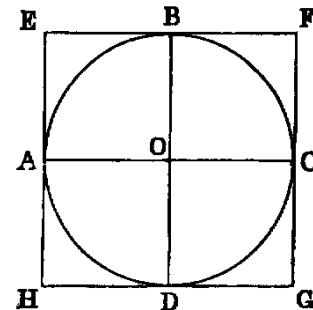
PROP. VII.—PROBLEM.

*About a given circle (ABCD) to describe a square.*

**Sol.**—Through the centre  $O$  draw any two diameters at right angles to each other, and draw at the points  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ ,  $D$  the lines  $HE$ ,  $EF$ ,  $FG$ ,  $GH$  touching the circle.  $EFGH$  is a square.

**Dem.**—Because  $AE$  touches the circle at  $A$ , the angle  $EAO$  is right [III. xviii.], and therefore equal to  $BOC$ , which is right (const.). Hence  $AE$  is parallel to  $OB$ . In like manner  $EB$  is parallel to  $AO$ ; and since  $AO$  is equal to  $OB$ , the figure  $AOBE$  is a lozenge, and the angle  $AOB$  is right; hence  $AOBE$  is a square. In like manner each of the figures  $BC$ ,  $CD$ ,  $DA$  is a square. *Hence the whole figure is a square.*

**Cor.**—The circumscribed square is double of the inscribed square.



PROP. VIII.—PROBLEM.

*In a given square (ABCD) to inscribe a circle.*

**Sol.**—Bisect (see last diagram) two adjacent sides  $EH$ ,  $EF$  in the points  $A$ ,  $B$ , and through  $A$ ,  $B$  draw the lines  $AC$ ,  $BD$ , respectively parallel to  $EF$ ,  $EH$ ; then  $O$ , the point of intersection of these parallels, is the centre of the required circle.

**Dem.**—Because  $AOBE$  is a parallelogram, its opposite sides are equal; therefore  $AO$  is equal to  $EB$ ; but  $EB$  is half the side of the given square;

therefore  $AO$  is equal to half the side of the given square; and so in like manner is each of the lines  $OB$ ,  $OC$ ,  $OD$ ; therefore the four lines  $OA$ ,  $OB$ ,  $OC$ ,  $OD$  are all equal; and since they are perpendicular to the sides of the given square, *the circle described with  $O$  as centre, and  $OA$  as radius, will be inscribed in the square.*

#### PROP. IX.—PROBLEM.

*About a given square ( $ABCD$ ) to describe a circle.*

**Sol.**—Draw the diagonals  $AC$ ,  $BD$  intersecting in  $O$  (see diagram to Proposition VI.).  *$O$  is the centre of the required circle.*

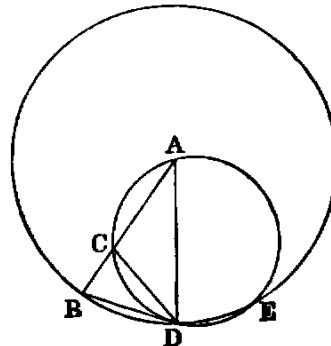
**Dem.**—Since  $ABC$  is an isosceles triangle, and the angle  $B$  is right, each of the other angles is half a right angle; therefore  $BAO$  is half a right angle. In like manner  $ABO$  is half a right angle; hence the angle  $BAO$  equal  $ABO$ ; therefore [I. VI.]  $AO$  is equal to  $OB$ . In like manner  $OB$  is equal to  $OC$ , and  $OC$  to  $OD$ . *Hence the circle described, with  $O$  as centre and  $OA$  as radius, will pass through the points  $B$ ,  $C$ ,  $D$ , and be described about the square.*

#### PROP. X.—PROBLEM.

*To construct an isosceles triangle having each base angle double the vertical angle.*

**Sol.**—Take any line  $AB$ . Divide it in  $C$ , so that the rectangle  $AB \cdot BC$  shall be equal to  $AC^2$  [II. XI.]. With  $A$  as centre, and  $AB$  as radius, describe the circle  $BDE$ , and in it place the chord  $BD$  equal to  $AC$  [I.]. Join  $AD$ .  *$ADB$  is a triangle fulfilling the required conditions.*

**Dem.**—Join  $CD$ . About the triangle  $ACD$  describe the circle  $CDE$  [V.]. Then, because the rectangle  $AB \cdot BC$  is equal to  $AC^2$  (const.), and that  $AC$  is equal to  $BD$  (const.); therefore the rectangle  $AB \cdot BC$  is equal to  $BD^2$ . Hence [III. XXXVII.]  $BD$  touches the circle  $ACD$ . Hence the angle  $BDC$  is equal to the angle  $A$  in the alternate segment [III. XXXII.]. To each add  $CDA$ , and we have the angle  $BDA$  equal to the sum of the angles  $CDA$  and  $A$ ; but the exterior angle  $BCD$  of the triangle  $ACD$  is equal to the sum of the angles  $CDA$  and  $A$ . Hence the angle  $BDA$  is equal to  $BCD$ ; but since  $AB$  is equal to  $AD$ , the angle  $BDA$  is equal to  $ABD$ ; therefore the angle  $CBD$  is equal to  $BCD$ . Hence [I. VI.]  $BD$  is equal to  $CD$ ; but  $BD$  is equal to  $AC$  (const.); therefore  $AC$  is equal to  $CD$ , and therefore [I. V.] the angle  $CDA$  is equal to  $A$ ; but  $BDA$  has been proved to be equal to the sum of  $CDA$  and  $A$ . Hence  $BDA$  is double of  $A$ . *Hence each of the base angles of the triangle  $ABD$  is double of the vertical angle.*



Exercises.

1. Prove that  $ACD$  is an isosceles triangle whose vertical angle is equal to three times each of the base angles.
2. Prove that  $BD$  is the side of a regular decagon inscribed in the circle  $BDE$ .
3. If  $DB, DE, EF$  be consecutive sides of a regular decagon inscribed in a circle, prove  $BF - BD = \text{radius of circle}$ .
4. If  $E$  be the second point of intersection of the circle  $ACD$  with  $BDE$ ,  $DE$  is equal to  $DB$ ; and if  $AE, BE, CE, DE$  be joined, each of the triangles  $ACE, ADE$  is congruent with  $ABD$ .
5.  $AC$  is the side of a regular pentagon inscribed in the circle  $ACD$ , and  $EB$  the side of a regular pentagon inscribed in the circle  $BDE$ .
6. Since  $ACE$  is an isosceles triangle,  $EB^2 - EA^2 = AB \cdot BC$ —that is  $= BD^2$ ; therefore  $EB^2 - BD^2 = EA^2$ —that is, *the square of the side of a pentagon inscribed in a circle exceeds the square of the side of the decagon inscribed in the same circle by the square of the radius.*

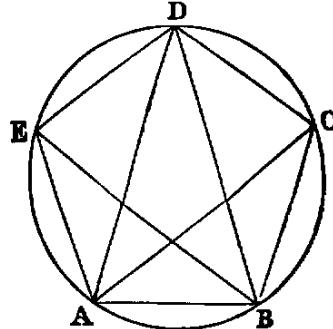
PROP. XI.—PROBLEM.

*To inscribe a regular pentagon in a given circle (ABCDE).*

**Sol.**—Construct an isosceles triangle [x.], having each base angle double the vertical angle, and inscribe in the given circle a triangle  $ABD$  equiangular to it. Bisect the angles  $DAB, ABD$  by the lines  $AC, BE$ . Join  $EA, ED, DC, CB$ ; then the figure  $ABCDE$  is a regular pentagon.

**Dem.**—Because each of the base angles  $BAD, ABD$  is double of the angle  $ADB$ , and the lines  $AC, BE$  bisect them, the five angles  $BAC, CAD, ADB, DBE, EBA$  are all equal; therefore the arcs on which they stand are equal; and therefore the five chords,  $AB, BC, CD, DE, EA$  are equal. Hence the figure  $ABCDE$  is equilateral.

Again, because the arcs  $AB, DE$  are equal, adding the arc  $BCD$  to both, the arc  $ABCD$  is equal to the arc  $BCDE$ , and therefore [III. XXVII.] the angles  $AED, BAE$ , which stand on them, are equal. In the same manner it can be proved that all the angles are equal; therefore the figure  $ABCDE$  is equiangular. Hence it is a regular pentagon.



Exercises.

1. The figure formed by the five diagonals of a regular pentagon is another regular pentagon.
2. If the alternate sides of a regular pentagon be produced to meet, the five points of meeting form another regular pentagon.
3. Every two consecutive diagonals of a regular pentagon divide each other in extreme and mean ratio.
4. Being given a side of a regular pentagon, construct it.
5. Divide a right angle into five equal parts.

PROP. XII.—PROBLEM.

*To describe a regular pentagon about a given circle (ABCDE).*

**Sol.**—Let the five points  $A, B, C, D, E$  on the circle be the vertices of any inscribed regular pentagon: at these points draw tangents  $FG, GH, HI, IJ, JF$ : *the figure FGHIJ is a circumscribed regular pentagon.*

**Dem.**—Let  $O$  be the centre of the circle. Join  $OE, OA, OB$ . Now, because the angles  $A, E$  of the quadrilateral  $AOEF$  are right angles [III. XVIII.], the sum of the two remaining angles  $AOE, AFE$  is two right angles. In like manner the sum of the angles  $AOB, AGB$  is two right angles; therefore the sum of  $AOE, AFE$  is equal to the sum of  $AOB, AGB$ ; but the angles  $AOE, AOB$  are equal, because they stand on equal arcs  $AE, AB$  [III. XXVII.]. Hence the angle  $AFE$  is equal to  $AGB$ . In like manner the remaining angles of the figure  $FGHIJ$  are equal. *Therefore it is equiangular.*

Again, join  $OF, OG$ . Now the triangles  $EOF, AOF$  have the sides  $AF, FE$  equal [III. XVII., Ex. 1], and  $FO$  common, and the base  $AO$  equal to the base  $EO$ . Hence the angle  $AFO$  is equal to  $EFO$  [I. VIII.]. Therefore the angle  $AFO$  is half the angle  $AFE$ . In like manner  $AGO$  is half the angle  $AGB$ ; but  $AFE$  has been proved equal to  $AGB$ ; hence  $AFO$  is equal to  $AGO$ , and  $FAO$  is equal to  $GAO$ , each being right, and  $AO$  common to the two triangles  $FAO, GAO$ ; hence [I. XXVI.] the side  $AF$  is equal to  $AG$ ; therefore  $GF$  is double  $AF$ . In like manner  $JF$  is double  $EF$ ; but  $AF$  is equal to  $EF$ ; hence  $GF$  is equal to  $JF$ . In like manner the remaining sides are equal; therefore the figure  $FGHIJ$  is equilateral, and it has been proved equiangular. *Hence it is a regular pentagon.*

This Proposition is a particular case of the following general theorem, of which the proof is the same as the foregoing:—

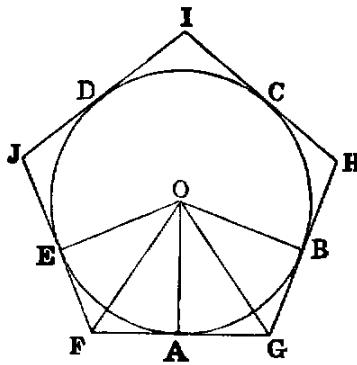
“If tangents be drawn to a circle, at the angular points of an inscribed polygon of any number of sides, they will form a regular polygon of the same number of sides circumscribed to the circle.”

PROP. XIII.—PROBLEM.

*To inscribe a circle in a regular pentagon (ABCDE).*

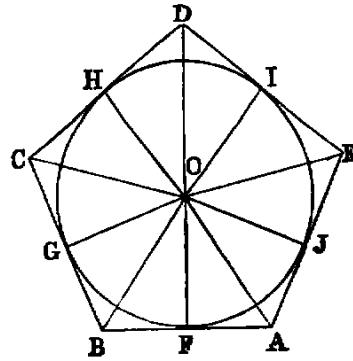
**Sol.**—Bisect two adjacent angles  $A, B$  by the lines  $AO, BO$ ; then  $O$ , the point of intersection of the bisectors, is the centre of the required circle.

**Dem.**—Join  $CO$ , and let fall perpendiculars from  $O$  on the five sides of the pentagon. Now the triangles  $ABO, CBO$  have the side  $AB$  equal to  $BC$  (hyp.), and  $BO$  common, and the angle  $ABO$  equal to  $CBO$  (const.). Hence the angle  $BAO$  is equal to  $BCO$  [I. IV.]; but  $BAO$  is half  $BAE$  (const.). Therefore  $BCO$  is half  $BCD$ , and therefore  $CO$  bisects the angle  $BCD$ . In like manner it may be proved that  $DO$  bisects the angle  $D$ , and  $EO$  the angle  $E$ .



Again, the triangles  $BOF$ ,  $BOG$  have the angle  $F$  equal to  $G$ , each being right; and  $OB$  equal to  $OB$ , because  $OB$  bisects the angle  $ABC$  (const.), and  $OB$  common; hence [I. xxvi.]  $OF$  is equal to  $OG$ . In like manner all the perpendiculars from  $O$  on the sides of the pentagon are equal; hence the circle whose centre is  $O$ , and radius  $OF$ , will touch all the sides of the pentagon, and will therefore be inscribed in it.

In the same manner a circle may be inscribed in any regular polygon.



#### PROP. XIV.—PROBLEM.

*To describe a circle about a regular pentagon (ABCDE).*

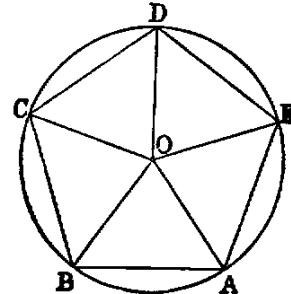
**Sol.**—Bisect two adjacent angles  $A$ ,  $B$  by the lines  $AO$ ,  $BO$ . Then  $O$ , the point of intersection of the bisectors, is the centre of the required circle.

**Dem.**—Join  $OC$ ,  $OD$ ,  $OE$ . Then the triangles  $ABO$ ,  $CBO$  have the side  $AB$  equal to  $BC$  (hyp.),  $BO$  common, and the angle  $ABO$  equal to  $CBO$  (const.). Hence the angle  $BAO$  is equal to  $BCO$  [I. iv.]; but the angle  $BAE$  is equal to  $BCD$  (hyp.); and since  $BAO$  is half  $BAE$  (const.),  $BCO$  is half  $BCD$ . Hence  $CO$  bisects the angle  $BCD$ . In like manner it may be proved that  $DO$  bisects  $CDE$ , and  $EO$  the angle  $DEA$ . Again, because the angle  $EAB$  is equal to  $ABC$ , their halves are equal. Hence  $OAB$  is equal to  $OBA$ ; therefore [I. vi.]  $OA$  is equal to  $OB$ . In like manner the lines  $OC$ ,  $OD$ ,  $OE$  are equal to one another and to  $OA$ . Therefore the circle described with  $O$  as centre, and  $OA$  as radius, will pass through the points  $B$ ,  $C$ ,  $D$ ,  $E$ , and be described about the pentagon.

In the same manner a circle may be described about any regular polygon.

Propositions XIII., XIV. are particular cases of the following theorem:—

“A regular polygon of any number of sides has one circle inscribed in it, and another described about it, and both circles are concentric.”

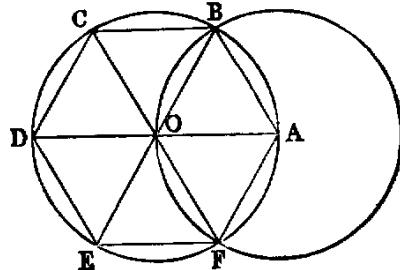


#### PROP. XV.—PROBLEM.

*In a given circle (ABCDEF) to inscribe a regular hexagon.*

**Sol.**—Take any point  $A$  in the circumference, and join it to  $O$ , the centre of the given circle; then with  $A$  as centre, and  $AO$  as radius, describe the circle  $OBF$ , intersecting the given circle in the points  $B$ ,  $F$ . Join  $OB$ ,  $OF$ , and produce  $AO$ ,  $BO$ ,  $FO$  to meet the given circle again in the points  $D$ ,  $E$ ,  $C$ . Join  $AB$ ,  $BC$ ,  $CD$ ,  $DE$ ,  $EF$ ,  $FA$ ;  $ABCDEF$  is the required hexagon.

**Dem.**—Each of the triangles  $AOB$ ,  $AOF$  is equilateral (see Dem., I. 1.). Hence the angles  $AOB$ ,  $AOF$  are each one-third of two right angles; therefore  $EOF$  is one-third of two right angles. Again, the angles  $BOC$ ,  $COD$ ,  $DOE$  are [I. xv.] respectively equal to the angles  $EOF$ ,  $FOA$ ,  $AOB$ . Therefore the six angles at the centre are equal, because each is one-third of two right angles. Therefore the six chords are equal [III. xxix.]. *Hence the hexagon is equilateral.*



Again, since the arc  $AF$  is equal to  $ED$ , to each add the arc  $ABCD$ ; then the whole arc  $FABCD$  is equal to  $ABCDE$ ; therefore the angles  $DEF$ ,  $EFA$  which stand on these arcs are equal [III. xxvii.]. In the same manner it may be shown that the other angles of the hexagon are equal. Hence it is equiangular, and is therefore a regular hexagon inscribed in the circle.

*Cor.* 1.—The side of a regular hexagon inscribed in a circle is equal to the radius.

*Cor.* 2.—If three alternate angles of a hexagon be joined, they form an inscribed equilateral triangle.

#### Exercises.

1. The area of a regular hexagon inscribed in a circle is equal to twice the area of an equilateral triangle inscribed in the circle; and the square of the side of the triangle is three times the square of the side of the hexagon.

2. If the diameter of a circle be produced to  $C$  until the produced part is equal to the radius, the two tangents from  $C$  and their chord of contact form an equilateral triangle.

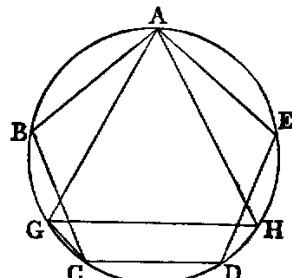
3. The area of a regular hexagon inscribed in a circle is half the area of an equilateral triangle, and three-fourths of the area of a regular hexagon circumscribed to the circle.

#### PROP. XVI.—PROBLEM.

*To inscribe a regular polygon of fifteen sides in a given circle.*

**Sol.**—Inscribe a regular pentagon  $ABCDE$  in the circle [xi.], and also an equilateral triangle  $AGH$  [ii.]. Join  $CG$ . *CG is a side of the required polygon.*

**Dem.**—Since  $ABCDE$  is a regular pentagon, the arc  $ABC$  is  $\frac{2}{5}$ ths of the circumference; and since  $AGH$  is an equilateral triangle, the arc  $ABG$  is  $\frac{1}{3}$ rd of the circumference. Hence the arc  $GC$ , which is the difference between these two arcs, is equal to  $\frac{2}{5}$ ths  $- \frac{1}{3}$ rd, or  $\frac{1}{15}$ th of the entire circumference; and therefore, if chords equal to  $GC$  [i.] be placed round the circle, we shall have a regular polygon of fifteen sides, or quindecagon, inscribed in it.



*Scholium.*—Until the year 1801 no regular polygon could be described by constructions employing the line and circle only, except those discussed in this Book, and those obtained from them by the continued bisection of the arcs of which their sides are the chords; but in

that year the celebrated Gauss proved that if  $2^n + 1$  be a prime number, regular polygons of  $2^n + 1$  sides are inscriptable by elementary geometry. For the case  $n = 4$ , which is the only figure of this class except the pentagon for which a construction has been given, see Note at the end of this work.

#### Questions for Examination on Book IV.

1. What is the subject-matter of Book IV.?
2. When is one rectilineal figure said to be inscribed in another?
3. When circumscribed?
4. When is a circle said to be inscribed in a rectilineal figure?
5. When circumscribed about it?
6. What is meant by reciprocal propositions? *Ans.* In reciprocal propositions, to every line in one there corresponds a point in the other; and, conversely, to every point in one there corresponds a line in the other.
7. Give instances of reciprocal propositions in Book IV.
8. What is a regular polygon?
9. What figures can be inscribed in, and circumscribed about, a circle by means of Book IV.?
10. What regular polygons has Gauss proved to be inscriptable by the line and circle?
11. What is meant by escribed circles?
12. How many circles can be described to touch three lines forming a triangle?
13. What is the centroid of a triangle?
14. What is the orthocentre?
15. What is the circumcentre?
16. What is the polar circle?
17. When is the polar circle imaginary?
18. What is the “nine-points circle”?
19. Why is it so called?
20. Name the special nine points through which it passes.
21. What three regular figures can be used in filling up the space round a point? *Ans.* Equilateral triangles, squares, and hexagons.
22. If the sides of a triangle be 13, 14, 15, what are the values of the radii of its inscribed and escribed circles?
23. What is the radius of the circumscribed circle?
24. What is the radius of its nine-points circle?
25. What is the distance between the centres of its inscribed and circumscribed circles?
26. If  $r$  be the radius of a circle, what is the area of its inscribed equilateral triangle?—of its inscribed square?—its inscribed pentagon?—its inscribed hexagon?—its inscribed octagon?—its inscribed decagon?
27. With the same hypothesis, find the sides of the same regular figures.

#### Exercises on Book IV.

1. If a circumscribed polygon be regular, the corresponding inscribed polygon is also regular, and conversely.
2. If a circumscribed triangle be isosceles, the corresponding inscribed triangle is isosceles, and conversely.
3. If the two isosceles triangles in Ex. 2 have equal vertical angles, they are both equilateral.
4. Divide an angle of an equilateral triangle into five equal parts.
5. Inscribe a circle in a sector of a given circle.
6. The line  $DE$  is parallel to the base  $BC$  of the triangle  $ABC$ : prove that the circles described about the triangles  $ABC$ ,  $ADE$  touch at  $A$ .
7. The diagonals of a cyclic quadrilateral intersect in  $E$ : prove that the tangent at  $E$  to the circle about the triangle  $ABE$  is parallel to  $CD$ .
8. Inscribe a regular octagon in a given square.

9. A line of given length slides between two given lines: find the locus of the intersection of perpendiculars from its extremities to the given lines.
10. If the perpendicular to any side of a triangle at its middle point meet the internal and external bisectors of the opposite angle in the points  $D$  and  $E$ ; prove that  $D, E$  are points on the circumscribed circle.
11. Through a given point  $P$  draw a chord of a circle so that the intercept  $EF$  may subtend a given angle  $X$ .
12. In a given circle inscribe a triangle having two sides passing through two given points, and the third parallel to a given line.
13. Given four points, no three of which are collinear; describe a circle which shall be equidistant from them.
14. In a given circle inscribe a triangle whose three sides shall pass through three given points.
15. Construct a triangle, being given—
1. The radius of the inscribed circle, the vertical angle, and the perpendicular from the vertical angle on the base.
  2. The base, the sum or difference of the other sides, and the radius of the inscribed circle, or of one of the escribed circles.
  3. The centres of the escribed circles.
16. If  $F$  be the middle point of the base of a triangle,  $DE$  the diameter of the circumscribed circle which passes through  $F$ , and  $L$  the point where a parallel to the base through the vertex meets  $DE$ : prove  $DL \cdot FE$  is equal to the square of half the sum, and  $DF \cdot LE$  equal to the square of half the difference of the two remaining sides.
17. If from any point within a regular polygon of  $n$  sides perpendiculars be let fall on the sides, their sum is equal to  $n$  times the radius of the inscribed circle.
18. The sum of the perpendiculars let fall from the angular points of a regular polygon of  $n$  sides on any line is equal to  $n$  times the perpendicular from the centre of the polygon on the same line.
19. If  $R$  denotes the radius of the circle circumscribed about a triangle  $ABC$ ,  $r, r', r'', r'''$  the radii of its inscribed and escribed circles,  $\delta, \delta', \delta''$  the perpendiculars from its circumcentre on the sides;  $\mu, \mu', \mu''$  the segments of these perpendiculars between the sides and circumference of the circumscribed circle, we have the relations—
- $$r' + r'' + r''' = 4R + r, \quad (1)$$
- $$\mu + \mu' + \mu'' = 2R - r, \quad (2)$$
- $$\delta + \delta' + \delta'' = R + r. \quad (3)$$
- The relation (3) supposes that the circumcentre is inside the triangle.
20. Through a point  $D$ , taken on the side  $BC$  of a triangle  $ABC$ , is drawn a transversal  $EDF$ , and circles described about the triangles  $DBF, ECD$ . The locus of their second point of intersection is a circle.
21. In every quadrilateral circumscribed about a circle, the middle points of its diagonals and the centre of the circle are collinear.
22. Find on a given line a point  $P$ , the sum or difference of whose distances from two given points may be given.
23. Find a point such that, if perpendiculars be let fall from it on four given lines, their feet may be collinear.
24. The line joining the orthocentre of a triangle to any point  $P$ , in the circumference of its circumscribed circle, is bisected by the line of collinearity of perpendiculars from  $P$  on the sides of the triangle.
25. The orthocentres of the four triangles formed by any four lines are collinear.
26. If a semicircle and its diameter be touched by any circle, either internally or externally, twice the rectangle contained by the radius of the semicircle, and the radius of the tangential circle, is equal to the rectangle contained by the segments of any secant to the semicircle, through the point of contact of the diameter and touching circle.

27. If  $\rho, \rho'$  be the radii of two circles, touching each other at the centre of the inscribed circle of a triangle, and each touching the circumscribed circle, prove

$$\frac{1}{\rho} + \frac{1}{\rho'} = \frac{2}{r},$$

and state and prove corresponding theorems for the escribed circles.

28. If from any point in the circumference of the circle, circumscribed about a regular polygon of  $n$  sides, lines be drawn to its angular points, the sum of their squares is equal to  $2n$  times the square of the radius.

29. In the same case, if the lines be drawn from any point in the circumference of the inscribed circle, prove that the sum of their squares is equal to  $n$  times the sum of the squares of the radii of the inscribed and the circumscribed circles.

30. State the corresponding theorem for the sum of the squares of the lines drawn from any point in the circumference of any concentric circle.

31. If from any point in the circumference of any concentric circle perpendiculars be let fall on all the sides of any regular polygon, the sum of their squares is constant.

32. For the inscribed circle, the constant is equal to  $\frac{3n}{2}$  times the square of the radius.

33. For the circumscribed circle, the constant is equal to  $n$  times the square of the radius of the inscribed circle, together with  $\frac{1}{2}n$  times the square of the radius of the circumscribed circle.

34. If the circumference of a circle whose radius is  $R$  be divided into seventeen equal parts, and  $AO$  be the diameter drawn from one of the points of division ( $A$ ), and if  $\rho_1, \rho_2, \dots, \rho_8$  denote the chords from  $O$  to the points of division,  $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_8$  on one side of  $AO$ , then

$$\rho_1\rho_2\rho_4\rho_8 = R^4; \text{ and } \rho_3\rho_5\rho_6\rho_7 = R^4. — \text{CATALAN.}$$

**Dem.**—Let the supplemental chords corresponding to  $\rho_1, \rho_2, \dots$ , be denoted by  $r_1, r_2, \dots$ ; then [III. XXXV. Ex. 2], we have

$$\begin{aligned}\rho_1r_1 &= Rr_2, \\ \rho_2r_2 &= Rr_4, \\ \rho_4r_4 &= Rr_8, \\ \rho_8r_8 &= Rr_1,\end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$\rho_1\rho_2\rho_4\rho_8 = R^4.$$

And it may be proved in the same manner that

$$\rho_1\rho_2\rho_3\rho_4\rho_5\rho_6\rho_7\rho_8 = R^8.$$

Therefore

$$\rho_3\rho_5\rho_6\rho_7 = R^4.$$

35. If from the middle point of the line joining any two of four concyclic points a perpendicular be let fall on the line joining the remaining two, the six perpendiculars thus obtained are concurrent.

36. The greater the number of sides of a regular polygon circumscribed about a given circle, the less will be its perimeter.

37. The area of any regular polygon of more than four sides circumscribed about a circle is less than the square of the diameter.

38. Four concyclic points taken three by three determine four triangles, the centres of whose nine-points circles are concyclic.

39. If two sides of a triangle be given in position, and if their included angle be equal to an angle of an equilateral triangle, the locus of the centre of its nine-points circle is a right line.

40. If, in the hypothesis and notation of Ex. 34,  $\alpha, \beta$  denote any two suffixes whose sum is less than 8, and of which  $\alpha$  is the greater,

$$\rho_\alpha\rho_\beta = R(\rho_{\alpha-\beta} + \rho_{\alpha+\beta}).$$

For instance,  $\rho_1\rho_4 = R(\rho_3 + \rho_5)$  [III. XXXV., Ex. 7].

In the same case, if the suffixes be greater than 8,

$$\rho_\alpha \cdot \rho_\beta = R(\rho_{\alpha-\beta} - \rho_{17-\alpha-\beta}).$$

For instance,  $\rho_8\rho_2 = R(\rho_6 - \rho_7)$  [III. xxxv., Ex. 6].

41. Two lines are given in position: draw a transversal through a given point, forming with the given lines a triangle of given perimeter.

42. Given the vertical angle and perimeter of a triangle, construct it with either of the following data: 1. The bisector of the vertical angle; 2. the perpendicular from the vertical angle on the base; 3. the radius of the inscribed circle.

43. In a given circle inscribe a triangle so that two sides may pass through two given points, and that the third side may be a maximum or a minimum.

44. If  $s$  be the semiperimeter of a triangle,  $r'$ ,  $r''$ ,  $r'''$ , the radii of its escribed circles,

$$r'r'' + r''r''' + r'''r' = s^2.$$

45. The feet of the perpendiculars from the extremities of the base on either bisector of the vertical angle, the middle point of the base, and the foot of the perpendicular from the vertical angle on the base, are concyclic.

46. Given the base of a triangle and the vertical angle; find the locus of the centre of the circle passing through the centres of the escribed circles.

47. The perpendiculars from the centres of the escribed circles of a triangle on the corresponding sides are concurrent.

48. If  $AB$  be the diameter of a circle, and  $PQ$  any chord cutting  $AB$  in  $O$ , and if the lines  $AP$ ,  $AQ$  intersect the perpendicular to  $AB$  at  $O$ , in  $D$  and  $E$  respectively, the points  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $D$ ,  $E$  are concyclic.

49. If the sides of a triangle be in arithmetical progression, and if  $R$ ,  $r$  be the radii of the circumscribed and inscribed circles; then  $6Rr$  is equal to the rectangle contained by the greatest and least sides.

50. Inscribe in a given circle a triangle having its three sides parallel to three given lines.

51. If the sides  $AB$ ,  $BC$ , &c., of a regular pentagon be bisected in the points  $A'$ ,  $B'$ ,  $C'$ ,  $D'$ ,  $E'$ , and if the two pairs of alternate sides,  $BC$ ,  $AE$ ;  $AB$ ,  $DE$ , meet in the points  $A''$ ,  $E''$ , respectively, prove

$$\triangle A''AE'' - \triangle A'AE' = \text{pentagon } A'B'C'D'E'.$$

52. In a circle, prove that an equilateral inscribed polygon is regular, and also an equilateral circumscribed polygon, if the number of sides be odd.

53. Prove also that an equiangular circumscribed polygon is regular, and an equiangular inscribed polygon, if the number of sides be odd.

54. The sum of the perpendiculars drawn to the sides of an equiangular polygon from any point inside the figure is constant.

55. Express the sides of a triangle in terms of the radii of its escribed circles.

## BOOK V. THEORY OF PROPORTION

---

### DEFINITIONS.

**Introduction.**—Every proposition in the theories of ratio and proportion is true for all descriptions of magnitude. Hence it follows that the proper treatment is the Algebraic. It is, at all events, the easiest and the most satisfactory. Euclid's proofs of the propositions, in the *Theory of Proportion*, possess at present none but a historical interest, as no student reads them now. But although his demonstrations are abandoned, his propositions are quoted by every writer, and his nomenclature is universally adopted. For these reasons it appears to us that the best method is to state Euclid's definitions, explain them, or prove them when necessary, for some are theorems under the guise of definitions, and then supply simple algebraic proofs of his propositions.

i. A less magnitude is said to be a *part* or *submultiple* of a greater magnitude, when the less measures the greater—that is, when the less is contained a certain number of times exactly in the greater.

ii. A greater magnitude is said to be a *multiple* of a less when the greater is measured by the less—that is, when the greater contains the less a certain number of times exactly.

iii. Ratio is the mutual relation of two magnitudes of the same kind with respect to quantity.

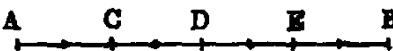
iv. Magnitudes are said to have a *ratio* to one another when the less can be multiplied so as to exceed the greater.

These definitions require explanation, especially Def. iii., which has the fault of conveying no precise meaning—being, in fact, unintelligible.

The following annotations will make them explicit:—

1. If an integer be divided into any number of equal parts, one, or the sum of any number of these parts, is called a *fraction*. Thus, if the line  $AB$  represent the integer, and if it be divided into four equal parts in the points  $C, D, E$ , then  $AC$  is  $\frac{1}{4}$ ;  $AD$ ,  $\frac{2}{4}$ ;  $AE$ ,  $\frac{3}{4}$ . Thus, a fraction is denoted by two numbers parted by a horizontal line; the lower, called the *denominator*, denotes the number of equal parts into which the integer is divided; and the upper, called the *numerator*, denotes the number of these equal parts which are taken. Hence it follows, that if the numerator be less than the denominator, the fraction is less than unity. If the numerator be equal to the denominator, the fraction is equal to unity; and if greater than the denominator, it is greater than unity. It is evident that a fraction is an abstract quantity—that is, that its value is independent of the nature of the integer which is divided.

2. If we divide each of the equal parts  $AC, CD, DE, EB$  into two equal parts, the whole,  $AB$ , will be divided into eight equal parts; and we see that  $AC = \frac{2}{8}$ ;  $AD = \frac{4}{8}$ ;  $AE = \frac{6}{8}$ ;  $AB = \frac{8}{8}$ ; Now, we saw in 1, that  $AE = \frac{3}{4}$  of the integer, and we have just shown that it is equal to  $\frac{6}{8}$ . Hence  $\frac{3}{4} = \frac{6}{8}$ ; but  $\frac{6}{8}$  would be got from  $\frac{3}{4}$  by multiplying its terms (numerator and denominator) by 2. Hence we infer generally that multiplying the terms of any fraction by 2 does not alter its value. In like manner it may be shown that multiplying the terms of



a fraction by any whole number does not alter its value. Hence it follows conversely, that dividing the terms of a fraction by a whole number does not alter the value. Hence we have the following important and fundamental theorem:—*Two transformations can be made on any fraction without changing its value; namely, its terms can be either multiplied or divided by any whole number, and in either case the value of the new fraction is equal to the value of the original one.*

3. If we take any number, such as 3, and multiply it by any whole number, the product is called a *multiple* of 3. Thus 6, 9, 12, 15, &c., are multiples of 3; but 10, 13, 17, &c., are not, because the multiplication of 3 by any whole number will not produce them. Conversely, 3 is a *submultiple*, or *measure*, or *part* of 6, 9, 12, 15, &c., because it is contained in each of these without a remainder; but not of 10, 13, 17, &c., because in each case it leaves a remainder.

4. If we consider two magnitudes of the same kind, such as two lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$ , and if we suppose that  $AB$  is equal to  $\frac{3}{4}$  of  $CD$ , it is evident, if  $AB$  be divided into 3 equal parts, and  $CD$  into 4 equal parts, that one of the parts into which  $AB$  is divided is equal to one of the parts into which  $CD$  is divided. And as there are 3 parts in  $AB$ , and 4 in  $CD$ , we express this relation by saying that  $AB$  has to  $CD$  the ratio of 3 to 4; and we denote it thus,  $3 : 4$ . Hence the ratio  $3 : 4$  expresses the same idea as the fraction  $\frac{3}{4}$ . In fact, both are different ways of expressing and writing the same thing. When written  $3 : 4$  it is called a ratio, and when  $\frac{3}{4}$  a fraction. *In the same manner it can be shown that every ratio whose terms are commensurable can be converted into a fraction; and, conversely, every fraction can be turned into a ratio.*



From this explanation we see that the ratio of any two commensurable magnitudes is the same as the ratio of the numerical quantities which denote these magnitudes. Thus, the ratio of two commensurable lines is the ratio of the numbers which express their lengths, measured with the same unit. And this may be extended to the case where the lines are incommensurable. Thus, if  $a$  be the side and  $b$  the diagonal of a square, the ratio of  $a : b$  is

$$\frac{a}{b}, \text{ or } \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}.$$

When two quantities are incommensurable, such as the diagonal and the side of a square, although their ratio is not equal to that of any two commensurable numbers, yet a series of pairs of fractions can be found whose difference is continually diminishing, and which ultimately becomes indefinitely small; such that the ratio of the incommensurable quantities is greater than one, and less than the other fraction of each pair. These fractions are called convergents. By their means we can approximate as nearly as we please to the exact value of the ratio. In the case of the diagonal and the side of a square, the following are the pairs of convergents:—

$$\frac{14}{10}, \frac{15}{10}; \quad \frac{141}{100}, \frac{142}{100}; \quad \frac{1414}{1000}, \frac{1415}{1000}; \quad \&c.,$$

and the ratio is intermediate to each pair. It is evident we may continue the series as far as we please. Now if we denote the first of any of the foregoing pairs of fractions by  $\frac{m}{n}$ , the second

will be  $\frac{m+1}{n}$ ; and in general, in the case of two incommensurable quantities, two fractions  $\frac{m}{n}$  and  $\frac{m+1}{n}$  can always be found, where  $n$  can be made as large as we please, one of which is less and the other greater than the true value of the ratio. For let  $a$  and  $b$  be the incommensurable quantities; then, evidently, we cannot find two multiples  $na$ ,  $mb$ , such that  $na = mb$ . In this case, take any multiple of  $a$ , such as  $na$ , then this quantity must lie between some two consecutive multiples of  $b$ , such as  $mb$ , and  $(m+1)b$ ; therefore  $\frac{na}{mb}$  is greater than unity, and  $\frac{na}{(m+1)b}$  less than unity. Hence  $\frac{a}{b}$  lies between  $\frac{m}{n}$  and  $\frac{m+1}{n}$ . Now, since the difference between  $\frac{m}{n}$  and  $\frac{m+1}{n}$  namely,  $\frac{1}{n}$  becomes small as  $n$  increases, we see that the difference between the ratio of two incommensurable quantities and that of two commensurable numbers

$m$  and  $n$  can be made as small as we please. Hence, ultimately, the ratio of incommensurable quantities may be regarded as the limit of the ratio of commensurable quantities.

5. The two terms of a ratio are called the *antecedent* and the *consequent*. These correspond to the numerator and the denominator of a fraction. Hence we have the following definition:—“*A ratio is the fraction got by making the antecedent the numerator and the consequent the denominator.*”

6. The *reciprocal* of a ratio is the ratio obtained by interchanging the antecedent and the consequent. Thus,  $4 : 3$  is the reciprocal of the ratio  $3 : 4$ . Hence we have the following theorem:—“*The product of a ratio and its reciprocal is unity.*”

7. If we multiply any two numbers, as 5 and 7, by any number such as 4, the products 20, 28 are called *equimultiples* of 5 and 7. In like manner, 10 and 15 are equimultiples of 2 and 3, and 18 and 30 of 3 and 5, &c.

v. The first of four magnitudes has to the second the same ratio which the third has to the fourth, when any equimultiples whatsoever of the first and third being taken, and any equimultiples whatsoever of the second and fourth, if, according as the multiple of the first is greater than, equal to, or less than the multiple of the second, the multiple of the third is greater than, equal to, or less than the multiple of the fourth.

vi. Magnitudes which have the same ratio are called *proportionals*. When four magnitudes are proportionals, it is usually expressed by saying, “The first is to the second as the third is to the fourth.”

### VIII. Analogy or proportion is the similitude of ratios.

We have given the foregoing definitions in the order of Euclid, as given by Simson, Lardner, and others;<sup>2</sup> but it is evidently an inverted order; for vi. viii. are definitions of proportion, and v. is only a test of proportion, and is not a definition but a theorem, and one which, instead of being taken for granted, requires proof. The following explanations will give the student clear conceptions of their meaning:—

1. If we take two ratios, such as  $6 : 9$  and  $10 : 15$ , which are each equal to the same thing (in this example each is equal to  $\frac{2}{3}$ ), they are equal to one another (I. Axiom 1.). Then we may write it thus—

$$6 : 9 = 10 : 15.$$

This would be the most intelligible way, but it is not the usual one, which is as follows:— $6 : 9 :: 10 : 15$ . In this form it is called a *proportion*. Hence a proportion consists of two ratios which are asserted by it to be equal. Its four terms consist of two antecedents and two consequents. The 1st and 3rd terms are the *antecedents*, and the 2nd and 4th the *consequents*. Also the first and last terms are called the *extremes*, and the two middle terms the *means*.

2. Since a proportion consists of two equal ratios, and each ratio can be written as a fraction, whenever we have a proportion such as

$$a : b :: c : d,$$

we can write it in the form of two equal fractions. Thus:

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}.$$

Conversely, an equation between two fractions can be put into a proportion. By means of these simple principles all the various properties of proportion can be proved in the most direct and easy manner.

3. If we take the proportion  $a : b :: c : d$ , and multiply the first and third terms, each by  $m$ , and second and fourth, each by  $n$ , we get the four multiples,  $ma$ ,  $nb$ ,  $mc$ ,  $nd$ ; and we want to prove that if  $ma$  is greater than  $nb$ ,  $mc$  is greater than  $nd$ ; if equal, equal; and if less, less.

**Dem.**—Since

$$a : b :: c : d,$$

we have

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}.$$

---

<sup>2</sup>Except that viii. is put before vii., because it relates, as v. and vi., to the equality of ratios, whereas vii. is a test of their inequality.

Hence, multiplying each by  $\frac{m}{n}$  we get

$$\frac{ma}{nb} = \frac{mc}{nd}.$$

Now, it is evident that if  $\frac{ma}{nb}$  is greater than unity,  $\frac{mc}{nd}$  is greater than unity; but if  $\frac{ma}{nb}$  is greater than unity,  $ma$  is greater than  $nb$ ; and if  $\frac{mc}{nd}$  is greater than unity,  $mc$  is greater than  $nd$ . In like manner, if  $ma$  be equal to  $nb$ ,  $mc$  is equal to  $nd$ ; and if less, less.

The foregoing is an easy proof of the converse of the theorem which is contained in Euclid's celebrated Fifth Definition.

Next, to prove Euclid's theorem—that if, according as the multiple of the first of four magnitudes is greater than, equal to, or less than the multiple of the second, the multiple of the third is greater than, equal to, or less than the multiple of the fourth; the ratio of the first to the second is equal to the ratio of the third to the fourth.

**Dem.**—Let,  $a, b, c, d$  be the four magnitudes. First suppose that  $a$  and  $b$  are commensurable, then it is evident that we can take multiples  $na, mb$ , such that  $na = mb$ . Hence, by hypothesis,  $nc = md$ . Thus,

$$\frac{na}{mb} = 1, \quad \frac{nc}{md} = 1;$$

therefore

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}.$$

Next, suppose  $a$  and  $b$  are incommensurable. Then, as in a recent note, we can find two numbers  $m$  and  $n$ , such that  $\frac{na}{mb}$  is greater than unity, but  $\frac{na}{(m+1)b}$  less than unity. Hence  $\frac{a}{b}$  lies between  $\frac{m}{n}$  and  $\frac{m+1}{n}$ . Now, since by hypothesis, when  $\frac{na}{mb}$  is greater than unity,  $\frac{nc}{md}$  is greater than unity; and when  $\frac{na}{(m+1)b}$  is less than unity,  $\frac{nc}{(m+1)d}$  is less than unity. Hence, since  $\frac{a}{b}$  lies between  $\frac{m}{n}$  and  $\frac{m+1}{n}$ ,  $\frac{c}{d}$  lies between the same quantities. Therefore the difference between  $\frac{a}{b}$  and  $\frac{c}{d}$  is less than  $\frac{1}{n}$ ; and since  $n$  may be as large as we please, the difference is nothing; therefore

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}.$$

VII. When of the multiples of four magnitudes (taken as in Def. v.) the multiple of the first is greater than that of the second, but the multiple of the third not greater than that of the fourth, the first has to the second a greater ratio than the third has to the fourth.

This, instead of being a definition, is a theorem. We have altered the last clause from that given in Simson's Euclid, which runs thus:—"The first is *said* to have to the second a greater ratio than the third has to the fourth." This is misleading, as it implies that it is, by convention, that the first ratio is greater than the second, whereas, in fact, such is not the case; for it follows from the hypothesis that the first ratio is greater than the second; and if it did not, it could not be made so by definition. We have made a similar change in the enunciation of the Fifth Definition.

Let  $a, b, c, d$  be the four magnitudes, and  $m$  and  $n$  the multiples taken, it is required to prove, that if  $ma$  be greater than  $nb$ , but  $mc$  not greater than  $nd$ , that the ratio  $a : b$  is greater than the ratio  $c : d$ .

**Dem.**—Since  $ma$  is greater than  $nb$ , but  $mc$  not greater than  $nd$ , it is evident that

$$\frac{ma}{nb} \text{ is greater than } \frac{mc}{nd};$$

therefore

$$\frac{a}{b} \text{ is greater than } \frac{c}{d};$$

that is, the ratio  $a : b$  is greater than the ratio  $c : d$ .

IX. Proportion consists of three terms at least.

This has the same fault as some of the others—it is not a definition, but an inference. It occurs when the means in a proportion are equal, so that, in fact, there are four terms. As an illustration, let us take the numbers 4, 6, 9. Here the ratio of 4 : 6 is  $\frac{2}{3}$ , and the ratio of 6 : 9 is  $\frac{2}{3}$ , so that 4, 6, 9 are continued proportionals; but, in reality, there are four terms, for the full proportion is 4 : 6 :: 6 : 9.

X. When three magnitudes are continual proportionals, the first is said to have to the third the *duplicate ratio* of that which it has to the second.

XI. When four magnitudes are continual proportionals, the first is said to have to the fourth the *triplicate ratio* of that which it has to the second.

XII. When there is any number of magnitudes of the same kind greater than two, the first is said to have to the last the ratio compounded of the ratios of the first to the second, of the second to the third, of the third to the fourth, &c.

We have placed these definitions in a group; but their order is inverted, and, as we shall see, Def. XII. is a theorem, and X. and XI. are only inferences from it.

1. If we have two ratios, such as 5 : 7 and 3 : 4, and if we convert each ratio into a fraction, and multiply these fractions together, we get a result which is called the ratio compounded of the two ratios; viz. in this example it is  $\frac{15}{28}$ , or 15 : 28. It is evident we get the same result if we multiply the two antecedents together for a new antecedent, and the two consequents for a new consequent. Hence we have the following definition:—“*The ratio compounded of any number of ratios is the ratio of the product of all the antecedents to the product of all the consequents.*”

2. To prove the theorem contained in Def. XII.

Let the magnitudes be  $a, b, c, d$ . Then the ratio of

$$\begin{aligned} \text{1st : 2nd} &= \frac{a}{b}, \\ \text{2nd : 3rd} &= \frac{b}{c}, \\ \text{3rd : 4th} &= \frac{c}{d}. \end{aligned}$$

Hence the ratio compounded of the ratio of 1st : 2nd, of 2nd : 3rd, of 3rd : 4th

$$= \frac{abc}{bcd} = \frac{a}{d} = \text{ratio of 1st : 4th.}$$

3. If three magnitudes be proportional, the ratio of the 1st : 3rd is equal to the square of the ratio of the 1st : 2nd. For the ratio of the 1st : 3rd is compounded of the ratio of the 1st : 2nd, and of the ratio of the 2nd : 3rd; and since these ratios are equal, the ratio compounded of them will be equal to the square of one of them.

*Or thus:* Let the proportionals be  $a, b, c$ , that is, let  $a : b :: b : c$ ; hence we have

$$\frac{b}{c} = \frac{a}{b}.$$

And multiplying each by  $\frac{a}{b}$ , we get

$$\frac{a}{c} = \frac{a^2}{b^2};$$

or  $a : c :: a^2 : b^2$ —that is, 1st : 3rd :: square of 1st : square of 2nd. Now, the ratio of 1st : 3rd is, by Def. X., the duplicate ratio of 1st : 2nd. Hence the duplicate ratio of two magnitudes means the square of their ratio, or, what is the same thing, the ratio of their squares (see Book VI. xx.).

4. If four magnitudes be continual proportionals, the ratio of 1st : 4th is equal to the cube of the ratio of 1st : 2nd. This may be proved exactly like 3. Hence we see that what Euclid calls triplicate ratio of two magnitudes is the ratio of their cubes, or the cube of their ratio.

We also see that there is no necessity to introduce extraneous magnitudes for the purpose of defining duplicate and triplicate ratios, as Euclid does. In fact, the definitions by squares and cubes are more explicit.

XIII. In proportionals, the antecedent terms are called *homologous* to one another; as also the consequents to one another.

If one proportion be given, from it an indefinite number of other proportions can be inferred, and a great part of the theory of proportion consists in proving the truth of these derived proportions. Geometers make use of certain technical terms to denote the most important of these processes. We shall indicate these terms by including them in parentheses in connexion with the Propositions to which they refer. They are useful as indicating, by one word, the whole enunciation of a theorem.

Every Proposition in the Fifth Book is a Theorem.

#### PROP. I.—THEOREM.

*If any number of magnitudes of the same kind ( $a, b, c, \&c.$ ), be equimultiples of as many others ( $a', b', c', \&c.$ ), then the sum of the first magnitudes ( $a+b+c, \&c.$ ) shall be the same multiple of the sum of the second which any magnitude of the first system is of the corresponding magnitude of the second system.*

**Dem.**—Let  $m$  denote the multiple which the magnitudes of the first system are of those of the second system.

Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} a &= ma' \text{ (hyp.)}, \\ b &= mb', \\ c &= mc'. \\ \&c., \&c. \end{aligned}$$

Hence, by addition,

$$(a+b+c+\&c.) = m(a'+b'+c', \&c.).$$

#### PROP. II.—THEOREM.

*If two magnitudes of the same kind ( $a, b$ ) be the same multiples of another ( $c$ ) which two corresponding magnitudes ( $a', b'$ ) are of another ( $c'$ ), then the sum of the two first is the same multiple of their submultiple which the sum of their corresponding magnitudes is of their submultiple.*

**Dem.**—Let  $m$  and  $n$  be the multiples which  $a$  and  $b$  are of  $c$ .

Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} a &= mc \text{ and } a' = mc', \\ b &= nc \text{ and } b' = nc'. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore

$$(a+b) = (m+n)c, \text{ and } (a'+b') = (m+n)c'.$$

Hence  $a+b$  is the same multiple of  $c$  that  $a'+b'$  is of  $c'$ .

This Proposition is evidently true for any number of multiples.

PROP. III.—THEOREM.

*If two magnitudes (a, b) be equimultiples of two others (a', b'); then any equimultiples of the first magnitudes (a, b) will be also equimultiples of the second magnitudes (a', b').*

**Dem.**—Let  $m$  denote the multiples which  $a, b$  are of  $a', b'$ ; then we have

$$a = ma', \quad b = mb'.$$

Hence, multiplying each equation by  $n$ , we get

$$na = mna', \quad nb = mn b'.$$

Hence,  $na, nb$  are equimultiples of  $a', b'$ .

PROP. IV.—THEOREM.

*If four magnitudes be proportional, and if any equimultiples of the first and third be taken, and any other equimultiples of the second and fourth; then the multiple of the first : the multiple of the second :: the multiple of the third : the multiple of the fourth.*

Let  $a : b :: c : d$ ; then  $ma : nb :: mc : nd$ .

**Dem.**—We have  $a : b :: c : d$  (hyp.);

therefore

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}.$$

Hence, multiplying each fraction by  $\frac{m}{n}$ , we get

$$\frac{ma}{nb} = \frac{mc}{nd};$$

therefore

$$ma : nb :: mc : nd.$$

PROP. V.—THEOREM.

*If two magnitudes of the same kind (a, b) be the same multiples of another (c) which two corresponding magnitudes (a', b') are of another (c'), then the difference of the two first is the same multiple of their submultiple (c), which the difference of their corresponding magnitudes is of their submultiple (c') (compare Proposition II.).*

**Dem.**—Let  $m$  and  $n$  be the multiples which  $a$  and  $b$  are of  $c$ .

Then we have

$$a = mc, \text{ and } a' = mc',$$

$$b = nc, \text{ and } b' = nc'.$$

Therefore  $(a - b) = (m - n)c$ , and  $(a' - b') = (m - n)c'$ . Hence  $a - b$  is the same multiple of  $c$  that  $a' - b'$  is of  $c'$ .

*Cor.*—If  $a - b = c$ ,  $a' - b' = c'$ ; for if  $a - b = c$ ,  $m - n = 1$ .

PROP. VI.—THEOREM.

*If a magnitude (a) be the same multiple of another (b), which a magnitude (a') taken from the first is of a magnitude (b') taken from the second, the remainder is the same multiple of the remainder that the whole is of the whole (compare Proposition I.).*

**Dem.**—Let  $m$  denote the multiples which the magnitudes  $a, a'$  are of  $b, b'$ ; then we have

$$a = mb,$$

$$a' = mb'.$$

Hence  $(a - a') = m(b - b').$

PROP. A.—THEOREM (SIMSON).

*If two ratios be equal, then according as the antecedent of the first ratio is greater than, equal to, or less than its consequent, the antecedent of the second ratio is greater than, equal to, or less than its consequent.*

**Dem.**—Let  $a : b :: c : d$ ;  
then  $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$ ;  
and if  $a$  be greater than  $b$ ,  $\frac{a}{b}$  is greater than unity; therefore  $\frac{c}{d}$  is greater than unity, and  $c$  is greater than  $d$ .

In like manner, if  $a$  be equal to  $b$ ,  $c$  is equal to  $d$ , and if less, less.

PROP. B.—THEOREM (SIMSON).

*If two ratios are equal their reciprocals are equal (invertendo).*

Let  $a : b :: c : d$ , then  $b : a :: d : c$ .

**Dem.**—Since  $a : b :: c : d$ ;  
then  $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$ ;  
therefore  $1 \div \frac{a}{b} = 1 \div \frac{c}{d}$ ,  
or  $\frac{b}{a} = \frac{d}{c}$   
Hence  $b : a :: d : c$ .

PROP. C.—THEOREM (SIMSON).

*If the first of four magnitudes be the same multiple of the second which the third is of the fourth, the first is to the second as the third is to the fourth.*

Let  $a = mb, c = md$ ; then  $a : b :: c : d$ .

**Dem.**—Since  $a = mb$ , we have  $\frac{a}{b} = m$ .

In like manner,  $\frac{c}{d} = m$ ; therefore  $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$ .

Hence

$$a : b :: c : d.$$

PROP. D.—THEOREM (SIMSON).

*If the first be to the second as to the third is to the fourth, and if the first be a multiple or submultiple of the second, the third is the same multiple or submultiple of the fourth.*

1. Let  $a : b :: c : d$ , and let  $a$  be a multiple of  $b$ , then  $c$  is the same multiple of  $d$ .

**Dem.**—Let  $a = mb$ , then  $\frac{a}{b} = m$ ;

but  $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$ ; therefore  $\frac{c}{d} = m$ , and  $c = md$ .

2. Let  $a = \frac{b}{n}$ , then  $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{1}{n}$ ;

therefore

$$\frac{c}{d} = \frac{1}{n},$$

Hence

$$c = \frac{d}{n}.$$

PROP. VII.—THEOREM.

1. *Equal magnitudes have equal ratios to the same magnitude.*
2. *The same magnitude has equal ratios to equal magnitudes.*

Let  $a$  and  $b$  be equal magnitudes, and  $c$  any other magnitude.

Then 1.  $a : c :: b : c$ ,

2.  $c : a :: c : b$ .

**Dem.**—Since  $a = b$ , dividing each by  $c$ , we have

$$\frac{a}{c} = \frac{b}{c};$$

therefore

$$a : c :: b : c.$$

Again, since  $a = b$ , dividing  $c$  by each, we have

$$\frac{c}{a} = \frac{c}{b};$$

therefore

$$c : a :: c : b.$$

*Observation.*—2 follows at once from 1 by Proposition B.

#### PROP. VIII.—THEOREM.

1. *Of two unequal magnitudes, the greater has a greater ratio to any third magnitude than the less has;*
2. *any third magnitude has a greater ratio to the less of two unequal magnitudes than it has to the greater.*

1. Let  $a$  be greater than  $b$ , and let  $c$  be any other magnitude of the same kind, then the ratio  $a : c$  is greater than the ratio  $b : c$ .

**Dem.**—Since  $a$  is greater than  $b$ , dividing each by  $c$ ,

$$\frac{a}{c} \text{ is greater than } \frac{b}{c};$$

therefore the ratio  $a : c$  is greater than the ratio  $b : c$ .

2. To prove that the ratio  $c : b$  is greater than the ratio  $c : a$ .

**Dem.**—Since  $b$  is less than  $a$ , the quotient which is the result of dividing any magnitude by  $b$  is greater than the quotient which is got by dividing the same magnitude by  $a$ ;

therefore

$$\frac{c}{b} \text{ is greater than } \frac{c}{a}.$$

Hence the ratio  $c : b$  is greater than the ratio  $c : a$ .

#### PROP. IX.—THEOREM.

1. *Magnitudes which have equal ratios to the same magnitude are equal to one another;*
2. *magnitudes to which the same magnitude has equal ratios are equal to one another.*

1. If  $a : c :: b : c$ , to prove  $a = b$ .

**Dem.**—Since

$$a : c :: b : c,$$

$$\frac{a}{c} = \frac{b}{c}.$$

Hence, multiplying each by  $c$ , we get  $a = b$ .

2. If  $c : a :: c : b$ , to prove  $a = b$ .

**Dem.**—Since

$$c : a :: c : b,$$

by inversion,

$$a : c :: b : c;$$

therefore

$$a = b. \quad [1].$$

PROP. X.—THEOREM.

*Of two unequal magnitudes, that which has the greater ratio to any third is the greater of the two; and that to which any third has the greater ratio is the less of the two.*

1. If the ratio  $a : c$  be greater than the ratio  $b : c$ , to prove  $a$  greater than  $b$ .

**Dem.**—Since the ratio  $a : c$  is greater than the ratio  $b : c$ ,

$$\frac{a}{c} \text{ is greater than } \frac{b}{c}.$$

Hence, multiplying each by  $c$ , we get  $a$  greater than  $b$ .

2. If the ratio  $c : b$  is greater than the ratio  $c : a$ , to prove  $b$  is less than  $a$ .

**Dem.**—Since the ratio  $c : b$  is greater than the ratio  $c : a$ ,

$$\frac{c}{b} \text{ is greater than } \frac{c}{a}.$$

Hence  $1 \div \frac{c}{b}$  is less than  $1 \div \frac{c}{a}$ ,

that is,  $\frac{b}{c}$  is less than  $\frac{a}{c}$ .

Hence, multiplying each by  $c$ , we get

$$b \text{ less than } a.$$

PROP. XI.—THEOREM.

*Ratios that are equal to the same ratio are equal to one another.*

Let  $a : b :: e : f$ , and  $c : d :: e : f$ , to prove  $a : b :: c : d$ .

**Dem.**—Since  $a : b :: e : f$ ,

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{e}{f}.$$

In like manner,

$$\frac{c}{d} = \frac{e}{f}.$$

Hence

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d} \quad [\text{I., Axiom I.}],$$

and

$$a : b :: c : d.$$

PROP. XII.—THEOREM.

*If any number of ratios be equal to one another, any one of these equal ratios is equal to the ratio of the sum of all the antecedents to the sum of all the consequents.*

Let the ratios  $a : b$ ,  $c : d$ ,  $e : f$ , be all equal to one another; it is required to prove that any of these ratios is equal to the ratio  $a + c + e : b + d + f$ .

**Dem.**—By hypotheses,

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d} = \frac{e}{f}.$$

Since these fractions are all equal, let their common value be  $r$ ; then we have

$$\frac{a}{b} = r, \quad \frac{c}{d} = r, \quad \frac{e}{f} = r;$$

therefore

$$a = br,$$

$$c = dr,$$

$$e = fr;$$

therefore

$$a + c + e = (b + d + f)r.$$

Hence

$$\frac{a + c + e}{b + d + f} = r;$$

therefore

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{a + c + e}{b + d + f},$$

and

$$a : b :: a + c + e : b + d + f.$$

*Cor.*—With the same hypotheses, if  $l$ ,  $m$ ,  $n$  be any three multipliers,  $a : b :: la + mc + ne : lb + md + nf$ .

PROP. XIII.—THEOREM.

*If two ratios are equal, and if one of them be greater than any third ratio, then the other is also greater than that third ratio.*

If  $a : b :: c : d$ , but the ratio of  $c : d$  greater than the ratio of  $e : f$ ; then the ratio of  $a : b$  is greater than the ratio of  $e : f$ .

**Dem.**—Since the ratio of  $c : d$  is greater than the ratio of  $e : f$ ,

$$\frac{c}{d} \text{ is greater than } \frac{e}{f}.$$

Again, since

$$a : b :: c : d,$$

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d};$$

therefore

$$\frac{a}{b} \text{ is greater than } \frac{e}{f}.$$

or the ratio of  $a : b$  is greater than the ratio of  $e : f$ .

PROP. XIV.—THEOREM.

*If two ratios be equal, then, according as the antecedent of the first ratio is greater than, equal to, or less than the antecedent of the second, the consequent of the first is greater than, equal to, or less than the consequent of the second.*

Let  $a : b :: c : d$ ; then if  $a$  be greater than  $c$ ,  $b$  is greater than  $d$ ; if equal, equal; if less, less.

**Dem.**—Since

$$a : b :: c : d.$$

we have

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d},$$

and multiplying each by  $\frac{b}{c}$  we get

$$\frac{a}{b} \times \frac{b}{c} = \frac{c}{d} \times \frac{b}{c},$$

or

$$\frac{a}{c} = \frac{b}{d};$$

therefore

$$a : c :: b : d.$$

Hence, Proposition [A], if  $a$  be greater than  $c$ ,  $b$  is greater than  $d$ ; if equal, equal; and if less, less.

PROP. XV.—THEOREM.

*Magnitudes have the same ratio which all equimultiples of them have.*

Let  $a, b$  be two magnitudes, then the ratio  $a : b$  is equal to the ratio  $ma : mb$ .

**Dem.**—The ratio  $a : b = \frac{a}{b}$ , and the ratio of  $ma : mb = \frac{ma}{mb}$ ; but since the value of a fraction is not altered by multiplying its numerator and denominator by the same number,

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{ma}{mb};$$

therefore

$$a : b :: ma : mb.$$

PROP. XVI—THEOREM.

*If four magnitudes of the same kind be proportionals they are also proportionals by alternation (alternando).*

Let  $a : b :: c : d$ , then  $a : c :: b : d$ .

**Dem.**—Since

$$a : b :: c : d,$$

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d},$$

and multiplying each by  $\frac{b}{c}$ , we get

$$\frac{a}{b} \cdot \frac{b}{c} = \frac{c}{d} \cdot \frac{b}{c},$$

or

$$\frac{a}{c} = \frac{b}{d};$$

therefore

$$a : c :: b : d.$$

#### PROP. XVII.—THEOREM.

*If four magnitudes be proportional, the difference between the first and second : the second :: the difference between the third and fourth : the fourth (dividendo).*

Let

$$a : b :: c : d; \text{ then } a - b : b :: c - d : d;$$

**Dem.**—Since

$$a : b :: c : d,$$

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d};$$

therefore

$$\frac{a}{b} - 1 = \frac{c}{d} - 1,$$

or

$$\frac{a - b}{b} = \frac{c - d}{d};$$

therefore

$$a - b : b :: c - d : d.$$

#### PROP. XVIII.—THEOREM.

*If four magnitudes be proportionals, the sum of the first and second : the second :: the sum of the third and fourth : the fourth (componendo).*

Let

$$a : b :: c : d; \text{ then } a + b : b :: c + d : d.$$

**Dem.**—Since

$$a : b :: c : d,$$

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d};$$

therefore

$$\frac{a}{b} + 1 = \frac{c}{d} + 1,$$

or

$$\frac{a + b}{b} = \frac{c + d}{d};$$

therefore

$$a + b : b :: c + d : d.$$

PROP. XIX.—THEOREM.

*If a whole magnitude be to another whole at a magnitude taken from the first it to a magnitude taken from the second, the first remainder : the second remainder :: the first whole : the second whole.*

Let  $a : b :: c : d$ ,  $c$  and  $d$  being less than  $a$  and  $b$ ;  
then  $a - c : b - d :: a : b$ .

**Dem.**—Since  $a : b :: c : d$ ,  
then  $a : c :: b : d$  [*alternando*],  
and  $c : a :: d : b$  [*invertendo*];  
therefore  $\frac{c}{a} = \frac{d}{b}$ ,  
and  $1 - \frac{c}{a} = 1 - \frac{d}{b}$ ,  
or  $\frac{a - c}{a} = \frac{b - d}{b}$ .  
Hence  $a - c : b - d :: a : b$ .

PROP. E.—THEOREM (SIMSON).

*If four magnitudes be proportional, the first : its excess above the second :: the third : its excess above the fourth (*convertendo*).*

Let  $a : b :: c : d$ ; then  $a : a - b :: c : c - d$ .

**Dem.**—Since  $a : b :: c : d$ ,  
 $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$ ;  
therefore  $\frac{a - b}{b} = \frac{c - d}{d}$  [Dem. of XVII.],  
therefore  $\frac{a}{b} \div \frac{a - b}{b} = \frac{c}{d} \div \frac{c - d}{d}$ ,  
or  $\frac{a}{a - b} = \frac{c}{c - d}$ ,  
therefore  $a : a - b :: c : c - d$ .

PROP. XX.—THEOREM.

*If there be two sets of three magnitudes, which taken two by two in direct order have equal ratios, then if the first of either set be greater than the third, the first of the other set is greater than the third; if equal, equal; and if less, less.*

Let  $a, b, c; a', b', c'$  be the two sets of magnitudes, and let the ratio  $a : b = a' : b'$ , and  $b : c = b' : c'$ ; then, if  $a$  be greater than, equal to, or less than  $c$ ,  $a'$  will be greater than, equal to, or less than  $c'$ .

**Dem.**—Since

$$a : b :: a' : b',$$

we have

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{a'}{b'},$$

In like manner,

$$\frac{b}{c} = \frac{b'}{c'},$$

Hence

$$\frac{a}{b} \times \frac{b}{c} = \frac{a'}{b'} \times \frac{b'}{c'},$$

or

$$\frac{a}{c} = \frac{a'}{c'}.$$

*Therefore if  $a$  be greater than  $c$ ,  $a'$  is greater than  $c'$ ; if equal, equal; and if less, less.*

#### PROP. XXI.—THEOREM.

*If there be two sets of three magnitudes, which taken two by two in transverse order have equal ratios; then, if the first of either set be greater than the third, the first of the other set is greater than the third; if equal, equal; and if less, less.*

Let  $a, b, c; a', b', c'$  be the two sets of magnitudes, and let the ratio  $a : b = b' : c'$ , and  $b : c = a' : b'$ . Then, if  $a$  be greater than, equal to, or less than  $c$ ,  $a'$  will be greater than, equal to, or less than  $c'$ .

**Dem.**—Since

$$a : b :: b' : c',$$

we have

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{b'}{c'}.$$

In like manner,

$$\frac{b}{c} = \frac{a'}{b'}.$$

Hence, multiplying

$$\frac{a}{c} = \frac{a'}{c'}.$$

*Therefore, if  $a$  be greater than  $c$ ,  $a'$  is greater than  $c'$ ; if equal, equal; if less, less.*

#### PROP. XXII.—THEOREM.

*If there be two sets of magnitudes, which, taken two by two in direct order, have equal ratios, then the first : the last of the first set :: the first : the last of the second set (“ex aequali,” or “ex aequo”).*

Let  $a, b, c; a', b', c'$  be the two sets of magnitudes, and if  $a : b :: a' : b'$ , and  $b : c :: b' : c'$ , then  $a : c :: a' : c'$ .

**Dem.**—Since  $a : b :: a' : b'$ ,

we have

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{a'}{b'}$$

In like manner,

$$\frac{b}{c} = \frac{b'}{c'}$$

Hence, multiplying,

$$\frac{a}{c} = \frac{a'}{c'}$$

Therefore

$$a : c :: a' : c',$$

and similarly for any number of magnitudes in each set.

*Cor.* 1.—If the ratio  $b : c$  be equal to the ratio  $a : b$ , then  $a, b, c$  will be in continued proportion, and so will  $a', b', c'$ . Hence [Def. XII. Annotation 3],

$$\frac{a}{c} = \frac{a^2}{b^2} \text{ and } \frac{a'}{c'} = \frac{a'^2}{b'^2};$$

but

$$\frac{a}{c} = \frac{a'}{c'}$$

[XXII.]

Therefore

$$\frac{a^2}{b^2} = \frac{a'^2}{b'^2}.$$

Hence, if

$$a : b :: a' : b',$$

$$a^2 : b^2 :: a'^2 : b'^2$$

*Or if four magnitudes be proportional, their squares are proportional.*

*Cor.* 2.—If four magnitudes be proportional, their cubes are proportional.

### PROP. XXIII.—THEOREM.

*If there be two sets of magnitudes, which, taken two by two in transverse order, have equal ratios; then the first : the last of the first set :: the first : the last of the second set (“ex aequo perturbato”).*

Let  $a, b, c; a', b', c'$  be the two sets of magnitudes, and let the ratio  $a : b = b' : c'$ , and  $b : c = a' : b'$ ; then  $a : c :: a' : c'$ .

**Dem.**—Since  $a : b :: b' : c'$ ,

we have

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{b'}{c'}.$$

In like manner,

$$\frac{b}{c} = \frac{a'}{b'}.$$

Hence, multiplying,

$$\frac{a}{c} = \frac{a'}{c'};$$

therefore

$$a : c :: a' : c',$$

and similarly for any number of magnitudes in each set.

This Proposition and the preceding one may be included in one enunciation, thus: "*Ratios compounded of equal ratios are equal.*"

#### PROP. XXIV.—THEOREM.

*If two magnitudes of the same kind ( $a, b$ ) have to a third magnitude ( $c$ ) ratios equal to those which two other magnitudes ( $a', b'$ ) have to a third ( $c'$ ), then the sum ( $a + b$ ) of the first two has the same ratio to their third ( $c$ ) which the sum ( $a' + b'$ ) of the other two magnitudes has to their third ( $c'$ ).*

**Dem.**—Since

$$a : c :: a' : c',$$

we have

$$\frac{a}{c} = \frac{a'}{c'}.$$

In like manner,

$$\frac{b}{c} = \frac{b'}{c'};$$

therefore, adding,

$$\frac{a+b}{c} = \frac{a'+b'}{c'}.$$

Hence

$$a+b : c :: a'+b' : c'.$$

#### PROP. XXV.—THEOREM.

*If four magnitudes of the same kind be proportionals, the sum of the greatest and least is greater than the sum of the other two.*

Let  $a : b :: c : d$ ; then, if  $a$  be the greatest,  $d$  will be the least [XIV. and A]. It is required to prove that  $a+d$  is greater than  $b+c$ .

**Dem.**—Since

$$a : b :: c : d,$$

$$a : c :: b : d \text{ [alternando];}$$

therefore

$$a : a-c :: b : b-d \text{ [E].;}$$

but

$a$  is greater than  $b$  (hyp.),

therefore

$$a-c \text{ is greater than } b-d \quad [\text{XIV.}].$$

Hence

$$a+d \text{ is greater than } b+c.$$

#### Questions for Examination on Book V.

1. What is the subject-matter of this book?
2. When is one magnitude said to be a multiple of another?
3. What is a submultiple or measure?
4. What are equimultiples?
5. What is the ratio of two commensurable magnitudes?
6. What is meant by the ratio of incommensurable magnitudes?
7. Give an Illustration of the ratio of incommensurables.
8. What are the terms of a ratio called?

9. What is a ratio of greater inequality?
  10. What is a ratio of lesser inequality?
  11. What is the product of two ratios called? *Ans.* The ratio compounded of these ratios.
  12. What is *duplicate ratio*?
  13. What is Euclid's definition of duplicate ratio?
  14. Give another definition.
  15. Define triplicate ratio.
  16. What is proportion? *Ans.* equality of ratios.
  17. Give Euclid's definition of proportion.
  18. How many ratios in a proportion?
  19. What are the Latin terms in use to denote some of the Propositions of Book V.?
  20. When is a line divided harmonically?
  21. When a line is divided harmonically, what are corresponding pairs of points called?
- Ans.* Harmonic conjugates.
22. What are reciprocal ratios?
  23. Give one enunciation that will include Propositions XXII., XXIII. of Book V.

#### Exercises on Book V.

DEF. I.—A ratio whose antecedent is greater than its consequent is called *a ratio of greater inequality*; and a ratio whose antecedent is less than its consequent, *a ratio of lesser inequality*.

DEF. II.—A right line is said to be cut *harmonically* when it is divided internally and externally in any ratios that are equal in magnitude.

1. A ratio of greater inequality is increased by diminishing its terms by the same quantity, and diminished by increasing its terms by the same quantity.
2. A ratio of lesser inequality is diminished by diminishing its terms by the same quantity, and increased by increasing its terms by the same quantity.
3. If four magnitudes be proportionals, the sum of the first and second is to their difference as the sum of the third and fourth is to their difference (*componendo et dividendo*).
4. If two sets of four magnitudes be proportionals, and if we multiply corresponding terms together, the products are proportionals.
5. If two sets of four magnitudes be proportionals, and if we divide corresponding terms, the quotients are proportionals.
6. If four magnitudes be proportionals, their squares, cubes, &c., are proportionals.
7. If two proportions have three terms of one respectively equal to three corresponding terms of the other, the remaining term of the first is equal to the remaining term of the second.
8. If three magnitudes be continual proportionals, the first is to the third as the square of the difference between the first and second is to the square of the difference between the second and third.
9. If a line  $AB$ , cut harmonically in  $C$  and  $D$ , be bisected in  $O$ ; prove  $OC, OB, OD$  are continual proportionals.
10. In the same case, if  $O'$  be the middle point of  $CD$ ; prove  $OO'^2 = OB^2 + O'D^2$ .
11. And  $AB(AC + AD) = 2AC \cdot AD$ , or  $\frac{1}{AC} + \frac{1}{AD} = \frac{2}{AB}$ .
12. And  $CD(AD + BD) = 2AD \cdot BD$ , or  $\frac{1}{BD} + \frac{1}{AD} = \frac{2}{CD}$ .
13. And  $AB \cdot CD = 2AD \cdot CB$ .

## BOOK VI.

### APPLICATION OF THE THEORY OF PROPORTION

---

#### DEFINITIONS.

I. *Similar Rectilineal Figures* are those whose several angles are equal, each to each, and whose sides about the equal angles are proportional.

Similar figures agree in shape; if they agree also in size, they are congruent.

1. When the shape of a figure is given, it is said to be given in *species*. Thus a triangle whose angles are given is given in species. Hence similar figures are of the same species.

2. When the size of a figure is given, it is said to be given in *magnitude*; for instance, a square whose side is of given length.

3. When the place which a figure occupies is known, it is said to be given in *position*.

II. A right line is said to be cut at a point in extreme and mean ratio when the whole line is to the greater segment as the greater segment is to the less.

III. If three quantities of the same kind be in continued proportion, the middle term is called a *mean proportional* between the other two.

Magnitudes in continued proportion are also said to be in *geometrical progression*.

IV. If four quantities of the same kind be in continued proportion, the two middle terms are called two *mean proportionals* between the other two.

v. The *altitude* of any figure is the length of the perpendicular from its highest point to its base.

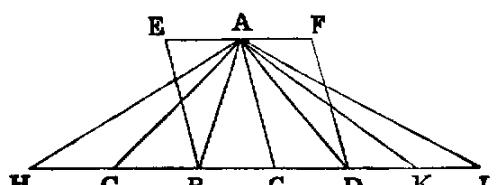
VI. Two corresponding angles of two figures have the sides about them reciprocally proportional, when a side of the first is to a side of the second as the remaining side of the second is to the remaining side of the first.

This is evidently equivalent to saying that a side of the first is to a side of the second in the reciprocal ratio of the remaining side of the first to the remaining side of the second.

#### PROP. I.—THEOREM.

*Triangles (ABC, ACD) and parallelograms (EC, CF) which have the same altitude are to one another as their bases (BC, CD).*

**Dem.**—Produce  $BD$  both ways, and cut off any number of parts  $BG, GH, \dots$ , each equal to  $CB$ , and any number  $DK, KL, \dots$ , each equal to  $CD$ . Join  $AG, AH, AK, AL$ .



Now, since the several bases  $CB, BG, GH$  are all equal, the triangles  $ACB, ABG, AGH$  are also all equal [I. xxxviii.]. Therefore the triangle  $ACH$  is the same multiple of  $ACB$  that the base  $CH$  is of the base  $CB$ . In like manner,

the triangle  $ACL$  is the same multiple of  $ACD$  that the base  $CL$  is of the base  $CD$ ; and it is evident that [I. xxxviii.] if the base  $HC$  be greater than  $CL$ , the triangle  $HAC$  is greater than  $CAL$ ; if equal, equal; and if less, less. Now we have four magnitudes: the base  $BC$  is the first, the base  $CD$  the second, the triangle  $ABC$  the third, and the triangle  $ACD$  the fourth. We have taken equimultiples of the first and third, namely, the base  $CH$ , and the triangle  $ACH$ ; also equimultiples of the second and fourth, namely, the base  $CL$ , and the triangle  $ACL$ ; and we have proved that according as the multiple of the first is greater than, equal to, or less than the multiple of the second, the multiple of the third is greater than, equal to, or less than the multiple of the fourth. Hence [V. Def. v.] the base  $BC : CD ::$  the triangle  $ABC : ACD$ .

2. The parallelogram  $EC$  is double of the triangle  $ABC$  [I. xxxiv.], and the parallelogram  $CF$  is double of the triangle  $ACD$ . Hence [V. xv.]  $EC : CF ::$  the triangle  $ABC : ACD$ ; but  $ABC : ACD :: BC : CD$  (Part I.). Therefore [V. xi.]  $EC : CF ::$  the base  $BC : CD$ .

Or thus: Let  $A$ ,  $A'$  denote the areas of the triangles  $ABC$ ,  $ACD$ , respectively, and  $P$  their common altitude; then [II. I., Cor. 1],

$$A = \frac{1}{2}P \cdot BC, \quad A' = \frac{1}{2}P \cdot CD.$$

Hence

$$\frac{A}{A'} = \frac{BC}{CD}, \text{ or } A : A' :: BC : CD.$$

In extending this proof to parallelograms we have only to use  $P$  instead of  $\frac{1}{2}P$ .

## PROP. II.—THEOREM.

If a line ( $DE$ ) be parallel to a side ( $BC$ ) of a triangle ( $ABC$ ), it divides the remaining sides, measured from the opposite angle ( $A$ ), proportionally; and, conversely, If two sides of a triangle, measured from an angle, be cut proportionally, the line joining the points of section is parallel to the third side.

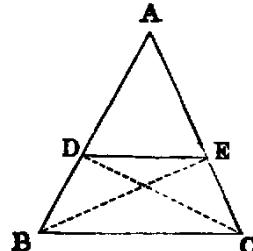
1. It is required to prove that  $AD : DB :: AE : EC$ .

**Dem.**—Join  $BE$ ,  $CD$ . The triangles  $BDE$ ,  $CED$  are on the same base  $DE$ , and between the same parallels  $BC$ ,  $DE$ . Hence [I. xxxvii.] they are equal, and therefore [V. vii.] the triangle  $ADE$  :  $BDE :: ADE : CDE$ ;

but  $ADE : BDE :: AD : DB$  [I.],

and  $ADE : CDE :: AE : EC$  [I.].

Hence  $AD : DB :: AE : EC$ .



2. If  $AD : DB :: AE : EC$ , it is required to prove that  $DE$  is parallel to  $BC$ .

**Dem.**—Let the same construction be made;

then  $AD : DB ::$  the triangle  $ADE$  :  $BDE$  [I.].

and  $AE : EC ::$  the triangle  $ADE$  :  $CDE$  [I.];

but  $AD : DB :: AE : EC$  (hyp.).

Hence  $ADE : BDE :: ADE : CDE$ .

Therefore [V. ix.] the triangle  $BDE$  is equal to  $CDE$ , and they are on the same base  $DE$ , and on the same side of it; hence they are between the same parallels [I. xxxix.]. *Therefore DE is parallel to BC.*

**Observation.**—The line  $DE$  may cut the sides  $AB$ ,  $AC$  produced through  $B$ ,  $C$ , or through the angle  $A$ ; but evidently a separate figure for each of these cases is unnecessary.

### Exercise.

If two lines be cut by three or more parallels, the intercepts on one are proportional to the corresponding intercepts on the other.

### PROP. III.—THEOREM.

*If a line (AD) bisect any angle (A) of a triangle (ABC), it divides the opposite side (BC) into segments proportional to the adjacent sides. Conversely, If the segments (BD, DC) into which a line (AD) drawn from any angle (A) of a triangle divides the opposite side be proportional to the adjacent sides, that line bisects the angle (A).*

**Dem.**—1. Through  $C$  draw  $CE$  parallel to  $AD$ , to meet  $BA$  produced in  $E$ . Because  $BA$  meets the parallels  $AD$ ,  $EC$ , the angle  $BAD$  [I. xxix.] is equal to  $AEC$ ; and because  $AC$  meets the parallels  $AD$ ,  $EC$ , the angle  $DAC$  is equal to  $ACE$ ; but the angle  $BAD$  is equal to  $DAC$  (hyp.); therefore the angle  $ACE$  is equal to  $AEC$ ; therefore  $AE$  is equal to  $AC$  [I. vi.]. Again, because  $AD$  is parallel to  $EC$ , one of the sides of the triangle  $BEC$ ,  $BD : DC :: BA : AE$  [ii.]; but  $AE$  has been proved equal to  $AC$ . *Therefore  $BD : DC :: BA : AC$ .*

2. If  $BD : DC :: BA : AC$ , the angle  $BAC$  is bisected.

**Dem.**—Let the same construction be made.

Because  $AD$  is parallel to  $EC$ ,  $BA : AE :: BD : DC$  [ii.]; but  $BD : DC :: BA : AC$  (hyp.). Therefore [V. xi.]  $BA : AE :: BA : AC$ , and hence [V. ix.]  $AE$  is equal to  $AC$ ; therefore the angle  $AEC$  is equal to  $ACE$ ; but  $AEC$  is equal to  $BAD$  [I. xxix.], and  $ACE$  to  $DAC$ ; hence  $BAD$  is equal to  $DAC$ , and the line  $AD$  bisects the angle  $BAC$ .

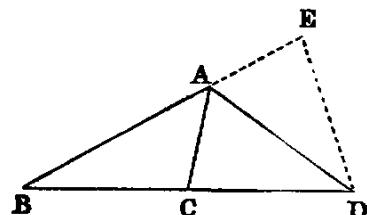
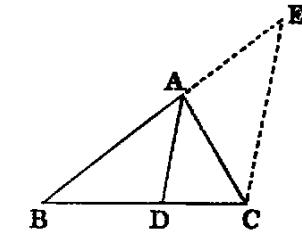
### Exercises.

1. If the line  $AD$  bisect the external vertical angle  $CAE$ ,  $BA : AC :: BD : DC$ , and conversely.

**Dem.**—Cut off  $AE = AC$ . Join  $ED$ . Then the triangles  $ACD$ ,  $AED$  are evidently congruent; therefore the angle  $EDB$  is bisected; hence [iii.]  $BA : AE :: BD : DE$ ; or  $BA : AC :: BD : DC$ .

2. Exercise 1 has been proved by quoting Proposition III. Prove it independently, and prove III. as an inference from it.

3. The internal and the external bisectors of the vertical angle of a triangle divide the base harmonically (see Definition, p. 191).



4. Any line intersecting the legs of any angle is cut harmonically by the internal and external bisectors of the angle.

5. Any line intersecting the legs of a right angle is cut harmonically by any two lines through its vertex which make equal angles with either of its sides.

6. If the base of a triangle be given in magnitude and position, and the ratio of the sides, the locus of the vertex is a circle which divides the base harmonically in the ratio of the sides.

7. If  $a, b, c$  denote the sides of a triangle  $ABC$ , and  $D, D'$  the points where the internal and external bisectors of  $A$  meet  $BC$ ; prove

$$DD' = \frac{2abc}{b^2 - c^2}.$$

8. In the same case, if  $E, E', F, F'$  be points similarly determined on the sides  $CA, AB$ , respectively; prove

$$\frac{1}{DD'} + \frac{1}{EE'} + \frac{1}{FF'} = 0,$$

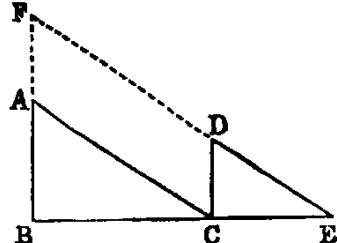
and  $\frac{a^2}{DD'} + \frac{b^2}{EE'} + \frac{c^2}{FF'} = 0$ .

#### PROP. IV.—THEOREM.

*The sides about the equal angles of equiangular triangles ( $BAC, CDE$ ) are proportional, and those which are opposite to the equal angles are homologous.*

**Dem.**—Let the sides  $BC, CE$ , which are opposite to the equal angles  $A$  and  $D$ , be conceived to be placed so as to form one continuous line, the triangles being on the same side, and so that the equal angles  $BCA, CED$  may not have a common vertex.

Now, the sum of the angles  $ABC, BCA$  is less than two right angles; but  $BCA$  is equal to  $BED$  (hyp.). Therefore the sum of the angles  $ABE, BED$  is less than two right angles; hence [I., Axiom XII.] the lines  $AB, ED$  will meet if produced. Let them meet in  $F$ . Again, because the angle  $BCA$  is equal to  $BEF$ , the line  $CA$  [I. xxviii.] is parallel to  $EF$ . In like manner,  $BF$  is parallel to  $CD$ ; therefore the figure  $ACDF$  is a parallelogram; hence  $AC$  is equal to  $DF$ , and  $CD$  is equal to  $AF$ . Now, because  $AC$  is parallel to  $FE$ ,  $BA : AF :: BC : CE$  [II.]; but  $AF$  is equal to  $CD$ , therefore  $BA : CD :: BC : CE$ ; hence [V. XVI.];  $AB : BC :: DC : CE$ . Again, because  $CD$  is parallel to  $BF$ ,  $BC : CE :: FD : DE$ ; but  $FD$  is equal to  $AC$ , therefore  $BC : CE :: AC : DE$ ; hence [V. XVI.]  $BC : AC :: CE : DE$ . Therefore we have proved that  $AB : BC :: DC : CE$ , and that  $BC : CA :: CE : ED$ . Hence (*ex aequali*)  $AB : AC :: DC : DE$ . *Therefore the sides about the equal angles are proportional.*



This Proposition may also be proved very simply by superposition. Thus (see fig., Prop. II.): let the two triangles be  $ABC, ADE$ ; let the second triangle  $ADE$  be conceived to be placed on  $ABC$ , so that its two sides  $AD, AE$  may fall on the sides  $AB, AC$ ; then, since the angle  $ADE$  is equal to  $ABC$ , the side  $DE$  is parallel to  $BC$ . Hence [II.]  $AD : DB :: AE : EC$ ; hence  $AD : AB :: AE : AC$ , and [V. XVI.]  $AD : AE :: AB : AC$ . *Therefore the sides about the equal angles  $BAC, DAE$  are proportional, and similarly for the others.*

It can be proved by this Proposition that two lines which meet at infinity are parallel. For, let  $I$  denote the point at infinity through which the two given lines pass, and draw any two parallels intersecting them in the points  $A, B; A', B'$ ; then the triangles  $AIB, A'IB'$  are equiangular; therefore  $AI : AB :: A'I : A'B'$ ; but the first term of the proportion is equal to the third; therefore [V. xiv.] the second term  $AB$  is equal to the fourth  $A'B'$ , and, being parallel to it, the lines  $AA', BB'$  [I. xxxiii.] are parallel.

### Exercises.

1. If two circles intercept equal chords  $AB, A'B'$  on any secant, the tangents  $AT, A'T$  to the circles at the points of intersection are to one another as the radii of the circles.
2. If two circles intercept on any secant chords that have a given ratio, the tangents to the circles at the points of intersection have a given ratio, namely, the ratio compounded of the direct ratio of the radii and the inverse ratio of the chords.
3. Being given a circle and a line, prove that a point may be found, such that the rectangle of the perpendiculars let fall on the line from the points of intersection of the circle with any chord through the point shall be given.
4.  $AB$  is the diameter of a semicircle  $ADB$ ;  $CD$  a perpendicular to  $AB$ ; draw through  $A$  a chord  $AF$  of the semicircle meeting  $CD$  in  $E$ , so that the ratio  $CE : EF$  may be given.

### PROP. V.—THEOREM.

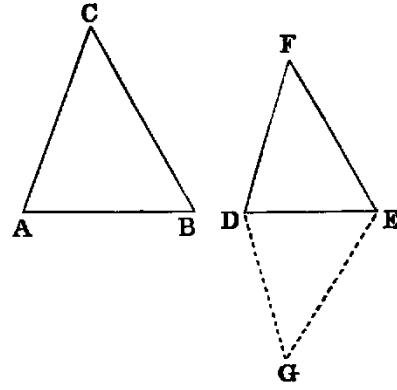
*If two triangles ( $ABC, DEF$ ) have their sides proportional ( $BA : AC :: ED : DF; AC : CB :: DF : FE$ ) they are equiangular, and those angles are equal which are subtended by the homologous sides.*

**Dem.**—At the points  $D, E$  make the angles  $EDG, DEG$  equal to the angles  $A, B$  of the triangle  $ABC$ . Then [I. xxxii.] the triangles  $ABC, DEG$  are equiangular.

Therefore  $BA : AC :: ED : DG$  [iv.];  
but  $BA : AC :: ED : DF$  (hyp.).

Therefore  $DG$  is equal to  $DF$ . In like manner it may be proved that  $EG$  is equal to  $EF$ . Hence the triangles  $EDF, EDG$  have the sides  $ED, DF$  in one equal to the sides  $ED, DG$  in the other, and the base  $EF$  equal to the base  $EG$ . Hence [I. viii.] they are equiangular; but the triangle  $DEG$  is equiangular to  $ABC$ . Therefore the triangle  $DEF$  is equiangular to  $ABC$ .

**Observation.**—In VI. Def. i. two conditions are laid down as necessary for the similitude of rectilineal figures. 1. The equality of angles; 2. The proportionality of sides. Now, from Propositions iv. and v., we see that if two triangles possess either condition, they also possess the other. Triangles are unique in this respect. In all other rectilineal figures one of the conditions may exist without the other. Thus, two quadrilaterals may have their sides proportional without having equal angles, or *vice versa*.



PROP. VI.—THEOREM.

*If two triangles (ABC, DEF) have one angle (A) in one equal to one angle (D) in the other, and the sides about these angles proportional ( $BA : AC :: ED : DF$ ), the triangles are equiangular, and have those angles equal which are opposite to the homologous sides.*

**Dem.**—Make the same construction as in the last Proposition; then the triangles ABC, DEG are equiangular.

Therefore

$$BA : AC :: ED : DG \text{ [iv.];}$$

but

$$BA : AC :: ED : DF \text{ (hyp.).}$$

Therefore DG is equal to DF. Again, because the angle EDG is equal to BAC (const.), and BAC equal to EDF (hyp.), the angle EDG is equal to EDF; and it has been proved that DG is equal to DF, and DE is common; hence the triangles EDG and EDF are equiangular; but EDG is equiangular to BAC. *Therefore EDF is equiangular to BAC.*

[It is easy to see, as in the case of Proposition IV., that an immediate proof of this Proposition can also be got from Proposition II.].

**Cor. 1.**—If the ratio of two sides of a triangle be given, and the angle between them, the triangle is given in species.

PROP. VII.—THEOREM.

*If two triangles (ABC, DEF) have one angle (A) one equal to one angle (D) in the other, the sides about two other angles (B, E) proportional ( $AB : BC :: DE : EF$ ), and the remaining angles (C, F) of the same species (i. e. either both acute or both not acute), the triangles are similar.*

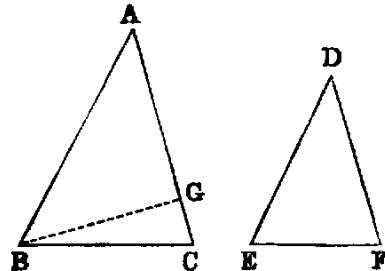
**Dem.**—If the angles B and E are not equal, one must be greater than the other. Suppose ABC to be the greater, and that the part ABG is equal to DEF, then the triangles ABG, DEF have two angles in one equal to two angles in the other, and are [I. XXXII.] equiangular.

Therefore

$$AB : BG :: DE : EF \text{ [IV.];}$$

but

$$AB : BC :: DE : EF \text{ (hyp.).}$$



Therefore BG is equal to BC. Hence the angles BCG, BGC must be each acute [I. XVII.]; therefore AGB must be obtuse; hence DFE, which is equal to it, is obtuse; and it has been proved that ACB is acute; therefore the angles ACB, DFE are of different species; but (hyp.) they are of the same species, which is absurd. Hence the angles B and E are not unequal, that is, they are equal. *Therefore the triangles are equiangular.*

*Cor.* 1.—If two triangles  $ABC$ ,  $DEF$  have two sides in one proportional to two sides in the other,  $AB : BC :: DE : EF$ , and the angles  $A$ ,  $D$  opposite one pair of homologous sides equal, the angles  $C$ ,  $F$  opposite the other are either equal or supplemental. This Proposition is nearly identical with VII.

*Cor.* 2.—If either of the angles  $C$ ,  $F$  be right, the other must be right.

#### PROP. VIII.—THEOREM.

*The triangles ( $ACD$ ,  $BCD$ ) into which a right-angled triangle ( $ACB$ ) is divided, by the perpendicular ( $CD$ ) from the right angle ( $C$ ) on the hypotenuse, are similar to the whole and to one another.*

**Dem.**—Since the two triangles  $ADC$ ,  $ACB$  have the angle  $A$  common, and the angles  $ADC$ ,  $ACB$  equal, each being right, they are [I. xxxii.] equiangular; hence [iv.] they are similar. In like manner it may be proved that  $BDC$  is similar to  $ABC$ . Hence  $ADC$ ,  $CDB$  are each similar to  $ACD$ , and therefore they are similar to one another.

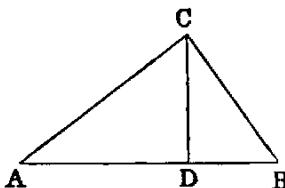
*Cor.* 1.—The perpendicular  $CD$  is a mean proportional between the segments  $AD$ ,  $DB$  of the hypotenuse.

For, since the triangles  $ADC$ ,  $CDB$  are equiangular, we have  $AD : DC :: DC : DB$ ; hence  $DC$  is a mean proportional between  $AD$ ,  $DB$  (Def. iii.).

*Cor.* 2.— $BC$  is a mean proportional between  $AB$ ,  $BD$ ; and  $AC$  between  $AB$ ,  $AD$ .

*Cor.* 3.—The segments  $AD$ ,  $DB$  are in the duplicate of  $AC : CB$ , or in other words,  $AD : DB :: AC^2 : CB^2$ ,

*Cor.* 4.— $BA : AD$  in the duplicate ratios of  $BA : AC$ ; and  $AB : BD$  in the duplicate ratio of  $AB : BC$ .



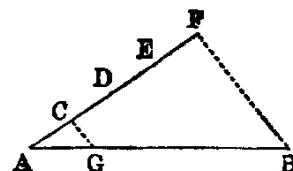
#### PROP. IX.—PROBLEM.

*From a given right line ( $AB$ ) to cut off any part required (i.e. to cut off any required submultiple)*

**Sol.**—Let it be required, for instance, to cut off the fourth part. Draw  $AF$ , making any angle with  $AB$ , and in  $AF$  take any point  $C$ , and cut off (I. iii.) the parts  $CD$ ,  $DE$ ,  $EF$  each equal to  $AC$ . Join  $BF$ , and draw  $CG$  parallel to  $BF$ .  $AG$  is the fourth part of  $AB$ .

**Dem.**—Since  $CG$  is parallel to the side  $BF$  of the triangle  $ABF$ ,  $AC : AF :: AG : AB$  [II.]; but  $AC$  is the fourth part of  $AF$  (const.). Hence  $AG$  is the fourth part of  $AB$  [V., d.]. *In the same manner, any other required submultiple may be cut off.*

Proposition x., Book I., is a particular case of this Proposition.

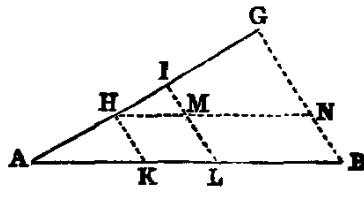


PROP. X.—PROBLEM.

*To divide a given undivided line (AB) similarly to a given divided line (CD).*

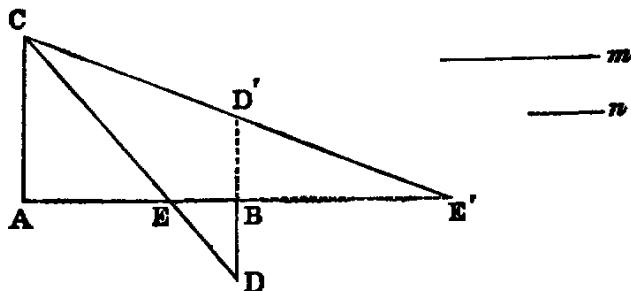
**Sol.**—Draw  $AG$ , making any angle with  $AB$ , and cut off the parts  $AH, HI, IG$  respectively equal to the parts  $CE, EF, FD$  of the given divided line  $CD$ . Join  $BG$ , and draw  $HK, IL$ , each parallel to  $BG$ .  $AB$  will be divided similarly to  $CD$ .

**Dem.**—Through  $H$  draw  $HN$  parallel to  $AB$ , cutting  $IL$  in  $M$ . Now in the triangle  $ALI$ ,  $HK$  is parallel to  $IL$ . Hence [II.]  $AK : KL :: AH : HI$ , that is  $:: CE : EF$  (const.). Again, in the triangle  $HNG$ ,  $MI$  is parallel to  $NG$ . Therefore [II.]  $HM : MN :: HI : IG$ ; but [I. xxxiv.]  $HM$  is equal to  $KL$ ,  $MN$  is equal to  $LB$ ,  $HI$  is equal to  $EF$ , and  $IG$  is equal to  $FD$  (const.). Therefore  $KL : LB :: EF : FD$ . Hence the line  $AB$  is divided similarly to the line  $CD$ .



Exercises.

1. To divide a given line  $AB$  internally or externally in the ratio of two given lines,  $m, n$ .



**Sol.**—Through  $A$  and  $B$  draw any two parallels  $AC$  and  $BD$  in opposite directions. Cut off  $AC = m$ , and  $BD = n$ , and join  $CD$ ; the joining line will divide  $AB$  internally at  $E$  in the ratio of  $m : n$ .

2. If  $BD'$  be drawn in the same direction with  $AC$ , as denoted by the dotted line, then  $CD'$  will cut  $AB$  externally at  $E'$  in the ratio of  $m : n$ .

*Cor.*—The two points  $E, E'$  divide  $AB$  harmonically.

This problem is manifestly equivalent to the following:—Given the sum or difference of two lines and their ratio, to find the lines.

3. Any line  $AE'$ , through the middle point  $B$  of the base  $DD'$  of a triangle  $DCD'$ , is cut harmonically by the sides of the triangle and a parallel to the base through the vertex.

4. Given the sum of the squares on two lines and their ratio; find the lines.

5. Given the difference of the squares on two lines and their ratio; find the lines.

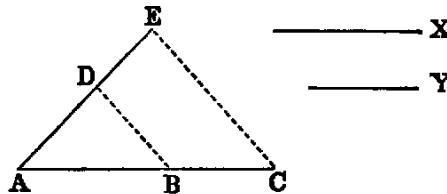
6. Given the base and ratio of the sides of a triangle; construct it when any of the following data is given:—1, the area; 2, the difference on the squares of the sides; 3, the sum of the squares on the sides; 4, the vertical angle; 5, the difference of the base angles.

PROP. XI.—PROBLEM.

*To find a third proportional to two given lines ( $X, Y$ ).*

**Sol.**—Draw any two lines  $AC, AE$  making an angle. Cut off  $AB$  equal  $X$ ,  $BC$  equal  $Y$ , and  $AD$  equal  $Y$ . Join  $BD$ , and draw  $CE$  parallel to  $BD$ , then  $DE$  is the third proportional required.

**Dem.**—In the triangle  $CAE$ ,  $BD$  is parallel to  $CE$ ; therefore  $AB : BC :: AD : DE$  [II.]; but  $AB$  is equal to  $X$ , and  $BC, AD$  each equal to  $Y$ . Therefore  $X : Y :: Y : DE$ . Hence  $DE$  is a third proportional to  $X$  and  $Y$ .

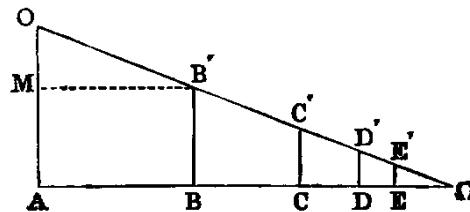


Another solution can be inferred from Proposition VIII. For if  $AD, DC$  in that Proposition be respectively equal to  $X$  and  $Y$ , then  $DB$  will be the third proportional. Or again, if in the diagram, Proposition VIII.,  $AD = X$ , and  $AC = Y$ ,  $AB$  will be the third proportional. Hence may be inferred a method of continuing the proportion to any number of terms.

Exercises.

1. If  $A\Omega\Omega$  be a triangle, having the side  $A\Omega$  greater than  $AO$ ; then if we cut off  $AB = AO$ , draw  $BB'$  parallel to  $AO$ , cut off  $BC = BB'$ , &c., the series of lines  $AB, BC, CD, \dots$ , are in continual proportion.

2.  $AB - BC : AB :: AB : A\Omega$ . This is evident by drawing through  $B'$  a parallel to  $A\Omega$ .



PROP. XII.—PROBLEM.

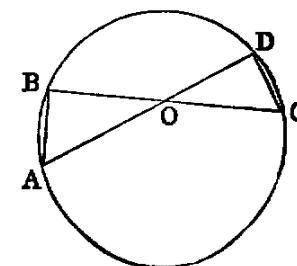
*To find a fourth proportional to three given lines ( $X, Y, Z$ ).*

**Sol.**—Draw any two lines  $AC, AE$ , making an angle; then cut off  $AB$  equal  $X$ ,  $BC$  equal  $Y$ ,  $AD$  equal  $Z$ . Join  $BD$ , and draw  $CE$  parallel to  $BD$ .  $DE$  will be the fourth proportional required.

**Dem.**—Since  $BD$  is parallel to  $CE$ , we have [II.]  $AB : BC :: AD : DE$ ; therefore  $X : Y :: Z : DE$ . Hence  $DE$  is a fourth proportional to  $X, Y, Z$ .

*Or thus:* Take two lines  $AD, BC$  intersecting in  $O$ . Make  $OA = X$ ,  $OB = Y$ ,  $OC = Z$ , and describe a circle through the points  $A, B, C$  [IV. v.] cutting  $AD$  in  $D$ .  $OD$  will be the fourth proportional required.

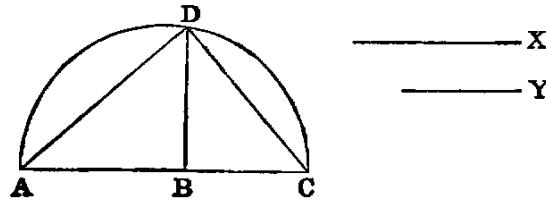
The demonstration is evident from the similarity of the triangles  $AOB$  and  $COD$ .



PROP. XIII.—PROBLEM.

*To find a mean proportional between two given lines. (X, Y).*

**Sol.**—Take on any line  $AC$  parts  $AB, BC$  respectively equal to  $X, Y$ . On  $AC$  describe a semicircle  $ADC$ . Erect  $BD$  at right angles to  $AC$ , meeting the semicircle in  $D$ .  $BD$  will be the mean proportional required.



**Dem.**—Join  $AD, DC$ . Since  $ADC$  is a semicircle, the angle  $ADC$  is right [III. xxxi.]. Hence, since  $ADC$  is a right-angled triangle, and  $BD$  a perpendicular from the right angle on the hypotenuse,  $BD$  is a mean proportional [VIII. Cor. 1] between  $AB, BC$ ; that is,  $BD$  is a mean proportional between  $X$  and  $Y$ .

Exercises.

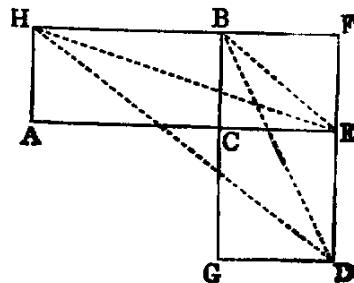
1. Another solution may be inferred from Proposition VIII., Cor. 2.
2. If through any point within a circle the chord be drawn, which is bisected in that point, its half is a mean proportional between the segments of any other chord passing through the same point.
3. The tangent to a circle from any external point is a mean proportional between the segments of any secant passing through the same point.
4. If through the middle point  $C$  of any arc of a circle any secant be drawn cutting the chord of the arc in  $D$ , and the circle again in  $E$ , the chord of half the arc is a mean proportional between  $CD$  and  $CE$ .
5. If a circle be described touching another circle internally and two parallel chords, the perpendicular from the centre of the former on the diameter of the latter, which bisects the chords, is a mean proportional between the two extremes of the three segments into which the diameter is divided by the chords.
6. If a circle be described touching a semicircle and its diameter, the diameter of the circle is a harmonic mean between the segments into which the diameter of the semicircle is divided at the point of contact.
7. State and prove the Proposition corresponding to Ex. 5, for external contact of the circles.

PROP. XIV.—THEOREM.

1. *Equiangular parallelograms ( $AB, CD$ ) which are equal in area have the sides about the equal angles reciprocally proportional—*  
 $AC : CE :: GC : CB$ .

2. *Equiangular parallelograms which have the sides about the equal angles reciprocally proportional are equal in area.*

**Dem.**—Let  $AC, CE$  be so placed as to form one right line, and that the equal angles



$ACB$ ,  $ECG$  may be vertically opposite. Now, since the angle  $ACB$  is equal to  $ECG$ , to each add  $BCE$ , and we have the sum of the angles  $ACB$ ,  $BCE$  equal to the sum of the angles  $ECG$ ,  $BCE$ ; but the sum of  $ACB$ ,  $BCE$  is [I. XIII.] two right angles. Therefore the sum of  $ECG$ ,  $BCE$  is two right angles. Hence [I. XIV.]  $BC$ ,  $CG$  form one right line. Complete the parallelogram  $BE$ .

Again, since the parallelograms  $AB$ ,  $CD$  are equal (hyp.),

$$\begin{array}{ll} AB : CF :: CD : CF & [\text{V. VII.}]; \\ \text{but} & AB : CF :: AC : CE [\text{I.}]; \\ \text{and} & CD : CF :: GC : CB [\text{I.}]; \\ \text{therefore} & AC : CE :: GC : CB; \end{array}$$

that is, *the sides about the equal angles are reciprocally proportional.*

2. Let  $AC : CE :: GC : CB$ , to prove the parallelograms  $AB$ ,  $CD$  are equal.

**Dem.**—Let the same construction be made, we have

$$\begin{array}{ll} AB : CF :: AC : CE & [\text{I.}]; \\ \text{and} & CD : CF :: GC : CB [\text{I.}]; \\ \text{but} & AC : CE :: GC : CB (\text{hyp.}). \\ \text{Therefore} & AB : CF :: CD : CF. \\ \text{Hence} & AB = CD \quad [\text{V. IX.}]; \end{array}$$

that is, *the parallelograms are equal.*

*Or thus:* Join  $HE$ ,  $BE$ ,  $HD$ ,  $BD$ . The  $\square HC$  = twice the  $\triangle HBE$ , and the  $\square CD$  = twice the  $\triangle BDE$ . Therefore the  $\triangle HBE = BDE$ , and [I. XXXIX.]  $HD$  is parallel to  $BE$ . Hence

$$HB : BF :: DE : EF; \text{ that is, } AC : CE :: GC : CB.$$

2. May be proved by reversing this demonstration.

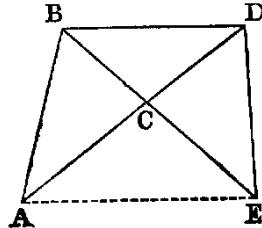
Another demonstration of this Proposition may be got by producing the lines  $HA$  and  $DG$  to meet in  $I$ . Then [I. XLIII.] the points  $I$ ,  $C$ ,  $F$  are collinear, and the Proposition is evident.

#### PROP. XV.—THEOREM.

1. *Two triangles equal in area ( $ACB$ ,  $DCE$ ), which have one angle ( $C$ ) in one equal to one angle ( $C$ ) in the other, have the sides about these angles reciprocally proportional.*

2. *Two triangles, which have one angle in one equal to one angle in the other, and the sides about these angles reciprocally proportional, are equal in area.*

**Dem.**—1. Let the equal angles be so placed as to be vertically opposite, and that  $AC$ ,  $CD$  may form one right line; then it may be demonstrated, as in the last Proposition, that  $BC$ ,  $CE$  form one right line. Join  $BD$ .



Now since the triangles  $ACB$ ,  $DCE$  are equal,

$$ACB : BCD :: DCE : BCD \text{ [V. vii.];}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{but } & ACB : BCD :: AC : CD \text{ [i.],} \\ \text{and } & DCE : BCD :: EC : CB \text{ [i.].} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Therefore } AC : CD :: EC : CB;$$

that is, *the sides about the equal angles are reciprocally proportional.*

2. If  $AC : CD :: EC : CB$ , to prove the triangle  $ACB$  equal to  $DCE$ .

**Dem.**—Let the same construction be made, then we have

$$\begin{aligned} & AC : CD :: \text{triangle } ACB : BCD \text{ [i.],} \\ \text{and } & EC : CB :: \text{triangle } DCE : BCD \text{ [i.];} \\ \text{but } & AC : CD :: EC : CB \text{ (hyp.).} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore the triangle

$$ACB : BCD :: DCE : BCD.$$

Hence the triangle  $ACB = DCE$  [V. ix.]—that is, *the triangles are equal.*

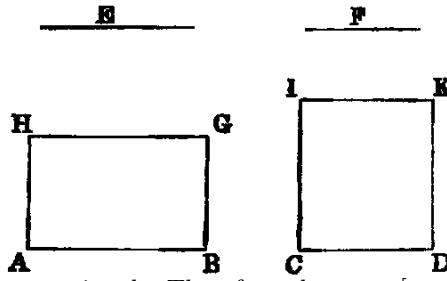
This Proposition might have been appended as a *Cor.* to the preceding, since the triangles are the halves of equiangular parallelograms, or it may be proved by joining  $AE$ , and showing that it is parallel to  $BD$ .

#### PROP. XVI.—THEOREM.

1. *If four right lines ( $AB$ ,  $CD$ ,  $E$ ,  $F$ ) be proportional, the rectangle ( $AB \cdot F$ ) contained by the extremes is equal to the rectangle ( $CD \cdot E$ ) contained by the means.*

2. *If the rectangle contained by the extremes of four right lines be equal to the rectangle contained by the means, the four lines are proportional.*

**Dem.**—1. Erect  $AH$ ,  $CI$  at right angles to  $AB$  and  $CD$ , and equal to  $F$  and  $E$  respectively, and complete the rectangles. Then because  $AB : CD :: E : F$  (hyp.), and that  $E$  is equal to  $CI$ , and  $F$  to  $AH$  (const.), we have  $AB : CD :: CI : AH$ . Hence the parallelograms  $AG$ ,  $CK$  are equiangular, and have the sides about their equal angles reciprocally proportional. Therefore they are [xiv.] equal; but since  $AH$  is equal to  $F$ ,  $AG$  is equal to the rectangle  $AB \cdot F$ . In like manner,  $CK$  is equal to the rectangle  $CD \cdot E$ . Hence  $AB \cdot F = CD \cdot E$ ; that is, *the rectangle contained by the extremes is equal to the rectangle contained by the means.*

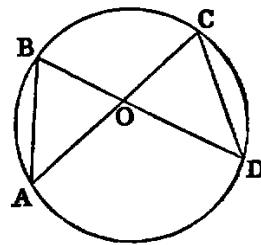


2. If  $AB \cdot F = CD \cdot E$ , to prove  $AB : CD :: E : F$ .

The same construction being made, because  $AB \cdot F = CD \cdot E$ , and that  $F$  is equal to  $AH$ , and  $E$  to  $CI$ , we have the parallelogram  $AG = CK$ ; and since these parallelograms are equiangular, the sides about their equal angles are reciprocally proportional. Therefore

$$AB : CD :: CI : AH; \text{ that is, } AB : CD :: E : F.$$

*Or thus:* Place the four lines in a concurrent position so that the extremes may form one continuous line, and the means another. Let the four lines so placed be  $AO, BO, OD, OC$ . Join  $AB, CD$ . Then because  $AO : OB :: OD : OC$ , and the angle  $AOB = DOC$ , the triangles  $AOB, COD$  are equiangular. Hence the four points  $A, B, C, D$  are concyclic. Therefore [III. xxxv.]  $AO \cdot OC = BO \cdot OD$ .



#### PROP. XVII.—THEOREM

1. If three right lines ( $A, B, C$ ) be proportional, the rectangle ( $A \cdot C$ ) contained by the extremes is equal to the square ( $B^2$ ) of the mean.

2. If the rectangle contained by the extremes of three right lines be equal to the square of the mean, the three lines are proportional.

**Dem.**—1. Assume a line  $D = B$ ; then because  $A : B :: B : C$ , we have  $A : B :: D : C$ . Therefore [xvi.]  $AC = BD$ ; but  $BD = B^2$ . Therefore  $AC = B^2$ ; that is, the rectangle contained by the extremes is equal to the square of the mean.

**A** \_\_\_\_\_  
**B** \_\_\_\_\_  
**D** \_\_\_\_\_

2. The same construction being made, since  $AC = B^2$ , we have  $A \cdot C = B \cdot D$ ; therefore  $A : B :: D : C$ ; but  $D = B$ . Hence  $A : B :: B : C$ ; that is, the three lines are proportionals.

This Proposition may be inferred as a *Cor.* to the last, which is one of the fundamental Propositions in Mathematics.

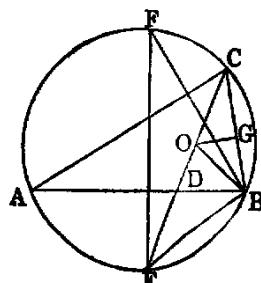
#### Exercises.

1. If a line  $CD$  bisect the vertical angle  $C$  of any triangle  $ACB$ , its square added to the rectangle  $AD \cdot DB$  contained by the segments of the base is equal to the rectangle contained by the sides.

**Dem.**—Describe a circle about the triangle, and produce  $CD$  to meet it in  $E$ ; then it is easy to see that the triangles  $ACD, ECB$  are equiangular. Hence [iv.]  $AC : CD :: CE : CB$ ; therefore  $AC \cdot CB = CE \cdot CD = CD^2 + CD \cdot DE = CD^2 + AD \cdot DB$  [III. xxxv.].

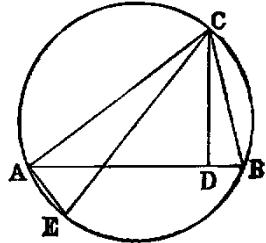
2. If the line  $CD'$  bisect the external vertical angle of any triangle  $ACB$ , its square subtracted from the rectangle  $AD' \cdot D'B$  is equal to  $AC \cdot CB$ .

3. The rectangle contained by the diameter of the circumscribed circle, and the radius of the inscribed circle of any triangle, is equal to the rectangle contained by the segments of any chord of the circumscribed circle passing through the centre of the inscribed.



**Dem.**—Let  $O$  be the centre of the inscribed circle. Join  $OB$  (see foregoing fig.); let fall the perpendicular  $OG$ , draw the diameter  $EF$  of the circumscribed circle. Now the angle  $ABE = ECB$  [III. xxvii.], and  $ABO = OBC$ ; therefore  $EBO = \text{sum of } OCB, OBC = EOB$ . Hence  $EB = EO$ . Again, the triangles  $EBF, OGC$  are equiangular, because  $EFB, ECB$  are equal, and  $EBF, OGC$  are each right. Therefore,  $EF : EB :: OC : OG$ ; therefore  $EF \cdot OG = EB \cdot OC = EO \cdot OC$ .

4. Ex. 3 may be extended to each of the escribed circles of the triangle  $ACB$ .



5. The rectangle contained by two sides of a triangle is equal to the rectangle contained by the perpendicular and the diameter of the circumscribed circle. For, let  $CE$  be the diameter. Join  $AE$ . Then the triangles  $ACE, DCB$  are equiangular; hence  $AC : CE :: CD : CB$ ; therefore  $AC \cdot CB = CD \cdot CE$ .

6. If a circle passing through one of the angles  $A$  of a parallelogram  $ABCD$  intersect the two sides  $AB, AD$  again in the points  $E, G$  and the diagonal  $AC$  again in  $F$ ; then  $AB \cdot AE + AD \cdot AG = AC \cdot AF$ .

**Dem.**—Join  $EF, FG$ , and make the angle  $ABH = AFE$ . Then the triangles  $ABH, AFE$  are equiangular. Therefore  $AB : AH :: AF : AE$ . Hence  $AB \cdot AE = AF \cdot AH$ . Again, it is easy to see that the triangles  $BCH, FAG$  are equiangular; therefore  $BC : CH :: AF : AG$ ; hence  $BC \cdot AG = AF \cdot CH$ , or  $AD \cdot AG = AF \cdot CH$ ; but we have proved  $AB \cdot AE = AF \cdot AH$ . Hence  $AD \cdot AG + AB \cdot AE = AF \cdot AC$ .

7. If  $DE, DF$  be parallels to the sides of a triangle  $ABC$  from any point  $D$  in the base, then  $AB \cdot AE + AC \cdot AF = AD^2 + BD \cdot DC$ . This is an easy deduction from 6.

8. If through a point  $O$  within a triangle  $ABC$  parallels  $EF, GH, IK$  to the sides be drawn, the sum of the rectangles of their segments is equal to the rectangle contained by the segments of any chord of the circumscribing circle passing through  $O$ .

**Dem.**— $AO \cdot AL = AB \cdot AK + AC \cdot AE$ . (6)

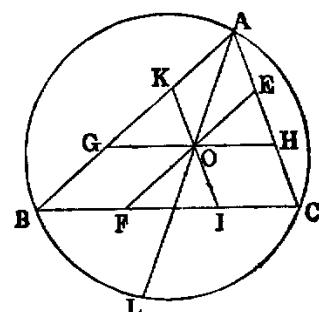
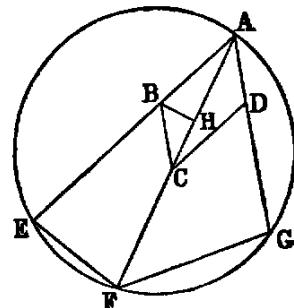
But  $AO^2 = AG \cdot AK + AH \cdot AE - GO \cdot OH$ . (7)

Hence  $AO \cdot OL = BG \cdot AK + CH \cdot AE + GO \cdot OH$ ,

or  $AO \cdot OL = EO \cdot OF + IO \cdot OK + GO \cdot OH$ .

9. The rectangle contained by the side of an inscribed square standing on the base of a triangle, and the sum of the base and altitude, is equal to twice the area of the triangle.

10. The rectangle contained by the side of an escribed square standing on the base of a triangle, and the difference between the base and altitude, is equal to twice the area of the triangle.



11. If from any point  $P$  in the circumference of a circle a perpendicular be drawn to any chord, its square is equal to the rectangle contained by the perpendiculars from the extremities of the chord on the tangent at  $P$ .

12. If  $O$  be the point of intersection of the diagonals of a cyclic quadrilateral  $ABCD$ , the four rectangles  $AB \cdot BC, BD \cdot CD, CD \cdot DA, DA \cdot AB$ , are proportional to the four lines  $BO, CO, DO, AO$ .

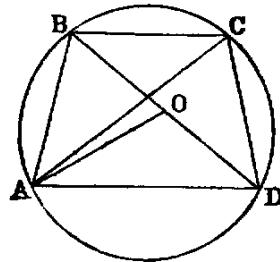
13. The sum of the rectangles of the opposite sides of a cyclic quadrilateral  $ABCD$  is equal to the rectangle contained by its diagonals.

**Dem.**—Make the angle  $DAO = CAB$ ; then the triangles  $DAO, CAB$  are equiangular; therefore  $AD : DO :: AC : CB$ ; therefore  $AD \cdot BC = AC \cdot DO$ . Again, the triangles  $DAC, OAB$  are equiangular, and  $CD : AC :: BO : AB$ ; therefore  $AC \cdot CD = AC \cdot BO$ . Hence  $AD \cdot BC + AB \cdot CD = AC \cdot BD$ .<sup>3</sup>

14. If the quadrilateral  $ABCD$  is not cyclic, prove that the three rectangles  $AB \cdot CD, BC \cdot AD, AC \cdot BD$  are proportional to the three sides of a triangle which has an angle equal to the sum of a pair of opposite angles of the quadrilateral.

15. Prove by using Theorem 11 that if perpendiculars be let fall on the sides and diagonals of a cyclic quadrilateral, from any point in the circumference of the circumscribed circle, the rectangle contained by the perpendiculars on the diagonals is equal to the rectangle contained by the perpendiculars on either pair of opposite sides.

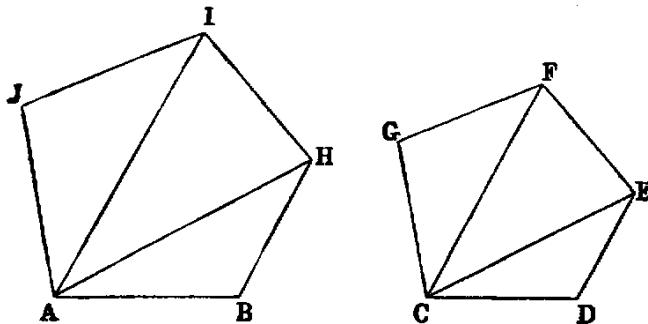
16. If  $AB$  be the diameter of a semicircle, and  $PA, PB$  chords from any point  $P$  in the circumference, and if a perpendicular to  $AB$  from any point  $C$  meet  $PA, PB$  in  $D$  and  $E$ , and the semicircle in  $F, CF$  is a mean proportional between  $CD$  and  $CE$ .



#### PROP. XVIII.—PROBLEM.

*On a given right line (AB) to construct a rectilineal figure similar to a given one (CDEFG), and similarly placed as regards any side (CD) of the latter.*

**DEF.**—Similar figures are said to be *similarly described upon given right lines*, when these lines are homologous sides of the figures.



**Sol.**—Join  $CE, CF$ , and construct a triangle  $ABH$  on  $AB$  equiangular to  $CDE$ , and similarly placed as regards  $CD$ ; that is, make, the angle  $ABH$  equal to  $CDE$ , and  $BAH$  equal to  $DCE$ . In like manner construct the triangle  $HAI$

<sup>3</sup>This Proposition is known as Ptolemy's theorem.

equiangular to  $ECF$ , and similarly placed, and lastly, the triangle  $IAJ$  equiangular and similarly placed with  $FCG$ . Then  $ABHIJ$  is the figure required.

**Dem.**—From the construction it is evident that the figures are equiangular, and it is only required to prove that the sides about the equal angles are proportional. Now because the triangle  $ABH$  is equiangular to  $CDE$ ,  $AB : BH :: CD : DE$  [iv.]; hence the sides about the equal angles  $B$  and  $D$  are proportional. Again, from the same triangles we have  $BH : HA :: DE : EC$ , and from the triangles  $IHA, FEC$ ;  $HA : HI :: EC : EF$ ; therefore (*ex aequali*)  $BH : HI :: DE : EF$ ; that is, the sides about the equal angles  $BHI, DEF$  are proportional, and so in like manner are the sides about the other equal angles. Hence (Def. i.) the figures are similar.

**Observation.**—In the foregoing construction, the line  $AB$  is homologous to  $CD$ , and it is evident that we may take  $AB$  to be homologous to any other side of the given figure  $CDEFG$ . Again, in each case, if the figure  $ABHIJ$  be turned round the line  $AB$  until it falls on the other side, it will still be similar to the figure  $CDEFG$ . Hence on a given line  $AB$  there can be constructed two figures each similar to a given figure  $CDEFG$ , and having the given line  $AB$  homologous to any given side  $CD$  of the given figure.

The first of the figures thus constructed is said to be *directly* similar, and the second *inversely* similar to the given figure. These technical terms are due to Hamilton: see “Elements of Quaternions,” page 112.

**Cor. 1.**—Twice as many polygons may be constructed on  $AB$  similar to a given polygon  $CDEFG$  as that figure has sides.

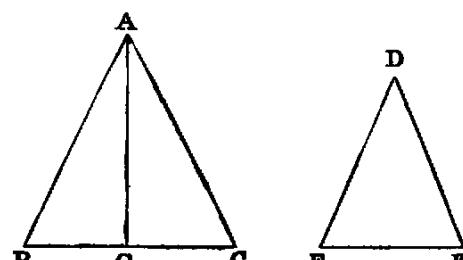
**Cor. 2.**—If the figure  $ABHIJ$  be applied to  $CDEFG$  so that the point  $A$  will coincide with  $C$ , and that the line  $AB$  may be placed along  $CD$ , then the points  $H, I, J$  will be respectively on the lines  $CE, CF, CG$ ; also the sides  $BH, HI, IJ$  of the one polygon will be respectively parallel to their homologous sides  $DE, EF, FG$  of the other.

**Cor. 3.**—If lines drawn from any point  $O$  in the plane of a figure to all its angular points be divided in the same ratio, the lines joining the points of division will form a new figure similar to, and having every side parallel to, the homologous side of the original.

#### PROP. XIX.—THEOREM.

*Similar triangles ( $ABC, DEF$ ) have their areas to one another in the duplicate ratio of their homologous sides.*

**Dem.**—Take  $BG$  a third proportional to  $BC, EF$  [xi.]. Join  $AG$ . Then because the triangles  $ABC, DEF$  are similar,  $AB : BC :: DE : EF$ ; hence (alternately)  $AB : DE :: BC : EF$ ; but  $BC : EF :: EF : BG$  (const.); therefore [V. xi.]  $AB : DE :: EF : BG$ ; hence the sides of the triangles  $ABG, DEF$  about the equal angles  $B, E$  are reciprocally proportional; therefore the triangles are equal.

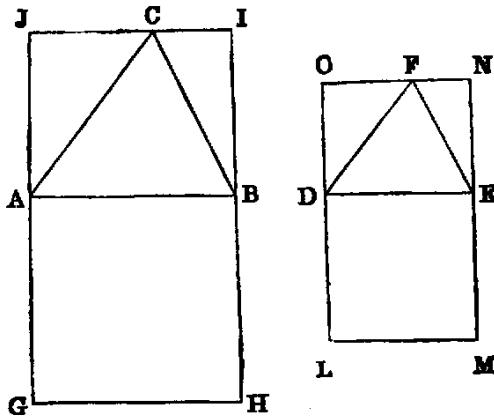


Again, since the lines  $BC$ ,  $EF$ ,  $BG$  are continual proportionals,  $BC : BG$  in the duplicate ratio of  $BC : EF$  [V. Def. x.]; but  $BC : BG :: \text{triangle } ABC : ABG$ . Therefore  $ABC : ABG$  in the duplicate ratio of  $BC : EF$ ; but it has been proved that the triangle  $ABG$  is equal to  $DEF$ . *Therefore the triangle ABC is to the triangle DEF in the duplicate ratio of BC : EF.*

This is the first Proposition in Euclid in which the technical term “duplicate ratio” occurs. My experience with pupils is, that they find it very difficult to understand either Euclid’s proof or his definition. On this account I submit the following alternative proof, which, however, makes use of a new definition of the duplicate ratio of two lines, viz. the ratio of the squares (*see Annotations on V. Def. x.*) described on these lines.

On  $AB$  and  $DE$  describe squares, and through  $C$  and  $F$  draw lines parallel to  $AB$  and  $DE$ , and complete the rectangles  $AI$ ,  $DN$ .

Now, the triangles  $JAC$ ,  $ODF$  are evidently equiangular.



Hence	$JA : AC :: OD : DF$ [iv.];
but	$AC : AB :: DF : DE$ [iv.].
Hence	$JA : AB :: OD : DE$ ( <i>ex aequali</i> );
but	$AB = AG$ , and $DE = DL$ ;
therefore	$JA : AG :: OD : DL$ .
Again,	$JA : AG :: \square AI : \text{square } AH$ [I.],
and	$OD : DL :: \square DN : \text{square } DM$ [I.].
Hence	$AI : AH :: DN : DM$ ;
therefore	$AI : DN :: AH : DM$ [V. xvi.];
hence	$\triangle ABC : \triangle DEF :: AB^2 : DE^2$ .

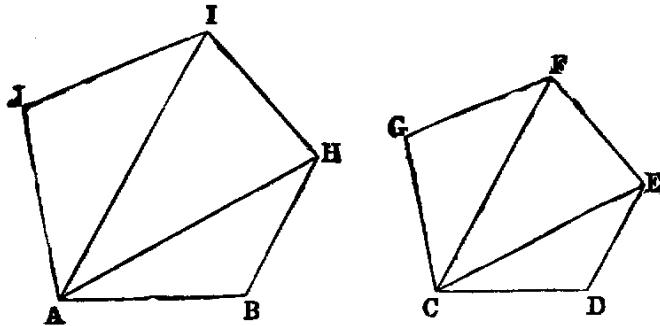
Exercises.

1. If one of two similar triangles has its sides 50 per cent. longer than the homologous sides of the other; what is the ratio of their areas?
2. When the inscribed and circumscribed regular polygons of any common number of sides to a circle have more than four sides, the difference of their areas is less than the square of the side of the inscribed polygon.

PROP. XX.—THEOREM.

*Similar polygons may be divided (1) into the same number of similar triangles; (2) the corresponding triangles have the same ratio to one another which the polygons have; (3) the polygons are to each other in the duplicate ratio of their homologous sides.*

**Dem.**—Let  $ABHIJ$ ,  $CDEFG$  be the polygons, and let the sides  $AB$ ,  $CD$  be homologous. Join  $AH$ ,  $AI$ ,  $CE$ ,  $CF$ .



1. The triangles into which the polygons are divided are similar. For, since the polygons are similar, they are equiangular, and have the sides about their equal angles proportional [Def. I.]; hence the angle  $B$  is equal to  $D$ , and  $AB : BH :: CD : DE$ ; therefore [VI.] the triangle  $ABH$  is equiangular to  $CDE$ ; hence the angle  $BHA$  is equal to  $DEC$ ; but  $BHI$  is equal to  $DEF$  (hyp.); therefore the angle  $AHI$  is equal to  $CEF$ . Again, because the polygons are similar,  $IH : HB :: FE : ED$ ; and since the triangles  $ABH$ ,  $CDE$  are similar,  $HB : HA :: ED : EC$ ; hence (*ex aequali*)  $IH : HA :: FE : EC$ , and the angle  $IHA$  has been proved to be equal to the angle  $FEC$ ; *therefore the triangles IHA, FEC are equiangular*. In the same manner it can be proved that *the remaining triangles are equiangular*.

2. Since the triangle  $ABH$  is similar to  $CDE$ , we have [XIX.].

$$ABH : CDE \text{ in the duplicate ratio of } AH : CE.$$

In like manner,

$$AHI : CEF \text{ in the duplicate ratio of } AH : CE;$$

hence  $ABH : CDE = AHI : CEF$  [V. xi.].

Similarly,  $AHI : CEF = AIJ : CFG$ .

In these equal ratios, the triangles  $ABH$ ,  $AHI$ ,  $AIJ$  are the antecedents, and the triangles  $CDE$ ,  $CEF$ ,  $CFG$  the consequents, and [V. XII.] any one of these equal ratios is equal to the ratio of the sum of all the antecedents to the sum of all the consequents; *therefore the triangle  $ABH$  : the triangle  $CDE$  :: the polygon  $ABHIJ$  : the polygon  $CDEFG$ .*

3. The triangle  $ABH$  :  $CDE$  in the duplicate ratio of  $AB$  :  $CD$  [XIX.]. Hence (2) the polygon  $ABHIJ$  : the polygon  $CDEFG$  in the duplicate ratio of  $AB$  :  $CD$ .

*Cor.* 1.—The perimeters of similar polygons are to one another in the ratio of their homologous sides.

*Cor.* 2.—As squares are similar polygons, therefore the duplicate ratio of two lines is equal to the ratio of the squares described on them (compare Annotations, V. Def. x.).

*Cor.* 3.—Similar portions of similar figures bear the same ratio to each other as the wholes of the figures.

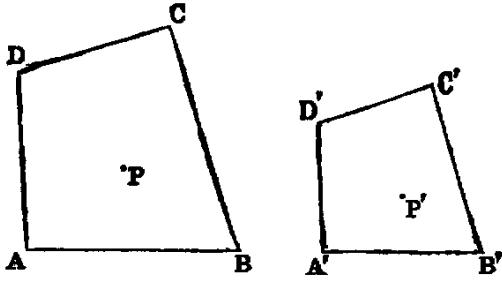
*Cor.* 4.—Similar portions of the perimeters of similar figures are to each other in the ratio of the whole perimeters.

#### Exercises.

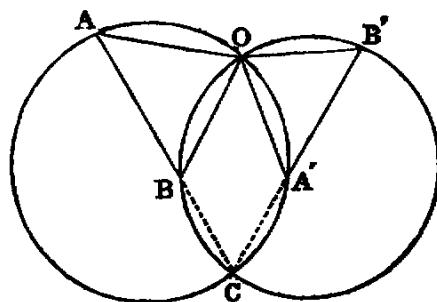
DEF. I.—*Homologous points* in the planes of two similar figures are such, that lines drawn from them to the angular points of the two figures are proportional to the homologous sides of the two figures.

1. If two figures be similar, to each point in the plane of one there will be a corresponding point in the plane of the other.

**Dem.**—Let  $ABCD$ ,  $A'B'C'D'$  be the two figures,  $P$  a point in the plane of  $ABCD$ . Join  $AP$ ,  $BP$ , and construct a triangle  $A'P'B'$  on  $A'B'$ , similar to  $APB$ ; then it is easy to see that lines from  $P'$  to the angular points of  $A'B'C'D'$  are proportional to the lines from  $P$  to the angular points of  $ABCD$ .



2. If two figures be directly similar, and in the same plane, there is in the plane a special point which, regarded as belonging to either figure, is its own homologous point with respect to the other. For, let  $AB$ ,  $A'B'$  be two homologous sides of the figures,  $C$  their point of intersection. Through the two triads of points  $A, A', C$ ;  $B, B', C$  describe two circles intersecting again in the point  $O$ :  $O$  will be the point required. For it is evident that the triangles  $OAB$ ,  $OA'B'$  are similar and that either may be turned round the point  $O$ , so that the two bases,  $AB$ ,  $A'B'$ , will be parallel.



DEF. II.—The point  $O$  is called the *centre of similitude of the figures*. It is also called their *double point*.

3. Two regular polygons of  $n$  sides each have  $n$  centres of similitude.

4. If any number of similar triangles have their corresponding vertices lying on three given lines, they have a common centre of similitude.

5. If two figures be directly similar, and have a pair of homologous sides parallel, every pair of homologous sides will be parallel.

DEF. III.—Two figures, such as those in 5, are said to be *homothetic*.

6. If two figures be homothetic, the lines joining corresponding angular points are concurrent, and the point of concurrence is the centre of similitude of the figures.

7. If two polygons be directly similar, either may be turned round their centre of similitude until they become homothetic, and this may be done in two different ways.

8. Two circles are similar figures.

**Dem.**—Let  $O, O'$  be their centres; let the angle  $AOB$  be indefinitely small, so that the arc  $AB$  may be regarded as a right line; make the angle  $A'O'B'$  equal to  $AOB$ ; then the triangles  $AOB, A'O'B'$  are similar.

Again, make the angle  $BOC$  indefinitely small, and make  $B'O'C'$  equal to it; the triangles  $BOC, B'O'C'$  are similar. Proceeding in this way, we see that the circles can be divided into the same number of similar elementary triangles. Hence the circles are similar figures.

9. Sectors of circles having equal central angles are similar figures.

10. As any two points of two circles may be regarded as homologous, two circles have in consequence an infinite number of centres of similitude; their locus is the circle, whose diameter is the line joining the two points for which the two circles are homothetic.

11. The areas of circles are to one another as the squares of their diameters. For they are to one another as the similar elementary triangles into which they are divided, and these are as the squares of the radii.

12. The circumferences of circles are as their diameters (*Cor. 1*).

13. The circumference of sectors having equal central angles are proportional to their radii. Hence if  $a, a'$  denote the arcs of two sectors, which subtend equal angles at the centres, and if  $r, r'$  be their radii,  $\frac{a}{r} = \frac{a'}{r'}$ .

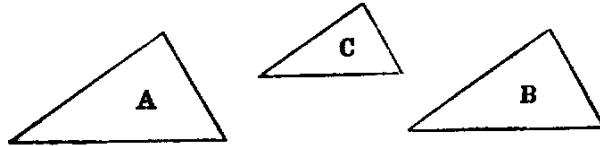
14. The area of a circle is equal to half the rectangle contained by the circumference and the radius. This is evident by dividing the circle into elementary triangles, as in Ex. 8.

15. The area of a sector of a circle is equal to half the rectangle contained by the arc of the sector and the radius of the circle.

#### PROP. XXI.—THEOREM.

*Rectilineal figures (A, B), which are similar to the same figure (C), are similar to one another.*

**Dem.**—Since the figures  $A$  and  $C$  are similar, they are equiangular, and have the sides about their equal angles proportional. In like manner  $B$  and  $C$  are equiangular, and have the sides about their equal angles proportional. Hence  $A$  and  $B$  are equiangular, and have the sides about their equal angles proportional. *Therefore they are similar.*



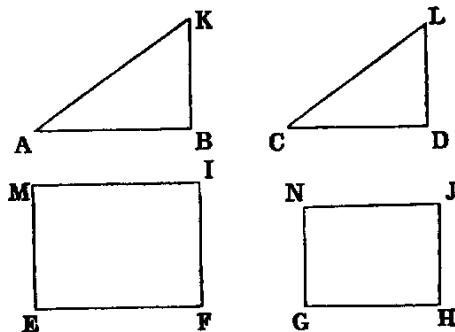
*Cor.*—Two similar rectilineal figures which are homothetic to a third are homothetic to one another.

Exercise.

If three similar rectilineal figures be homothetic, two by two, their three centres of similitudes are collinear.

PROP. XXII—THEOREM.

*If four lines (AB, CD, EF, GH) be proportional, and any pair of similar rectilineal figures (ABK, CDL) be similarly described on the first and second, and also any pair (EI, GJ) on the third and fourth, these figures are proportional. Conversely, if any rectilineal figure described on the first of four right lines: the similar and similarly described figure described on the second :: any rectilineal figure on the third : the similar and similarly described figure on the fourth, the four lines are proportional.*



**Dem. 1.**— $ABK : CDL :: AB^2 : CD^2$ . [xx.];

and  $EI : GJ :: EF^2 : GH^2$  [xx.].

But since  $AB : CD :: EF : GH$ ,

$AB^2 : CD^2 :: EF^2 : GH^2$  [V. xxii., Cor. 1];

therefore  $ABK : CDL :: EI : GJ$ .

If  $ABK : CDL :: EI : GJ$ ,  $AB : CD :: EF : GH$ .

**Dem. 2.**— $ABK : CDL :: AB^2 : CD^2$  [xx.],

and  $EI : GJ :: EF^2 : GH^2$  [xx.];

therefore  $AB^2 : CD^2 :: EF^2 : GH^2$ .

Hence  $AB : CD :: EF : GH$ .

The enunciation of this Proposition is wrongly stated in Simson's *Euclid*, and in those that copy it. As given in those works, the four figures should be similar.

#### PROP. XXIII.—THEOREM.

*Equiangular parallelograms (AD, CG) are to each other as the rectangles contained by their sides about a pair of equal angles.*

**Dem.**—Let the two sides  $AB, BC$  about the equal angles  $ABD, CBG$ , be placed so as to form one right line; then it is evident, as in Prop. XIV., that  $GB, BD$  form one right line. Complete the parallelogram  $BF$ . Now, denoting the parallelograms  $AB, BF, CG$  by  $X, Y, Z$ , respectively, we have—

$$\begin{aligned} X : Y &:: AB : BC \quad [\text{I.}], \\ Y : Z &:: BD : BG \quad [\text{I.}]. \end{aligned}$$

Hence  $XY : YZ :: AB \cdot BD : BC \cdot BG$ ;

or  $X : Z :: AB \cdot BD : BC \cdot BG$ .

**Observation.**—Since  $AB \cdot BD : BC \cdot BG$  is compounded of the two ratios  $AB : BC$  and  $BD : BG$  [V. Def. of compound ratio], the enunciation is the same as if we said, "in the ratio compounded of the ratios of the sides," which is Euclid's; but it is more easily understood as we have put it.

#### Exercises.

1. Triangles which have one angle of one equal or supplemental to one angle of the other, are to one another in the ratio of the rectangles of the sides about those angles.

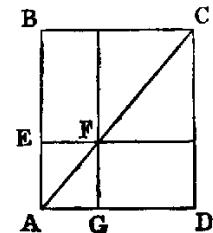
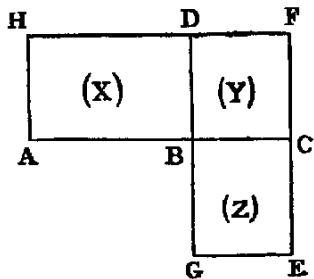
2. Two quadrilaterals whose diagonals intersect at equal angles are to one another in the ratio of the rectangles of the diagonals.

#### PROP. XXIV.—THEOREM.

*In any parallelogram (AC), every two parallelograms (AF, FC) which are about a diagonal are similar to the whole and to one another.*

**Dem.**—Since the parallelograms  $AC, AF$  have a common angle, they are equiangular [I. XXXIV.], and all that is required to be proved is, that the sides about the equal angles are proportional. Now, since the lines  $EF, BC$  are parallel, the triangles  $AEF, ABC$  are equiangular; therefore [IV.]  $AE : EF :: AB : BC$ , and the other sides of the parallelograms are equal to  $AE, EF; AB, BC$ ; hence the sides about the equal angles are proportional; *therefore the parallelograms  $AF, AC$  are similar*. In the same manner the parallelograms  $AF, FC$  are similar.

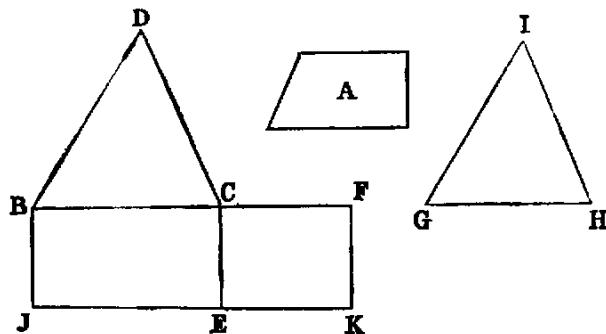
*Cor.*—The parallelograms  $AF, FC, AC$  are, two by two, homothetic.



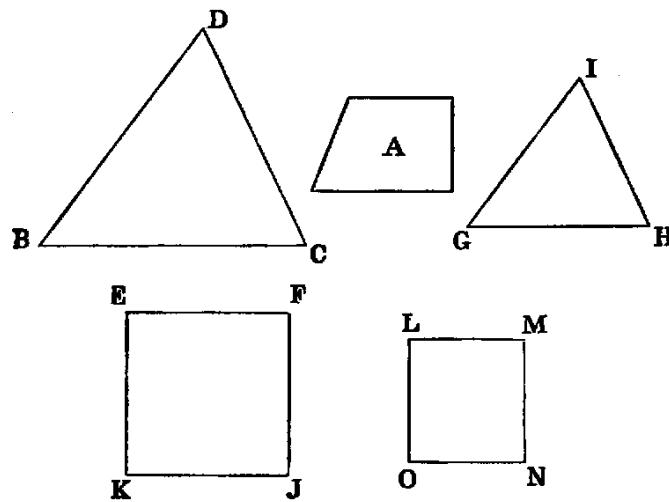
PROP. XXV.—PROBLEM.

*To describe a rectilineal figure equal to a given one (A), and similar to another given one (BCD).*

**Sol.**—On any side  $BC$  of the figure  $BCD$  describe the rectangle  $BE$  equal to  $BCD$  [I. XLV.], and on  $CE$  describe the rectangle  $EF$  equal to  $A$ . Between  $BC$ ,  $CF$  find a mean proportional  $GH$ , and on it describe the figure  $GHI$  similar to  $BCD$  [XVIII.], so that  $BC$  and  $GH$  may be homologous sides.  $GHI$  is the figure required.



**Dem.**—The three lines  $BC$ ,  $GH$ ,  $CF$  are in continued proportion; therefore  $BC : CF$  in the duplicate ratio of  $BC : GH$  [V. Def. x.]; and since the figures  $BCD$ ,  $GHI$  are similar,  $BCD : GHI$  in the duplicate ratio of  $BC : GH$  [xx.]; also  $BC : CF :: \text{rectangle } BE : \text{rectangle } EF$ . Hence rectangle  $BE : EF :: \text{figure } BCD : GHI$ ; but the rectangle  $BE$  is equal to the figure  $BCD$ ; therefore the rectangle  $EF$  is equal to the figure  $GHI$ ; but  $EF$  is equal to  $A$  (const.). Therefore the figure  $GHI$  is equal to  $A$ , and it is similar to  $BCD$ . Hence it is the figure required.



*Or thus:* Describe the squares  $EFJK$ ,  $LMNO$  equal to the figures  $BCD$  and  $A$  respectively [II. XIV.]; then find  $GH$  a fourth proportional to  $EF$ ,  $LM$ , and  $BC$  [XII.]. On  $GH$  describe the rectilineal figure  $GHI$  similar to the figure  $BCD$  [XVIII.], so that  $BC$  and  $GH$  may be homologous sides.  $GHI$  is the figure required.

**Dem.**—Because  $EF : LM :: BC : GH$  (const.), the figure  $EFJK : LMNO :: BCD : GHI$  [XXII.]; but  $EFJK$  is equal to  $BCD$  (const.); therefore  $LMNO$  is equal to  $GHI$ ; but  $LMNO$  is equal to  $A$  (const.). Therefore  $GHI$  is equal to  $A$ , and it is similar to  $BCD$ .

#### PROP. XXVI.—THEOREM.

*If two similar and similarly situated parallelograms ( $AEFG$ ,  $ABCD$ ) have a common angle, they are about the same diagonal.*

**Dem.**—Draw the diagonals (see fig., Prop. XXIV.)  $AF$ ,  $AC$ . Then because the parallelograms  $AEFG$ ,  $ABCD$  are similar figures, they can be divided into the same number of similar triangles [XX.]. Hence the triangle  $FAG$  is similar to  $CAD$ , and therefore the angle  $FAG$  is equal to the angle  $CAD$ . Hence the line  $AC$  must pass through the point  $F$ , and therefore the parallelograms are about the same diagonal.

**Observation.**—Proposition XXVI., being the converse of XXIV., has evidently been misplaced. The following would be a simpler enunciation:—“If two homothetic parallelograms have a common angle, they are about the same diagonal.”

#### PROP. XXVII—PROBLEM.

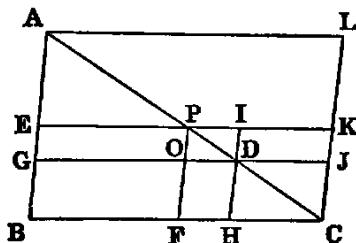
*To inscribe in a given triangle ( $ABC$ ) the maximum parallelogram having a common angle ( $B$ ) with the triangle.*

**Sol.**—Bisect the side  $AC$  opposite to the angle  $B$ , at  $P$ : through  $P$  draw  $PE$ ,  $PF$  parallel to the other sides of the triangle.  $BP$  is the parallelogram required.

**Dem.**—Take any other point  $D$  in  $AC$ : draw  $DG$ ,  $DH$  parallel to the sides, and  $CK$  parallel to  $AB$ ; produce  $EP$ ,  $GD$  to meet  $CK$  in  $K$  and  $J$ , and produce  $HD$  to meet  $PK$  in  $I$ .

Now, since  $AC$  is bisected in  $P$ ,  $EK$  is also bisected in  $P$ ; hence [I. XXXVI.] the parallelogram  $EO$  is equal to  $OK$ ; therefore  $EO$  is greater than  $DK$ ; but  $DK$  is equal to  $FD$  [I. XLIII.]; hence  $EO$  is greater than  $FD$ . To each add  $BO$ , and we have the parallelogram  $BP$  greater than  $BD$ . Hence  $BP$  is the maximum parallelogram which can be inscribed in the given triangle.

**Cor. 1.**—The maximum parallelogram exceeds any other parallelogram about the same angle in the triangle, by the area of the similar parallelogram whose diagonal is the line between the middle point  $P$  of the opposite side and the point  $D$ , which is the corner of the other inscribed parallelogram.



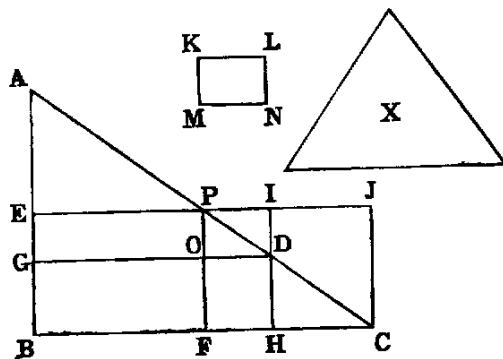
*Cor.* 2.—The parallelograms inscribed in a triangle, and having one angle common with it, are proportional to the rectangles contained by the segments of the sides of the triangle, made by the opposite corners of the parallelograms.

*Cor.* 3.—The parallelogram  $AC : GH :: AC^2 : AD \cdot DC$ .

#### PROP. XXVIII.—PROBLEM.

*To inscribe in a given triangle (ABC) a parallelogram equal to a given rectilineal figure (X) not greater than the maximum inscribed parallelogram, and having an angle (B) common with the triangle.*

**Sol.**—Bisect the side  $AC$  opposite to  $B$ , at  $P$ . Draw  $PF$ ,  $PE$  parallel to the sides  $AB$ ,  $BC$ ; then [xxvii.]  $BP$  is the maximum parallelogram that can be inscribed in the triangle  $ABC$ ; and if  $X$  be equal to it, the problem is solved. If not, produce  $EP$ , and draw  $CJ$  parallel to  $PF$ ; then describe the parallelogram  $KLMN$  [xxv.] equal to the difference between the figure  $PJCF$  and  $X$ , and similar to  $PJCF$ , and so that the sides  $PJ$  and  $KL$  will be homologous; then cut off  $PI$  equal to  $KL$ ; draw  $IH$  parallel to  $AB$ , cutting  $AC$  in  $D$ , and draw  $DG$  parallel to  $BC$ .  $BD$  is the parallelogram required.

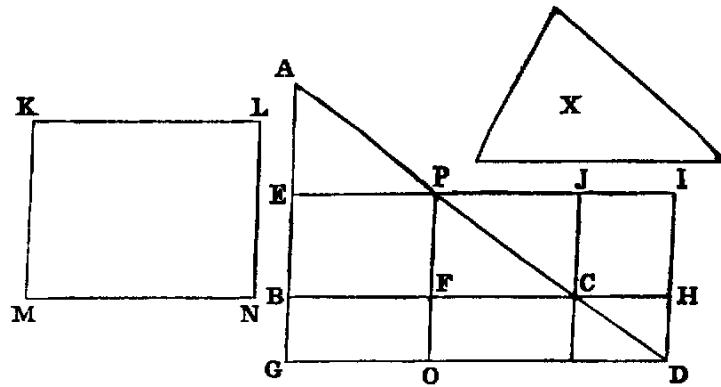


**Dem.**—Since the parallelograms  $PC$ ,  $PD$  are about the same diagonal, they are similar [xxiv.]; but  $PC$  is similar to  $KPT$  (const.); therefore  $PD$  is similar to  $KN$ , and (const.) their homologous sides,  $PI$  and  $KL$ , are equal; hence [xx.]  $PD$  is equal to  $KN$ . Now,  $PD$  is the difference between  $EF$  and  $GH$  [xxvii. Cor. 1], and  $KN$  is (const.) the difference between  $PC$  and  $X$ ; therefore the difference between  $PC$  and  $X$  is equal to the difference between  $EF$  and  $GH$ ; but  $EF$  is equal to  $PC$ . Hence  $GH$  is equal to  $X$ .

#### PROP. XXIX.—PROBLEM.

*To escribe to a given triangle (ABC) a parallelogram equal to a given rectilineal figure (X), and having an angle common with an external angle (B) of the triangle.*

**Sol.**—The construction is the same as the last, except that, instead of making the parallelogram  $KN$  equal to the excess of the parallelogram  $PC$  over the rectilineal figure  $X$ , we make it equal to their sum; and then make  $PI$  equal to  $KL$ ; draw  $IH$  parallel to  $AB$ , and the rest of the construction as before.



**Dem.**—Now it can be proved, as in II. vi., that the parallelogram  $BD$  is equal to the gnomon  $OHJ$ ; that is, equal to the difference between the parallelograms  $PD$  and  $PC$ , or the difference (const.) between  $KN$  and  $PC$ ; that is (const.), equal to  $X$ , and  $BD$  is escribed to the triangle  $ABC$ , and has an angle common with the external angle  $B$ . Hence the thing required is done.

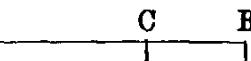
**Observation.**—The enunciations of the three foregoing Propositions have been altered, in order to express them in modern technical language. Some writers recommend the student to omit them—we think differently. In the form we have given them they are freed from their usual repulsive appearance. The constructions and demonstrations are Euclid's, but slightly modified.

#### PROP. XXX.—THEOREM.

To divide a given line ( $AB$ ) in “extreme and mean ratio.”

**Sol.**—Divide  $AB$  in  $C$ , so that the rectangle  $AB \cdot BC$  may be equal to the square on  $AC$  [II. xi.] Then  $C$  is the point required.

**Dem.**—Because the rectangle  $AB \cdot BC$  is equal to the square on  $AC$ ,  $AB : AC :: AC : BC$  [xvii.]. Hence  $AB$  is cut in extreme and mean ratio in  $C$  [Def. ii.].



#### Exercises.

1. If the three sides of a right-angled triangle be in continued proportion, the hypotenuse is divided in extreme and mean ratio by the perpendicular from the right angle on the hypotenuse.
2. In the same case the greater segment of the hypotenuse is equal to the least side of the triangle.
3. The square on the diameter of the circle described about the triangle formed by the points  $F$ ,  $H$ ,  $D$  (see fig. II. xi.), is equal to six times the square on the line  $FD$ .

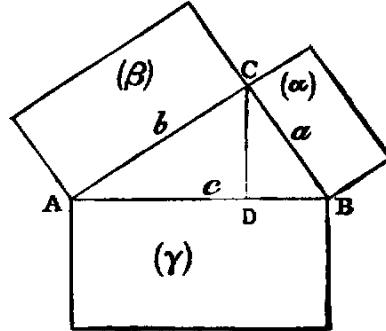
PROP. XXXI.—THEOREM.

*If any similar rectilineal figure be similarly described on the three sides of a right-angled triangle (ABC), the figure on the hypotenuse is equal to the sum of those described on the two other sides.*

**Dem.**—Draw the perpendicular  $CD$  [I. XII.]. Then because  $ABC$  is a right-angled triangle, and  $CD$  is drawn from the right angle perpendicular to the hypotenuse;  $BD : AD$  in the duplicate ratio of  $BA : AC$  [VIII. Cor. 4]. Again, because the figures described on  $BA, AC$  are similar, they are in the duplicate ratio of  $BA : AC$  [xx.]. Hence [V. XI.]  $BA : AD :: \text{figure described on } BA : \text{figure described on } AC$ . In like manner,  $AB : BD :: \text{figure described on } AB : \text{figure described on } BC$ . Hence [V. XXIV.]  $AB : \text{sum of } AD \text{ and } BD :: \text{figure described on the line } AB : \text{sum of the figures described on the lines } AC, BC$ ; but  $AB$  is equal to the sum of  $AD$  and  $BD$ . Therefore [V. A.] *the figure described on the line  $AB$  is equal to the sum of the similar figures described on the lines  $AC$  and  $BC$ .*

*Or thus:* Let us denote the sides by  $a, b, c$ , and the figures by  $\alpha, \beta, \gamma$ ; then because the figures are similar, we have [xx.]

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha : \gamma &:: a^2 : c^2 \\ \text{therefore } \frac{\alpha}{\gamma} &= \frac{a^2}{c^2}. \\ \text{In like manner, } \frac{\beta}{\gamma} &= \frac{b^2}{c^2}; \\ \text{therefore } \frac{\alpha + \beta}{\gamma} &= \frac{a^2 + b^2}{c^2}; \end{aligned}$$



but  $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$  [I. XLVII.]. Therefore  $\alpha + \beta = \gamma$ ; that is, *the sum of the figures on the sides is equal to the figure on the hypotenuse.*

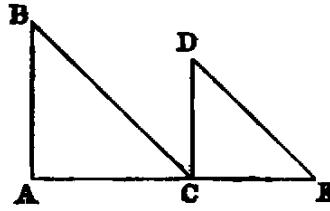
Exercise.

If semicircles be described on supplemental chords of a semicircle, the sum of the areas of the two crescents thus formed is equal to the area of the triangle whose sides are the supplemental chords and the diameter.

PROP. XXXII.—THEOREM.

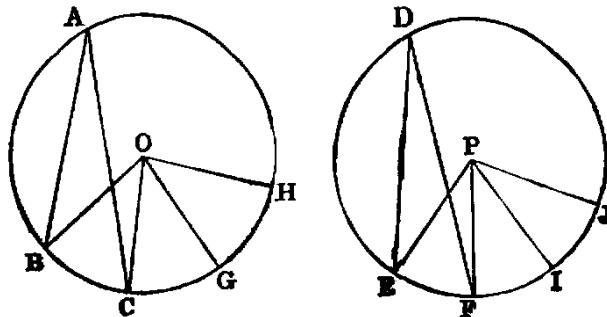
*If two triangles (ABC, CDE) which have two sides of one proportional to two sides of the other ( $AB : BC :: CD : DE$ ), and the contained angles ( $B, D$ ) equal, be joined at an angle (C), so as to have their homologous sides parallel, the remaining sides are in the same right line.*

**Dem.**—Because the triangles  $ABC$ ,  $CDE$  have the angles  $B$  and  $D$  equal, and the sides about these angles proportional, viz.,  $AB : BC :: CD : DE$ , they are equiangular [VI.]; therefore the angle  $BAC$  is equal to  $DCE$ . To each add  $ACD$ , and we have the sum of the angles  $BAC$ ,  $ACD$  equal to the sum of  $DCE$  and  $ACD$ ; but the sum of  $BAC$ ,  $ACD$  is [I. xxix.] two right angles; therefore the sum of  $DCE$  and  $ACD$  is two right angles. Hence [I. XIV.]  $AC$ ,  $CE$  are in the same right line.



#### PROP. XXXIII.—THEOREM.

*In equal circles, angles ( $BOC$ ,  $EPF$ ) at the centres or ( $BAC$ ,  $EDF$ ) at the circumferences have the same ratio to one another as the arcs ( $BC$ ,  $EF$ ) on which they stand, and so also have the sectors ( $BOC$ ,  $EPF$ ).*



**Dem.**—1. Take any number of arcs  $CG$ ,  $GH$  in the first circle, each equal to  $BC$ . Join  $OG$ ,  $OH$ , and in the second circle take any number of arcs  $FI$ ,  $IJ$ , each equal to  $EF$ . Join  $IP$ ,  $JP$ . Then because the arcs  $BC$ ,  $CG$ ,  $GH$  are all equal, the angles  $BOC$ ,  $COG$ ,  $GOH$ , are all equal [III. xxvii.]. Therefore the arc  $BH$  and the angle  $BOH$  are equimultiples of the arc  $BC$  and the angle  $BOC$ . In like manner it may be proved that the arc  $EJ$  and the angle  $EPJ$  are equimultiples of the arc  $EF$  and the angle  $EPF$ . Again, since the circles are equal, it is evident that the angle  $BOH$  is greater than, equal to, or less than the angle  $EPJ$ , according as the arc  $BH$  is greater than, equal to, or less than the arc  $EJ$ . Now we have four magnitudes, namely, the arc  $BC$ , the arc  $EF$ , the angle  $BOC$ , and the angle  $EPF$ ; and we have taken equimultiples of the first and third, namely, the arc  $BH$ , the angle  $BOH$ , and other equimultiples of the second and fourth, namely, the arc  $EJ$  and the angle  $EPJ$ , and we have proved that, according as the multiple of the first is greater than, equal to, or less than the multiple of the second, the multiple of the third is greater than, equal to, or less than the multiple of the fourth. Hence [V. Def. v.]  $BC : EF ::$  the angle  $BOC : EPF$ .

Again, since the angle  $BAC$  is half the angle  $BOC$  [III. xx.], and  $EDF$  is half the angle  $EPF$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ll} BAC : EDF :: BOC : EPF & \text{[V. xv.];} \\ \text{but} & BOC : EPF :: BC : EF. \\ \text{Hence} & BAC : EDF :: BC : EF \quad \text{[V. xi.].} \end{array}$$

2. The sector  $BOC$  : sector  $EPF :: BC : EF$ .

**Dem.**—The same construction being made, since the arc  $BC$  is equal to  $CG$ , the angle  $BOC$  is equal to  $COG$ . Hence the sectors  $BOC$ ,  $COG$  are congruent (*see Observation, Proposition XXIX., Book III.*); therefore they are equal. In like manner the sectors  $COG$ ,  $GOH$  are equal. Hence there are as many equal sectors as there are equal arcs; therefore the arc  $BH$  and the sector  $BOH$  are equimultiples of the arc  $BC$  and the sector  $BOC$ . In the same manner it may be proved that the arc  $EJ$  and the sector  $EPJ$  are equimultiples of the arc  $EF$  and the sector  $EPF$ ; and it is evident, by superposition, that if the arc  $BH$  is greater than, equal to, or less than the arc  $EJ$ , the sector  $BOH$  is greater than, equal to, or less than the sector  $EPJ$ . Hence [V. Def. v.] *the arc  $BC$  :  $EF ::$  sector  $BOC$  : sector  $EPF$ .*

The second part may be proved as follows:—

Sector  $BOC = \frac{1}{2}$  rectangle contained by the arc  $BC$ , and the radius of the circle  $ABC$  [xx. Ex. 14] and sector  $EPF = \frac{1}{2}$  rectangle contained by the arc  $EF$  and the radius of the circle  $EDF$ ; and since the circles are equal, their radii are equal. Hence, sector  $BOC$  : sector  $EPF ::$  arc  $BC$  : arc  $EF$ .

#### Questions for Examination on Book VI.

1. What is the subject-matter of Book VI.? *Ans.* Application of the theory of proportion.
2. What are similar rectilineal figures?
3. What do similar figures agree in?
4. How many conditions are necessary to define similar triangles?
5. How many to define similar rectilineal figures of more than three sides?
6. When is a figure said to be given in species?
7. When in magnitude?
8. When in position?
9. What is a mean proportional between two lines?
10. Define two mean proportionals.
11. What is the altitude of a rectilineal figure?
12. If two triangles have equal altitudes, how do their areas vary?
13. How do these areas vary if they have equal bases but unequal altitudes?
14. If both bases and altitudes differ, how do the areas vary?
15. When are two lines divided proportionally?
16. If in two lines divided proportionally a pair of homologous points coincide with their point of intersection, what property holds for the lines joining the other pairs of homologous points?
17. Define reciprocal proportion.
18. If two triangles have equal areas, prove that their perpendiculars are reciprocally proportional to the bases.
19. What is meant by figures inversely similar?
20. If two figures be inversely similar, how can they be changed into figures directly similar?

21. Give an example of two triangles inversely similar. *Ans.* If two lines passing through any point  $O$  outside a circle intersect it in pairs of points  $A, A'; B, B'$ , respectively, the triangles  $OAB, OA'B'$ , are inversely similar.
22. What point is it round which a figure can be turned so as to bring its sides into positions of parallelism with the sides of a similar rectilineal figure. *Ans.* The centre of similitude of the two figures.
23. How many figures similar to a given rectilineal figure of sides can be described on a given line?
24. How many centres of similitude can two regular polygons of  $n$  sides each have? *Ans.*  $n$  centres, which lie on a circle.
25. What are homothetic figures?
26. How do the areas of similar rectilineal figures vary?
27. What proposition is XIX. a special case of?
28. Define Philo's line.
29. How many centres of similitude have two circles?

### Exercises on Book VI.

1. If in a fixed triangle we draw a variable parallel to the base, the locus of the points of intersection of the diagonals of the trapezium thus cut off from the triangle is the median that bisects the base.

2. Find the locus of the point which divides in a given ratio the several lines drawn from a given point to the circumference of a given circle.

3. Two lines  $AB, XY$ , are given in position:  $AB$  is divided in  $C$  in the ratio  $m : n$ , and parallels  $AA', BB', CC'$ , are drawn in any direction meeting  $XY$  in the points  $A', B', C'$ ; prove

$$(m+n)CC' = nAA' + mBB'.$$

4. Three concurrent lines from the vertices of a triangle  $ABC$  meet the opposite sides in  $A', B', C'$ ; prove

$$AB' \cdot BC' \cdot CA' = A'B \cdot B'C \cdot C'A.$$

5. If a transversal meet the sides of a triangle  $ABC$  in the points  $A', B', C'$ ; prove

$$AB' \cdot BC' \cdot CA' = -A'B \cdot B'C \cdot C'A.$$

6. If on a variable line  $AC$ , drawn from a fixed point  $A$  to any point  $B$  in the circumference of a given circle, a point  $C$  be taken such that the rectangle  $AB \cdot AC$  is constant, the locus of  $C$  is a circle.

7. If  $D$  be the middle point of the base  $BC$  of a triangle  $ABC$ ,  $E$  the foot of the perpendicular,  $L$  the point where the bisector of the angle  $A$  meets  $BC$ ,  $H$  the point of contact of the inscribed circle with  $BC$ ; prove  $DE \cdot HL = HE \cdot HD$ .

8. In the same case, if  $K$  be the point of contact with  $BC$  of the escribed circle, which touches the other sides produced,  $LH \cdot BK = BD \cdot LE$ .

9. If  $R, r, r', r'', r'''$  be the radii of the circumscribed, the inscribed, and the escribed circles of a plane triangle,  $d, d', d'', d'''$  the distances of the centre of the circumscribed circle from the centres of the others, then  $R^2 = d^2 + 2Rr = d'^2 - 2Rr'$ , &c.

10. In the same case,  $12R^2 = d^2 + d'^2 + d''^2 + d'''^2$ .

11. If  $p', p'', p'''$  denote the perpendiculars of a triangle, then

$$(1) \frac{1}{p'} + \frac{1}{p''} + \frac{1}{p'''} = \frac{1}{r};$$

$$(2) \frac{1}{p''} + \frac{1}{p'''} - \frac{1}{p'} = \frac{1}{r'}, \text{ &c.};$$

$$(3) \frac{2}{p'} = \frac{1}{r} - \frac{1}{r'}, \text{ &c.};$$

$$(4) \frac{2}{p'} = \frac{1}{r''} + \frac{1}{r'''}, \text{ &c.}$$

12. In a given triangle inscribe another of given form, and having one of its angles at a given point in one of the sides of the original triangle.

13. If a triangle of given form move so that its three sides pass through three fixed points, the locus of any point in its plane is a circle.

14. The angle  $A$  and the area of a triangle  $ABC$  are given in magnitude: if the point  $A$  be fixed in position, and the point  $B$  move along a fixed line or circle, the locus of the point  $C$  is a circle.

15. One of the vertices of a triangle of given form remains fixed; the locus of another is a right line or circle; find the locus of the third.

16. Find the area of a triangle—(1) in terms of its medians; (2) in terms of its perpendiculars.

17. If two circles touch externally, their common tangent is a mean proportional between their diameters.

18. If there be given three parallel lines, and two fixed points  $A, B$ ; then if the lines of connexion of  $A$  and  $B$  to any variable point in one of the parallels intersect the other parallels in the points  $C$  and  $D, E$  and  $F$ , respectively,  $CF$  and  $DE$  pass each through a fixed point.

19. If a system of circles pass through two fixed points, any two secants passing through one of the points are cut proportionally by the circles.

20. Find a point  $O$  in the plane of a triangle  $ABC$ , such that the diameters of the three circles, about the triangles  $OAB, OBC, OCA$ , may be in the ratios of three given lines.

21.  $ABCD$  is a cyclic quadrilateral: the lines  $AB, AD$ , and the point  $C$ , are given in position; find the locus of the point which divides  $BD$  in a given ratio.

22.  $CA, CB$  are two tangents to a circle;  $BE$  is perpendicular to  $AD$ , the diameter through  $A$ ; prove that  $CD$  bisects  $BE$ .

23. If three lines from the vertices of a triangle  $ABC$  to any interior point  $O$  meet the opposite sides in the points  $A', B', C'$ ; prove

$$\frac{OA'}{AA'} + \frac{OB'}{BB'} + \frac{OC'}{CC'} = 1.$$

24. If three concurrent lines  $OA, OB, OC$  be cut by two transversals in the two systems of points  $A, B, C; A', B', C'$ , respectively: prove

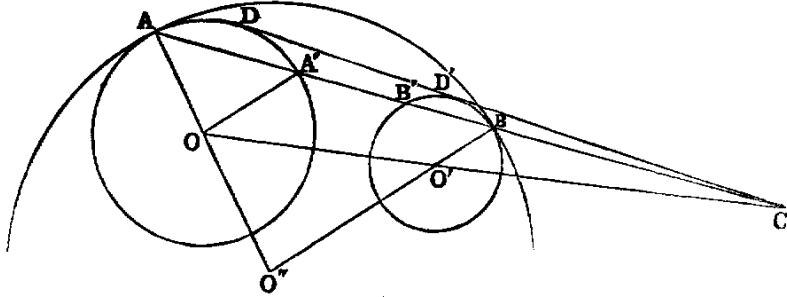
$$\frac{AB}{A'B'} \cdot \frac{OC}{OC'} = \frac{BC}{B'C'} \cdot \frac{OA}{OA'} = \frac{CA}{C'A'} c \frac{OB}{OB'}.$$

25. The line joining the middle points of the diagonals of a quadrilateral circumscribed to a circle—

- (1) divides each pair of opposite sides into inversely proportional segments;
- (2) is divided by each pair of opposite lines into segments which, measured from the centre, are proportional to the sides;
- (3) is divided by both pairs of opposite sides into segments which, measured from either diagonal, have the same ratio to each other.

26. If  $CD, CD'$  be the internal and external bisectors of the angle  $C$  of the triangle  $ACB$ , the three rectangles  $AD \cdot DB, AC \cdot CB, AD' \cdot BD'$  are proportional to the squares of  $AD, AC, AD'$ ; and are—(1) in arithmetical progression if the difference of the base angles be equal to a right angle; (2) in geometrical progression if one base angle be right; (3) in harmonical progression if the sum of the base angles be equal to a right angle.

27. If a variable circle touch two fixed circles, the chord of contact passes through a fixed point on the line connecting the centres of the fixed circles.



**Dem.**—Let  $O, O'$  be the centres of the two fixed circles;  $O''$  the centre of the variable circle;  $A, B$  the points of contact. Let  $AB$  and  $OO'$  meet in  $C$ , and cut the fixed circles again in the points  $A', B'$  respectively. Join  $A'O, AO, BO'$ . Then  $AO, BO'$  meet in  $O''$  [III. xi.]. Now, because the triangles  $OAA'$ ,  $O''AB$  are isosceles, the angle  $O''BA = O''AB = O'A'A$ . Hence  $O'A'$  is parallel to  $O'B$ ; therefore  $OC : O'C :: OA' : O'B$ ; that is, in a given ratio. Hence  $C$  is a given point.

28. If  $DD'$  be the common tangent to the two circles,  $DD'^2 = AB' \cdot A'B$ .
29. If  $R$  denote the radius of  $O''$  and  $\rho, \rho'$ , the radii of  $O, O'$ ,  $DD'^2 : AB^2 :: (R \pm \rho)(R \pm \rho') : R^2$ , the choice of sign depending on the nature of the contacts. This follows from 28.
30. If four circles be tangential to a fifth, and if we denote by  $\overline{12}$  the common tangent to the first and second, &c., then

$$\overline{12} \cdot \overline{34} + \overline{23} \cdot \overline{14} = \overline{13} \cdot \overline{24}.$$

31. The inscribed and escribed circles of any triangle are all touched by its nine-points circle.
32. The four triangles which are determined by four points, taken three by three, are such that their nine-points circles have one common point.
33. If  $a, b, c, d$  denote the four sides, and  $D, D'$  the diagonals of a quadrilateral; prove that the sides of the triangle, formed by joining the feet of the perpendiculars from any of its angular points on the sides of the triangle formed by the three remaining points, are proportional to the three rectangles  $ac, bd, DD'$ .
34. Prove the converse of Ptolemy's theorem (see xvii., Ex. 13).
35. Describe a circle which shall—(1) pass through a given point, and touch two given circles; (2) touch three given circles.
36. If a variable circle touch two fixed circles, the tangent to it from their centre of similitude, through which the chord of contact passes (27), is of constant length.
37. If the lines  $AD, BD'$  (see fig., Ex. 27) be produced, they meet in a point on the circumference of  $O''$ , and the line  $O''P$  is perpendicular to  $DD'$ .
38. If  $A, B$  be two fixed points on two lines given in position, and  $A', B'$  two variable points, such that the ratio  $AA' : BB'$  is constant, the locus of the point dividing  $A'B'$  in a given ratio is a right line.
39. If a line  $EF$  divide proportionally two opposite sides of a quadrilateral, and a line  $GH$  the other sides, each of these is divided by the other in the same ratio as the sides which determine them.
40. In a given circle inscribe a triangle, such that the triangle whose angular points are the feet of the perpendiculars from the extremities of the base on the bisector of the vertical angle, and the foot of the perpendicular from the vertical angle on the base, may be a maximum.
41. In a circle, the point of intersection of the diagonals of any inscribed quadrilateral coincides with the point of intersection of the diagonals of the circumscribed quadrilateral, whose sides touch the circle at the angular points of the inscribed quadrilateral.
42. Through two given points describe a circle whose common chord with another given circle may be parallel to a given line, or pass through a given point.
43. Being given the centre of a circle, describe it so as to cut the legs of a given angle along a chord parallel to a given line.

44. If concurrent lines drawn from the angles of a polygon of an odd number of sides divide the opposite sides each into two segments, the product of one set of alternate segments is equal to the product of the other set.
45. If a triangle be described about a circle, the lines from the points of contact of its sides with the circle to the opposite angular points are concurrent.
46. If a triangle be inscribed in a circle, the tangents to the circle at its three angular points meet the three opposite sides at three collinear points.
47. The external bisectors of the angles of a triangle meet the opposite sides in three collinear points.
48. Describe a circle touching a given line at a given point, and cutting a given circle at a given angle.
- DEF.—*The centre of mean position of any number of points A, B, C, D, &c., is a point which may be found as follows:*—Bisect the line joining any two points A, B, in G. Join G to a third point C; divide GC in H, so that  $GH = \frac{1}{3}GC$ . Join H to a fourth point D, and divide HD in K, so that  $HK = \frac{1}{4}HD$ , and so on. The last point found will be the centre of mean position of the given points.
49. The centre of mean position of the angular points of a regular polygon is the centre of figure of the polygon.
50. The sum of the perpendiculars let fall from any system of points A, B, C, D, &c., whose number is  $n$  on any line  $L$ , is equal to  $n$  times the perpendicular from the centre of mean position on  $L$ .
51. The sum of the squares of lines drawn from any system of points A, B, C, D, &c., to any point  $P$ , exceeds the sum of the squares of lines from the same points to their centre of mean position,  $O$ , by  $nOP^2$ .
52. If a point be taken within a triangle, so as to be the centre of mean position of the feet of the perpendiculars drawn from it to the sides of the triangle, the sum of the squares of the perpendiculars is a minimum.
53. Construct a quadrilateral, being given two opposite angles, the diagonals, and the angle between the diagonals.
54. A circle rolls inside another of double its diameter; find the locus of a fixed point in its circumference.
55. Two points, C, D, in the circumference of a given circle are on the same side of a given diameter; find a point P in the circumference at the other side of the given diameter, AB, such that PC, PD may cut AB at equal distances from the centre.
56. If the sides of any polygon be cut by a transversal, the product of one set of alternate segments is equal to the product of the remaining set.
57. A transversal being drawn cutting the sides of a triangle, the lines from the angles of the triangle to the middle points of the segments of the transversal intercepted by those angles meet the opposite sides in collinear points.
58. If lines be drawn from any point  $P$  to the angles of a triangle, the perpendiculars at  $P$  to these lines meet the opposite sides of the triangle in three collinear points.
59. Divide a given semicircle into two parts by a perpendicular to the diameter, so that the radii of the circles inscribed in them may have a given ratio.
60. From a point within a triangle perpendiculars are let fall on the sides; find the locus of the point, when the sum of the squares of the lines joining the feet of the perpendiculars is given.
61. If a circle make given intercepts on two fixed lines, the rectangle contained by the perpendiculars from its centre on the bisectors of the angle formed by the lines is given.
62. If the base and the difference of the base angles of a triangle be given, the rectangle contained by the perpendiculars from the vertex on two lines through the middle point of the base, parallel to the internal and external bisectors of the vertical angle, is constant.
63. The rectangle contained by the perpendiculars from the extremities of the base of a triangle, on the internal bisector of the vertical angle, is equal to the rectangle contained by the external bisector and the perpendicular from the middle of the base on the internal bisector.
64. State and prove the corresponding theorem for perpendiculars on the external bisector.

65. If  $R, R'$  denote the radii of the circles inscribed in the triangles into which a right-angled triangle is divided by the perpendicular from the right angle on the hypotenuse; then, if  $c$  be the hypotenuse, and  $s$  the semiperimeter,  $R^2 + R'^2 = (s - c)^2$ .

66. If  $A, B, C, D$  be four collinear points, find a point  $O$  in the same line with them such that  $OA \cdot OD = OB \cdot OC$ .

67. The four sides of a cyclic quadrilateral are given; construct it.

68. Being given two circles, find the locus of a point such that tangents from it to the circles may have a given ratio.

69. If four points  $A, B, C, D$  be collinear, find the locus of the point  $P$  at which  $AB$  and  $CD$  subtend equal angles.

70. If a circle touch internally two sides,  $CA, CB$ , of a triangle and its circumscribed circle, the distance from  $C$  to the point of contact on either side is a fourth proportional to the semiperimeter, and  $CA, CB$ .

71. State and prove the corresponding theorem for a circle touching the circumscribed circle externally and two sides produced.

72. *Pascal's Theorem.*—If the opposite sides of an irregular hexagon  $ABCDEF$  inscribed in a circle be produced till they meet, the three points of intersection  $G, H, I$  are collinear.

**Dem.**—Join  $AD$ . Describe a circle about the triangle  $ADI$ , cutting the lines  $AF, CD$  produced, if necessary, in  $K$  and  $L$ . Join  $IK, KL, LI$ . Now, the angles  $KLG, FCG$  are each [III. xxii.] equal to the angle  $GAD$ . Hence they are equal. Therefore  $KL$  is parallel to  $CF$ . Similarly,  $LI$  is parallel to  $CH$ , and  $KI$  to  $FH$ ; hence the triangles  $KLI, FCH$  are homothetic. Hence the lines joining corresponding vertices are concurrent. Therefore the points  $I, H, G$  are collinear.

73. If two sides of a triangle circumscribed to a given circle be given in position, but the third side variable, the circle described about the triangle touches a fixed circle.

74. If two sides of a triangle be given in position, and if the area be given in magnitude, two points can be found, at each of which the base subtends a constant angle.

75. If  $a, b, c, d$  denote the sides of a cyclic quadrilateral, and  $s$  its semiperimeter, prove its area  $= \sqrt{(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)(s-d)}$ .

76. If three concurrent lines from the angles of a triangle  $ABC$  meet the opposite side in the points  $A', B', C'$ , and the points  $A', B', C'$  be joined, forming a second triangle  $A'B'C'$ ,

$$\triangle ABC : \triangle A'B'C' :: AB \cdot BC \cdot CA : 2AB' \cdot BC' \cdot CA'.$$

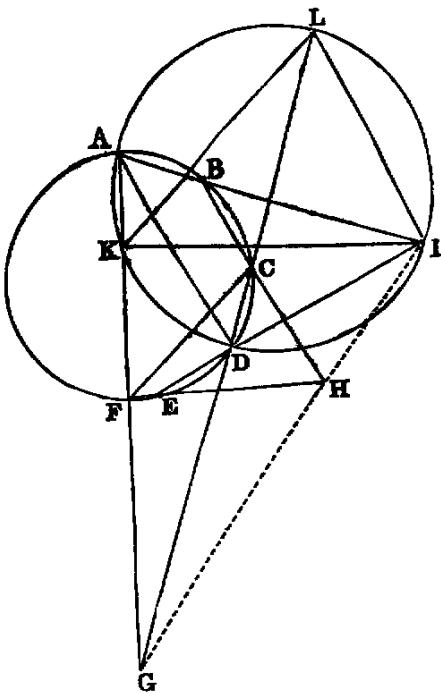
77. In the same case the diameter of the circle circumscribed about the triangle  $ABC = AB' \cdot BC' \cdot CA'$  divided by the area of  $A'B'C'$ .

78. If a quadrilateral be inscribed in one circle, and circumscribed to another, the square of its area is equal to the product of its four sides.

79. If on the sides  $AB, AC$  of a triangle  $ABC$  we take two points  $D, E$ , and on their line of connexion  $F$ , such that

$$\frac{BD}{AD} = \frac{AE}{CE} = \frac{DF}{EF};$$

prove the triangle  $BFC = 2ADE$ .



80. If through the middle points of each of the two diagonals of a quadrilateral we draw a parallel to the other, the lines drawn from their points of intersection to the middle points of the sides divide the quadrilateral into four equal parts.

81.  $CE$ ,  $DF$  are perpendiculars to the diameter of a semicircle, and two circles are described touching  $CE$ ,  $DE$ , and the semicircle, one internally and the other externally; the rectangle contained by the perpendiculars from their centres on  $AB$  is equal to  $CE \cdot DF$ .

82. If lines be drawn from any point in the circumference of a circle to the angular points of any inscribed regular polygon of an odd number of sides, the sums of the alternate lines are equal.

83. If at the extremities of a chord drawn through a given point within a given circle tangents be drawn, the sum of the reciprocals of the perpendiculars from the point upon the tangents is constant.

84. If a cyclic quadrilateral be such that three of its sides pass through three fixed collinear points, the fourth side passes through a fourth fixed point, collinear with the three given ones.

85. If all the sides of a polygon be parallel to given lines, and if the loci of all the angles but one be right lines, the locus of the remaining angle is also a right line.

86. If the vertical angle and the bisector of the vertical angle be given, the sum of the reciprocals of the containing sides is constant.

87. If  $P$ ,  $P'$  denote the areas of two regular polygons of any common number of sides, inscribed and circumscribed to a circle, and  $\Pi$ ,  $\Pi'$  the areas of the corresponding polygons of double the number of sides; prove  $\Pi$  is a geometric mean between  $P$  and  $P'$ , and  $\Pi'$  a harmonic mean between  $\Pi$  and  $P'$ .

88. The difference of the areas of the triangles formed by joining the centres of the circles described about the equilateral triangles constructed—(1) outwards; (2) inwards—on the sides of any triangle, is equal to the area of that triangle.

89. In the same case, the sum of the squares of the sides of the two new triangles is equal to the sum of the squares of the sides of the original triangle.

90. If  $R$ ,  $r$  denote the radii of the circumscribed and inscribed circles to a regular polygon of any number of sides,  $R'$ ,  $r'$ , corresponding radii to a regular polygon of the same area, and double the number of sides; prove

$$R' = \sqrt{Rr}, \text{ and } r' = \sqrt{\frac{r(R+r)}{2}}.$$

91. If the altitude of a triangle be equal to its base, the sum of the distances of the orthocentre from the base and from the middle point of the base is equal to half the base.

92. In any triangle, the radius of the circumscribed circle is to the radius of the circle which is the locus of the vertex, when the base and the ratio of the sides are given, as the difference of the squares of the sides is to four times the area.

93. Given the area of a parallelogram, one of its angles, and the difference between its diagonals; construct the parallelogram.

94. If a variable circle touch two equal circles, one internally and the other externally, and perpendiculars be let fall from its centre on the transverse tangents to these circles, the rectangle of the intercepts between the feet of these perpendiculars and the intersection of the tangents is constant.

95. Given the base of a triangle, the vertical angle, and the point in the base whose distance from the vertex is equal half the sum of the sides; construct the triangle.

96. If the middle point of the base  $BC$  of an isosceles triangle  $ABC$  be the centre of a circle touching the equal sides, prove that any variable tangent to the circle will cut the sides in points  $D$ ,  $E$ , such that the rectangle  $BD \cdot CE$  will be constant.

97. Inscribe in a given circle a trapezium, the sum of whose opposite parallel sides is given, and whose area is given.

98. Inscribe in a given circle a polygon all whose sides pass through given points.

99. If two circles  $X$ ,  $Y$  be so related that a triangle may be inscribed in  $X$  and circumscribed about  $Y$ , an infinite number of such triangles can be constructed.

100. In the same case, the circle inscribed in the triangle formed by joining the points of contact on  $Y$  touches a given circle.

101. And the circle described about the triangle formed by drawing tangents to  $X$ , at the angular points of the inscribed triangle, touches a given circle.

102. Find a point, the sum of whose distances from three given points may be a minimum.
103. A line drawn through the intersection of two tangents to a circle is divided harmonically by the circle and the chord of contact.
104. To construct a quadrilateral similar to a given one whose four sides shall pass through four given points.
105. To construct a quadrilateral, similar to a given one, whose four vertices shall lie on four given lines.
106. Given the base of a triangle, the difference of the base angles, and the rectangle of the sides; construct the triangle.
107.  $ABCD$  is a square, the side  $CD$  is bisected in  $E$ , and the line  $EF$  drawn, making the angle  $AEF = EAB$ ; prove that  $EF$  divides the side  $BC$  in the ratio of  $2 : 1$ .
108. If any chord be drawn through a fixed point on a diameter of a circle, and its extremities joined to either end of the diameter, the joining lines cut off, on the tangent at the other end, portions whose rectangle is constant.
109. If two circles touch, and through their point of contact two secants be drawn at right angles to each other, cutting the circles respectively in the points  $A, A'; B, B'$ ; then  $AA'^2 + BB'^2$  is constant.
110. If two secants at right angles to each other, passing through one of the points of intersection of two circles, cut the circles again, and the line through their centres in the two systems of points  $a, b, c; a', b', c'$  respectively, then  $ab : bc :: a'b' : b'c'$ .
111. Two circles described to touch an ordinate of a semicircle, the semicircle itself, and the semicircles on the segments of the diameter, are equal to one another.
112. If a chord of a given circle subtend a right angle at a given point, the locus of the intersection of the tangents at its extremities is a circle.
113. The rectangle contained by the segments of the base of a triangle, made by the point of contact of the inscribed circle, is equal to the rectangle contained by the perpendiculars from the extremities of the base on the bisector of the vertical angle.
114. If  $O$  be the centre of the inscribed circle of the triangle prove
- $$\frac{OA^2}{bc} + \frac{OB^2}{ca} + \frac{OC^2}{ab} = 1.$$
115. State and prove the corresponding theorems for the centres of the escribed circles.
116. Four points  $A, B, C, D$  are collinear; find a point  $P$  at which the segments  $AB, BC, CD$  subtend equal angles.
117. The product of the bisectors of the three angles of a triangle whose sides are  $a, b, c$ , is
- $$\frac{8abc \cdot \text{area}}{(a+b)(b+c)(c+a)}.$$
118. In the same case the product of the alternate segments of the sides made by the bisectors of the angles is
- $$\frac{a^2b^2c^2}{(a+b)(b+c)(c+a)}.$$
119. If three of the six points in which a circle meets the sides of any triangle be such, that the lines joining them to the opposite vertices are concurrent, the same property is true of the three remaining points.
120. If a triangle  $A'B'C'$  be inscribed in another  $ABC$ , prove
- $$AB' \cdot BC' \cdot CA' + A'B \cdot B'C \cdot C'A$$
- is equal twice the triangle  $A'B'C'$  multiplied by the diameter of the circle  $ABC$ .
121. Construct a polygon of an odd number of sides, being given that the sides taken in order are divided in given ratios by fixed points.
122. If the external diagonal of a quadrilateral inscribed in a given circle be a chord of another given circle, the locus of its middle point is a circle.
123. If a chord of one circle be a tangent to another, the line connecting the middle point of each arc which it cuts off on the first, to its point of contact with the second, passes through a given point.
124. From a point  $P$  in the plane of a given polygon perpendiculars are let fall on its sides; if the area of the polygon formed by joining the feet of the perpendiculars be given, the locus of  $P$  is a circle.

# BOOK XI.

## THEORY OF PLANES, COPLANAR LINES, AND SOLID ANGLES

---

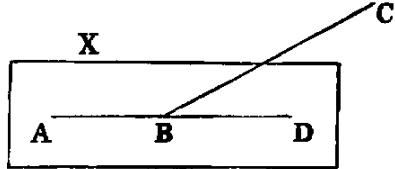
### DEFINITIONS.

- I. When two or more lines are in one plane they are said to be *coplanar*.
- II. The angle which one plane makes with another is called a *dihedral angle*.
- III. A *solid angle* is that which is made by more than two plane angles, in different planes, meeting in a point.
- IV. The point is called the *vertex* of the solid angle.
- V. If a solid angle be composed of three plane angles it is called a *triangular angle*; if of four, a *tetrahedral angle*; and if of more than four, a *polyhedral angle*.

### PROP. I.—THEOREM.

*One part (AB) of a right line cannot be in a plane (X), and another part (BC) not in it.*

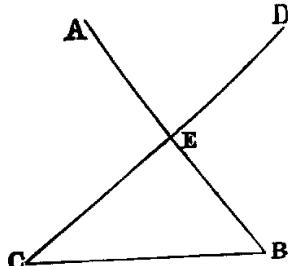
**Dem.**—Since  $AB$  is in the plane  $X$ , it can be produced in it [Bk. I. Post. II.]; let it be produced to  $D$ . Then, if  $BC$  be not in  $X$ , let any other plane passing through  $AD$  be turned round  $AD$  until it passes through the point  $C$ . Now, because the points  $B$ ,  $C$  are in this second plane, the line  $BC$  [I., Def. VI.] is in it. Therefore the two right lines  $ABC$ ,  $ABD$  lying in one plane have a common segment  $AB$ , which is impossible. Therefore, &c.



### PROP. II.—THEOREM.

*Two right lines (AB, CD) which intersect one another in any point (E) are coplanar, and so also are any three right lines (EC, CB, BE) which form a triangle.*

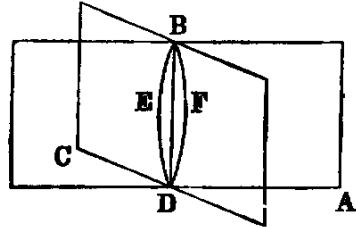
**Dem.**—Let any plane pass through  $EB$ , and be turned round it until it passes through  $C$ . Then because the points  $E$ ,  $C$  are in this plane, the right line  $EC$  is in it [I., Def. VI.]. For the same reason the line  $BC$  is in it. Therefore the lines  $EC$ ,  $CB$ ,  $BE$  are coplanar; but  $AB$  and  $CD$  are two of these lines. Hence  $AB$  and  $CD$  are coplanar.



PROP. III.—THEOREM.

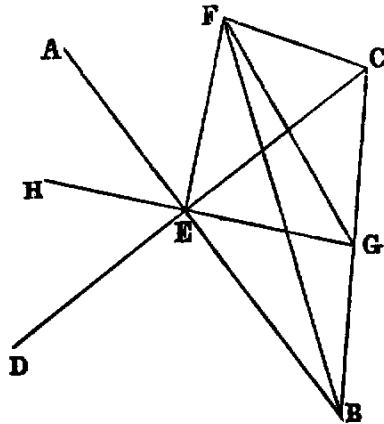
*If two planes (AB, BC) cut one another, their common section (BD) is a right line.*

**Dem.**—If not from B to D, draw in the plane AB the right line BED, and in the plane BC the right line BFD. Then the right lines BED, BFD enclose a space, which [I., Axiom x.] is impossible. *Therefore the common section BD of the two planes must be a right line.*



PROP. IV.—THEOREM.

*If a right line (EF) be perpendicular to each of two intersecting lines (AB, CD), it will be perpendicular to any line GH, which is both coplanar and concurrent with them.*



**Dem.**—Through any point G in GH draw a line BC intersecting AB, CD, and so as to be bisected in G; and join any point F in EF to B, G, C. Then, because EF is perpendicular to the lines EB, EC, we have

$$BF^2 = BE^2 + EF^2, \quad \text{and} \quad CF^2 = CE^2 + EF^2;$$

$$\therefore BF^2 + CF^2 = BE^2 + CE^2 + 2EF^2.$$

Again  $BF^2 + CF^2 = 2BG^2 + 2GF^2$  [II. x. Ex. 2],

and  $BE^2 + CE^2 = 2BG^2 + 2GE^2$ ;

$$\therefore 2BG^2 + 2GF^2 = 2BG^2 + 2GE^2 + 2EF^2;$$

$$\therefore GF^2 = GE^2 + EF^2.$$

Hence the angle  $GEF$  is right, and  $EF$  is perpendicular to  $EG$ .

**DEF. VI.**—A line such as  $EF$ , which is perpendicular to a system of concurrent and coplanar lines, is said to be perpendicular to the plane of these lines, and is called a NORMAL to it.

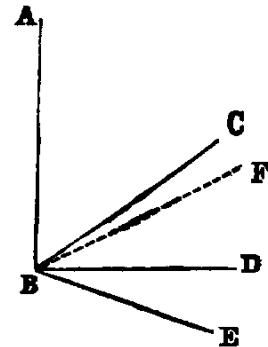
**Cor. 1.**—The normal is the least line that may be drawn from a given point to a given plane; and of all others that may be drawn to it, the lines of any system making equal angles with the normal are equal to each other.

**Cor. 2.**—A perpendicular to each of two intersecting lines is normal to their plane.

#### PROP. V.—THEOREM.

If three concurrent lines ( $BC$ ,  $BD$ ,  $BE$ ) have a common perpendicular ( $AB$ ), they are coplanar.

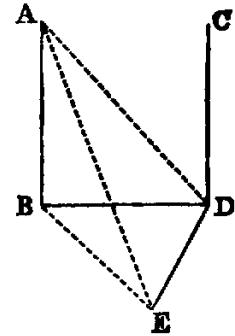
**Dem.**—For if possible let  $BC$  be not coplanar with  $BD$ ,  $BE$ , and let the plane of  $AB$ ,  $BC$  intersect the plane of  $BD$ ,  $BE$  in the line  $BF$ . Then [XI. III.]  $BF$  is a right line; and, since it is coplanar with  $BD$ ,  $BE$ , which are each perpendicular to  $AB$ , it is [XI. IV.] perpendicular to  $AB$ . Therefore the angle  $ABF$  is right; and the angle  $ABC$  is right (hyp.). Hence  $ABC$  is equal to  $ABF$ , which is impossible [I., Axiom IX.]. Therefore the lines  $BC$ ,  $BD$ ,  $BE$  are coplanar.



#### PROP. VI.—THEOREM.

If two right lines ( $AB$ ,  $CD$ ) be normals to the same plane ( $X$ ), they shall be parallel to one another.

**Dem.**—Let  $AB$ ,  $CD$  meet the plane  $X$  at the points  $B$ ,  $D$ . Join  $BD$ , and in the plane  $X$  draw  $DE$  at right angles to  $BD$ ; take any point  $E$  in  $DE$ . Join  $BE$ ,  $AE$ ,  $AD$ . Then because  $AB$  is normal to  $X$ , the angle  $ABE$  is right. Therefore  $AE^2 = AB^2 + BE^2 = AB^2 + BD^2 + DE^2$ ; because the angle  $BDE$  is right. But  $AB^2 + BD^2 = AD^2$ , because the angle  $ABD$  is right. Hence  $AE^2 = AD^2 + DE^2$ . Therefore the angle  $ADE$  is right. [I. XLVIII]. And since  $CD$  is normal to the plane  $X$ ,  $DE$  is perpendicular to  $CD$ . Hence  $DE$  is a common perpendicular to the three concurrent lines  $CD$ ,  $AD$ ,  $BD$ . Therefore these lines are coplanar [XI. v.]. But  $AB$  is coplanar with  $AD$ ,  $BD$  [XI. ii.]. Therefore the lines  $AD$ ,  $BD$ ,  $CD$  are coplanar; and since the angles  $ABD$ ,  $BDC$  are right, the line  $AB$  is parallel to  $CD$  [I. xxviii.].



**DEF. VII.**—If from every point in a given line normals be drawn to a given plane, the locus of their feet is called the projection of the given line on the plane.

Exercises.

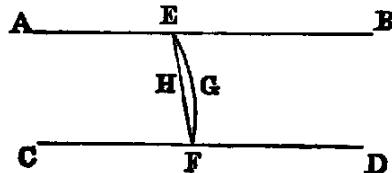
1. The projection of any line on a plane is a right line.
2. The projection on either of two intersecting planes of a normal to the other plane is perpendicular to the line of intersection of the planes.

PROP. VII.—THEOREM.

*Two parallel lines (AB, CD) and any line (EF) intersecting them are coplanar.*

**Dem.**—If possible let the intersecting line be out of the plane, as EGF. And in the plane, of the parallels draw [I. Post. II.] the right line EHF. Then we have two right lines EGF, EHF, enclosing a space, which [I. Axiom X.] is impossible. Hence the two parallel right lines and the transversal are coplanar.

*Or thus:* Since the points E, F are in the plane of the parallels, the line joining these points is in that plane [I. Def. vi].



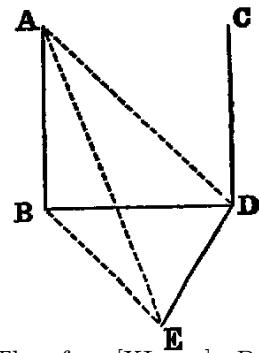
PROP. VIII.—THEOREM.

*If one (AB) of two parallel right lines (AB, CD), be normal to a plane (X), the other line (CD) shall be normal to the same plane.*

**Dem.**—Let AB, CD meet the plane X in the points B, D. Join BD. Then the lines AB, BD, CD are coplanar. Now in the plane X, to which AB is normal, draw DE at right angles to BD. Take any point E in DE, and join BE, AE, AD.

Then because AB is normal to the plane X, it is perpendicular to the line BE in that plane [XI. Def. VI.]. Hence the angle ABE is right; therefore  $AE^2 = AB^2 + BE^2 = AB^2 + BD^2 + DE^2$  (because BDE is right (const.))  $= AD^2 + DE^2$  (because ABD is right (hyp.)). Therefore the angle ADE is right.

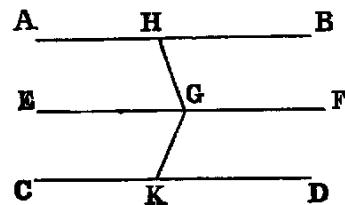
Hence DE is at right angles both to AD and BD. Therefore [XI. IV.] DE is perpendicular to CD, which is coplanar and concurrent with AD and BD. Again, since AB and CD are parallel, the sum of the angles ABD, BDC is two right angles [I. xxix.]; but ABD is right (hyp.); therefore BDC is right. Hence CD is perpendicular to the two lines DB, DE, and therefore [XI. iv.] it is normal to their plane, that is, it is normal to X.



PROP. IX—THEOREM.

*Two right lines (AB, CD) which are each parallel to a third line (EF) are parallel to one another.*

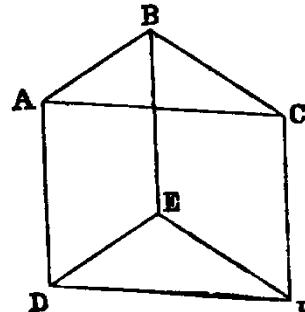
**Dem.**—If the three lines be coplanar, the Proposition is evidently the same as I. xxx. If they are not coplanar, from any point G in EF draw in the planes of EF, AB; EF, CD, respectively, the lines GH, GK each perpendicular to EF [I. xi.]. Then because EF is perpendicular to each of the lines GH, GK, it is normal to their plane [XI. iv.]. And because AB is parallel to EF (hyp.), and EF is normal to the plane GHK, AB is normal to the plane GHK [XI. viii.]. In like manner CD is normal to the plane HGK. Hence, since AB and CD are normals to the same plane, they are parallel to one another.



PROP. X.—THEOREM.

*If two intersecting right lines (AB, BC) be respectively parallel to two other intersecting right lines (DE, EF), the angle (ABC) between the former is equal to the angle (DEF) between the latter.*

**Dem.**—If both pairs of lines be coplanar, the proposition is the same as I. xxix., Ex. 2. If not, take any points A, C in the lines AB, BC, and cut off ED = BA, and EF = BC [I. iii.]. Join AD, BE, CF, AC, DF. Then because AB is equal and parallel to DE, AD is equal and parallel to BE [I. xxxiii.]. In like manner CF is equal and parallel to BE. Hence [XI. ix.] AD is equal and parallel to CF. Hence [I. xxxiii.] AC is equal to DF. Therefore the triangles ABC, DEF, have the three sides of one respectively equal to the three sides of the other. Hence [I. viii.] the angle ABC is equal to DEF.



**DEF. VIII.**—*Two planes which meet are perpendicular to each other, when the right lines drawn in one of them perpendicular to their common section are normals to the other.*

**DEF. IX.**—*When two planes which meet are not perpendicular to each other, their inclination is the acute angle contained by two right lines drawn from any point of their common section at right angles to it—one in one plane, and the other in the other.*

**Observation.**—These definitions tacitly assume the result of Props. III. and X. of this book. On this account we have departed from the usual custom of placing them at the beginning of the book. We have altered the place of Definition VI. for a similar reason.

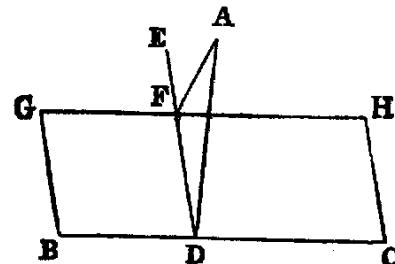
PROP. XI.—PROBLEM.

*To draw a normal to a given plane (BH) from a given point (A) not in it.*

**Sol.**—In the given plane  $BH$  draw any line  $BC$ , and from  $A$  draw  $AD$  perpendicular to  $BC$  [I. XII.]; then if  $AD$  be perpendicular to the plane, the thing required is done. If not, from  $D$  draw  $DE$  in the plane  $BH$  at right angles to  $BC$  [I. XI.], and from  $A$  draw  $AF$  [I. XII.] perpendicular to  $DE$ .  $AF$  is normal to the plane  $BH$ .

**Dem.**—Draw  $GH$  parallel to  $BC$ .

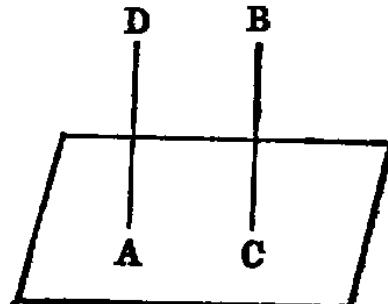
Then because  $BC$  is perpendicular both to  $ED$  and  $DA$ , it is normal to the plane of  $ED$ ,  $DA$  [XI. IV.]; and since  $GH$  is parallel to  $BC$ , it is normal to the same plane [XI. VIII.]. Hence  $AF$  is perpendicular to  $GH$  [XI. Def. VI.], and  $AF$  is perpendicular to  $DE$  (const.). Therefore  $AF$  is normal to the plane of  $GH$  and  $ED$ —that is, to the plane  $BH$ .



PROP. XII.—PROBLEM.

*To draw a normal to a given plane from a given point (A) in the plane.*

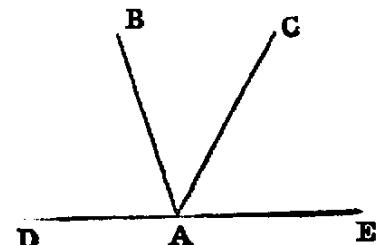
**Sol.**—From any point  $B$  not in the plane draw [XI. XI.]  $BC$  normal to it. If this line pass through  $A$  it is the normal required. If not, from  $A$  draw  $AD$  parallel to  $BC$  [I. XXXI.]. Then because  $AD$  and  $BC$  are parallel, and  $BC$  is normal to the plane,  $AD$  is also normal to it [XI. VIII.], and it is drawn from the given point. Hence it is the required normal.



PROP. XIII.—THEOREM.

*From the same point (A) there can be but one normal drawn to a given plane (X).*

**Dem.**—1. Let  $A$  be in the given plane, and if possible let  $AB, AC$  be both normals to it, on the same side. Now let the plane of  $BA, AC$  cut the given plane  $X$  in the line  $DE$ . Then because  $BA$  is a normal, the angle  $BAE$  is right. In like manner  $CAE$  is right. Hence  $BAE = CAE$ , which is impossible.

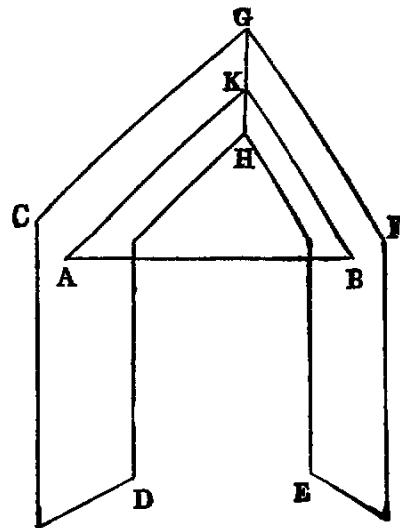


2. If the point be above the plane, there can be but one normal; for, if there could be two, they would be parallel [XI. vi.] to one another, which is absurd. *Therefore from the same point there can be drawn but one normal to a given plane.*

#### PROP. XIV.—THEOREM.

*Planes (CD, EF) which have a common normal (AB) are parallel to each other.*

**Dem.**—If the planes be not parallel, they will meet when produced. Let them meet, their common section being the line  $GH$ , in which take any point  $K$ . Join  $AK, BK$ . Then because  $AB$  is normal to the plane  $CD$ , it is perpendicular to the line  $AK$ , which it meets in that plane [XI. Def. vi.]. Therefore the angle  $BAK$  is right. In like manner the angle  $ABK$  is right. Hence the plane triangle  $ABK$  has two right angles, which is impossible. *Therefore the planes CD, EF cannot meet—that is, they are parallel.*



#### Exercises.

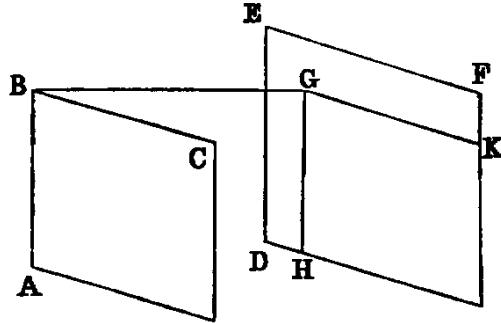
1. The angle between two planes is equal to the angle between two intersecting normals to these planes.
2. If a line be parallel to each of two planes, the sections which any plane passing through it makes with them are parallel.
3. If a line be parallel to each of two intersecting planes, it is parallel to their intersection.
4. If two right lines be parallel, they are parallel to the common section of any two planes passing through them.
5. If the intersections of several planes be parallel, the normals drawn to them from any point are coplanar.

#### PROP. XV.—THEOREM.

*Two planes (AC, DF) are parallel, if two intersecting lines (AB, BC) on one of them be respectively parallel to two intersecting lines (DE, EF) on the other.*

**Dem.**—From  $B$  draw  $BG$  perpendicular to the plane  $DF$  [XI. xi.], and let it meet that plane in  $G$ . Through  $G$  draw  $GH$  parallel to  $ED$ , and  $GK$  to  $EF$ . Now, since  $GH$  is parallel to  $ED$  (const.), and  $AB$  to  $ED$  (hyp.),  $AB$  is parallel to  $GH$  [XI. ix.]. Hence the sum of the angles  $ABG, BGH$  is two right angles [I. xxix]; but  $BGH$  is right (const.); therefore  $ABG$  is right. In like manner

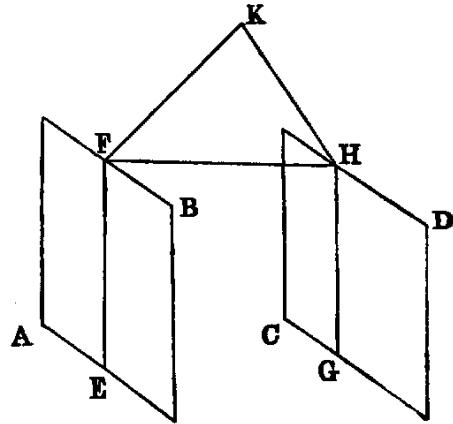
$CBG$  is right. Hence  $BG$  is normal to the plane  $AC$  [XI. Def. vi.], and it is normal to  $DF$  (const.). Hence the planes  $AC, DF$  have a common normal  $BG$ ; therefore they are parallel to one another.



#### PROP. XVI.—THEOREM.

If two parallel planes ( $AB, CD$ ) be cut by a third plane ( $EF, HG$ ), their common sections ( $EF, GH$ ) with it are parallel.

**Dem.**—If the lines  $EF, GH$  are not parallel, they must meet at some finite distance. Let them meet in  $K$ . Now since  $K$  is a point in the line  $EF$ , and  $EF$  is in the plane  $AB$ ,  $K$  is in the plane  $AB$ . In like manner  $K$  is a point in the plane  $CD$ . Hence the planes  $AB, CD$  meet in  $K$ , which is impossible, since they are parallel. Therefore the lines  $EF, GH$  must be parallel.



#### Exercises.

1. Parallel planes intercept equal segments on parallel lines.
2. Parallel lines intersecting the same plane make equal angles with it.
3. A right line intersecting parallel planes makes equal angles with them.

#### PROP. XVII.—THEOREM.

If two parallel lines ( $AB, CD$ ) be cut by three parallel planes ( $GH, KL, MN$ ) in two triads of points ( $A, E, B; C, F, D$ ), their segments between those points are proportional.

**Dem.**—Join  $AC$ ,  $BD$ ,  $AD$ . Let  $AD$  meet the plane  $KL$  in  $X$ . Join  $EX$ ,  $XF$ . Then because the parallel planes  $KL$ ,  $MN$  are cut by the plane  $ABD$  in the lines  $EX$ ,  $BD$ , these lines are parallel [XI. XVI.]. Hence

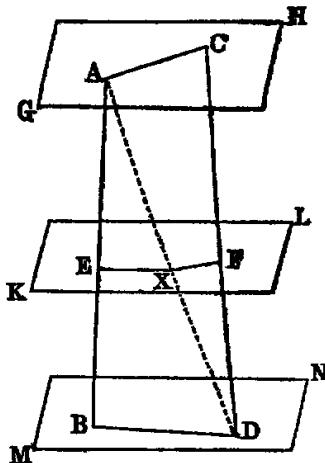
$$AE : EB :: AX : XD \text{ [VI. II.]}$$

In like manner,

$$AX : XD :: CF : FD.$$

Therefore [V. XI.]

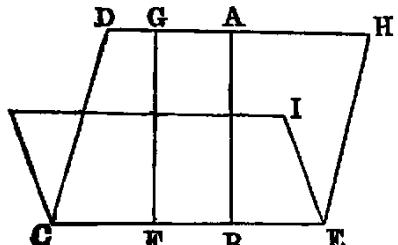
$$AE : EB :: CF : FD.$$



#### PROP. XVIII.—THEOREM.

*If a right line (AB) be normal to a plane (CI), any plane (DE) passing through it shall be perpendicular to that plane.*

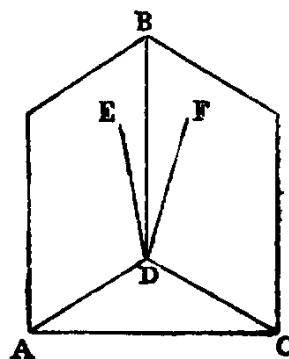
**Dem.**—Let  $CE$  be the common section of the planes  $DE$ ,  $CI$ . From any point  $F$  in  $CE$  draw  $FG$  in the plane  $DE$  parallel to  $AB$  [I. xxxi.]. Then because  $AB$  and  $FG$  are parallel, but  $AB$  is normal to the plane  $CI$ ; hence  $FG$  is normal to it [XI. viii.]. Now since  $FG$  is parallel to  $AB$ , the angles  $ABF$ ,  $BFG$  are equal to two right angles [I. xxix.]; but  $ABF$  is right (hyp.); therefore  $BFG$  is right—that is,  $FG$  is perpendicular to  $CE$ . Hence every line in the plane  $DE$ , drawn perpendicular to the common section of the planes  $DE$ ,  $CI$ , is normal to the plane  $CI$ . Therefore [XI. Def. viii.] *the planes DE, CI are perpendicular to each other.*



#### PROP. XIX.—THEOREM.

*If two intersecting planes (AB, BC) be each perpendicular to a third plane (ADC), their common section (BD) shall be normal to that plane.*

**Dem.**—If not, draw from  $D$  in the plane  $AB$  the line  $DE$  perpendicular to  $AD$ , the common section of the planes  $AB$ ,  $ADC$ ; and in the plane  $BC$  draw  $BF$  perpendicular to the common section  $DC$  of the planes  $BC$ ,  $ADC$ . Then because the plane  $AB$  is perpendicular to  $ADC$ , the line  $DE$  in  $AB$



is normal to the plane  $ADC$  [XI. Def. viii.]. In like manner  $DF$  is normal to it. Therefore from the point  $D$  there are two distinct normals to the plane  $ADC$ , which [XI. XIII.] is impossible. Hence  $BD$  must be normal to the plane  $ADC$ .

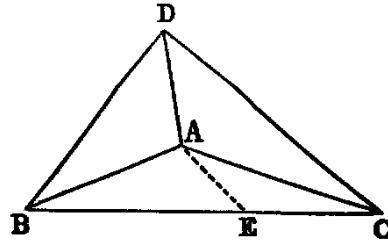
#### Exercises.

1. If three planes have a common line of intersection, the normals drawn to these planes from any point of that line are coplanar.
2. If two intersecting planes be respectively perpendicular to two intersecting lines, the line of intersection of the former is normal to the plane of the latter.
3. In the last case, show that the dihedral angle between the planes is equal to the rectilineal angle between the normals.

#### PROP. XX.—THEOREM.

*The sum of any two plane angles ( $BAD$ ,  $DAC$ ) of a trihedral angle ( $A$ ) is greater than the third ( $BAC$ ).*

**Dem.**—If the third angle  $BAC$  be less than or equal to either of the other angles the proposition is evident. If not, suppose it greater: take any point  $D$  in  $AD$ , and at the point  $A$  in the plane  $BAC$  make the angle  $BAE$  equal  $BAD$  [I. xxiii.], and cut off  $AE$  equal  $AD$ . Through  $E$  draw  $BC$ , cutting  $AB$ ,  $AC$  in the points  $B$ ,  $C$ . Join  $DB$ ,  $DC$ .

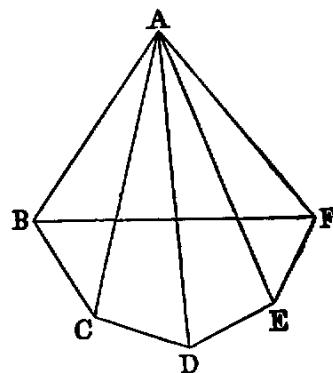


Then the triangles  $BAD$ ,  $BAE$  have the two sides  $BA$ ,  $AD$  in one equal respectively to the two sides  $BA$ ,  $AE$  in the other, and the angle  $BAD$  equal to  $BAE$ ; therefore the third side  $BD$  is equal to  $BE$ . But the sum of the sides  $BD$ ,  $DC$  is greater than  $BC$ ; hence  $DC$  is greater than  $EC$ . Again, because the triangles  $DAC$ ,  $EAC$  have the sides  $DA$ ,  $AC$  respectively equal to the sides  $EA$ ,  $AC$  in the other, but the base  $DC$  greater than  $EC$ ; therefore [I. xxv.] the angle  $DAC$  is greater than  $EAC$ , but the angle  $DAB$  is equal to  $BAE$  (const.). Hence the sum of the angles  $BAD$ ,  $DAC$  is greater than the angle  $BAC$ .

#### PROP. XXI.—THEOREM.

*The sum of all the plane angles ( $BAC$ ,  $CAD$ , &c.) forming any solid angle ( $A$ ) is less than four right angles.*

**Dem.**—Suppose for simplicity that the solid angle  $A$  is contained by five plane angles  $BAC$ ,  $CAD$ ,  $DAE$ ,  $EAF$ ,  $FAB$ ; and let the planes of these angles be cut by another plane in the lines  $BC$ ,  $CD$ ,  $DE$ ,  $EF$ ,  $FB$ ; then we have [XI. xx.],



$$\begin{aligned}\angle ABC + ABF &\text{ greater than } FBC, \\ \angle ACB + ACD &\quad , \quad BCD, \&c.\end{aligned}$$

Hence, adding, we get the sum of the base angles of the five triangles  $BAC$ ,  $CAD$ , &c., greater than the sum of the interior angles of the pentagon  $BCDEF$  —that is, greater than six right angles. But the sum of the base angles of the same triangles, together with the sum of the plane angles  $BAC$ ,  $CAD$ , &c., forming the solid angle  $A$ , is equal to twice as many right angles as there are triangles  $BAC$ ,  $CAD$ , &c.—that is, equal to ten right angles. *Hence the sum of the angles forming the solid angle is less than four right angles.*

*Observation.*—This Prop. may not hold if the polygonal base  $BCDEF$  contain *re-entrant* angles.

#### Exercises on Book XI.

1. Any face angle of a trihedral angle is less than the sum, but greater than the difference, of the supplements of the other two face angles.
2. A solid angle cannot be formed of equal plane angles which are equal to the angles of a regular polygon of  $n$  sides, except in the case of  $n = 3, 4$ , or  $5$ .
3. Through one of two non-coplanar lines draw a plane parallel to the other.
4. Draw a common perpendicular to two non-coplanar lines, and show that it is the shortest distance between them.
5. If two of the plane angles of a tetrahedral angle be equal, the planes of these angles are equally inclined to the plane of the third angle, and conversely. If two of the planes of a trihedral angle be equally inclined to the third plane, the angles contained in those planes are equal.
6. The three lines of intersection of three planes are either parallel or concurrent.
7. If a trihedral angle  $O$  be formed by three right angles, and  $A, B, C$  be points along the edges, the orthocentre of the triangle  $ABC$  is the foot of the normal from  $O$  on the plane  $ABC$ .
8. If through the vertex  $O$  of a trihedral angle  $O-ABC$  any line  $OD$  be drawn interior to the angle, the sum of the rectilineal angles  $DOA, DOB, DOC$  is less than the sum, but greater than half the sum, of the face angles of the trihedral.
9. If on the edges of a trihedral angle  $O-ABC$  three equal lines  $OA, OB, OC$  be taken, each of these is greater than the radius of the circle described about the triangle  $ABC$ .
10. Given the three angles of a trihedral angle, find, by a plane construction, the angles between the containing planes.
11. If any plane  $P$  cut the four sides of a *Gauche* quadrilateral (a quadrilateral whose angular points are not coplanar)  $ABCD$  in four points,  $a, b, c, d$ , then the product of the four ratios

$$\frac{Aa}{aB}, \quad \frac{Bb}{bC}, \quad \frac{Cc}{cD}, \quad \frac{Dd}{dA}$$

is plus unity, and conversely, if the product

$$\frac{Aa}{aB} \cdot \frac{Bb}{bC} \cdot \frac{Cc}{cD} \cdot \frac{Dd}{dA} = +1,$$

the points  $a, b, c, d$  are coplanar.

12. If in the last exercise the intersecting plane be parallel to any two sides of the quadrilateral, it cuts the two remaining sides proportionally.

DEF. X.—If at the vertex  $O$  of a trihedral angle  $O-ABC$  we draw normals  $OA', OB', OC'$  to the faces  $BOC, COA, OAB$ , respectively, in such a manner that  $OA'$  will be on the same side of the plane  $BOC$  as  $OA$ , &c., the trihedral angle  $O-A'B'C'$  is called the supplementary of the trihedral angle  $O-ABC$ .

13. If  $O-A'B'C'$  be the supplementary of  $O-ABC$ , prove that  $O-ABC$  is the supplementary of  $O-A'B'C'$ .

14. If two trihedral angles be supplementary, each dihedral angle of one is the supplement of the corresponding face angle of the other.
15. Through a given point draw a right line which will meet two non-coplanar lines.
16. Draw a right line parallel to a given line, which will meet two non-coplanar lines.
17. Being given an angle  $AOB$ , the locus of all the points  $P$  of space, such that the sum of the projections of the line  $OP$  on  $OA$  and  $OB$  may be constant, is a plane.

## APPENDIX. PRISM, PYRAMID, CYLINDER, SPHERE, AND CONE

---

### DEFINITIONS.

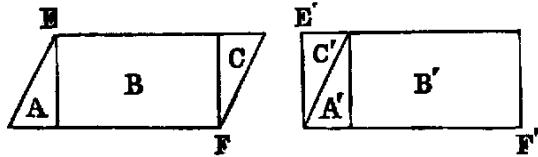
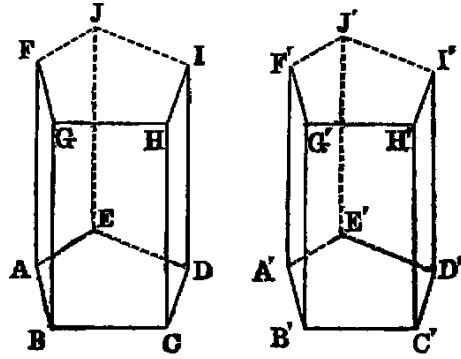
- I. A *polyhedron* is a solid figure contained by plane figures: if it be contained by four plane figures it is called a *tetrahedron*; by six, a *hexahedron*; by eight, an *octahedron*; by twelve, a *dodecahedron*; and if by twenty, an *icosahedron*.
- II. If the plane faces of a polyhedron be equal and similar rectilineal figures, it is called a *regular polyhedron*.
- III. A *pyramid* is a polyhedron of which all the faces but one meet in a point. This point is called the *vertex*; and the opposite face, the *base*.
- IV. A *prism* is a polyhedron having a pair of parallel faces which are equal and similar rectilineal figures, and are called its *ends*. The others, called its *side faces*, are parallelograms.
- V. A prism whose ends are perpendicular to its sides is called a *right prism*; any other is called an *oblique prism*.
- VI. The *altitude* of a pyramid is the length of the perpendicular drawn from its vertex to its base; and the altitude of a prism is the perpendicular distance between its ends.
- VII. A *parallelopiped* is a prism whose bases are parallelograms. A parallelopiped is evidently a *hexahedron*.
- VIII. A *cube* is a rectangular parallelopiped, all whose sides are squares.
- IX. A *cylinder* is a solid figure formed by the revolution of a rectangle about one of its sides, which remains fixed, and which is called its *axis*. The circles which terminate a cylinder are called its *bases* or *ends*.
- X. A *cone* is the solid figure described by the revolution of a right-angled triangle about one of the legs, which remains fixed, and which is called the *axis*. The other leg describes the *base*, which is a circle.
- XI. A *sphere* is the solid described by the revolution of a semicircle about a diameter, which remains fixed. The *centre* of the sphere is the centre of the *generating* semicircle. Any line passing through the centre of a sphere and terminated both ways by the surface is called a *diameter*.

### PROP. I.—THEOREM.

*Right prisms (ABCDE-FGHIJ, A'B'C'D'E'-F'G'H'I'J') which have bases (ABCDE, A'B'C'D'E') that are equal and similar, and which have equal altitudes, are equal.*

**Dem.**—Apply the bases to each other; then, since they are equal and similar figures, they will coincide—that is, the point  $A$  with  $A'$ ,  $B$  with  $B'$ , &c. And since  $AF$  is equal to  $A'F'$ , and each is normal to its respective base, the point  $F$  will coincide with  $F'$ . In the same manner the points  $G$ ,  $H$ ,  $I$ ,  $J$  will coincide respectively with the points  $G'$ ,  $H'$ ,  $I'$ ,  $J'$ . Hence the prisms are equal in every respect.

*Cor. 1.—Right prisms which have equal bases ( $EF$ ,  $E'F'$ ) and equal altitudes are equal in volume.*



**Dem.**—Since the bases are equal, but not similar, we can suppose one of them,  $EF$ , divided into parts  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ , and re-arranged so as to make them coincide with the other [I. XXXV., note]; and since the prism on  $E'F'$  can be subdivided in the same manner by planes perpendicular to the base, the proposition is evident.

*Cor. 2.—The volumes of right prisms ( $X$ ,  $Y$ ) having equal bases are proportional to their altitudes.*

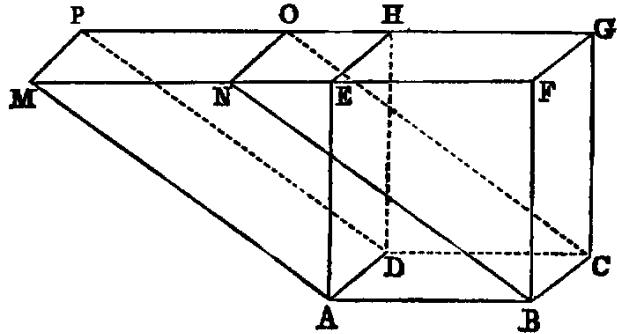
For, if the altitudes be in the ratio of  $m : n$ ,  $X$  can be divided into  $m$  prisms of equal altitudes by planes parallel to the base; then these  $m$  prisms will be all equal. In like manner,  $Y$  can be divided into  $n$  equal prisms. Hence  $X : Y :: m : n$ .

*Cor. 3.—In right prisms of equal altitudes the volumes are to one another as the areas of their bases. This may be proved by dividing the bases into parts so that the subdivisions will be equal, and then the volumes proportional to the number of subdivisions in their respective bases, that is, to their areas.*

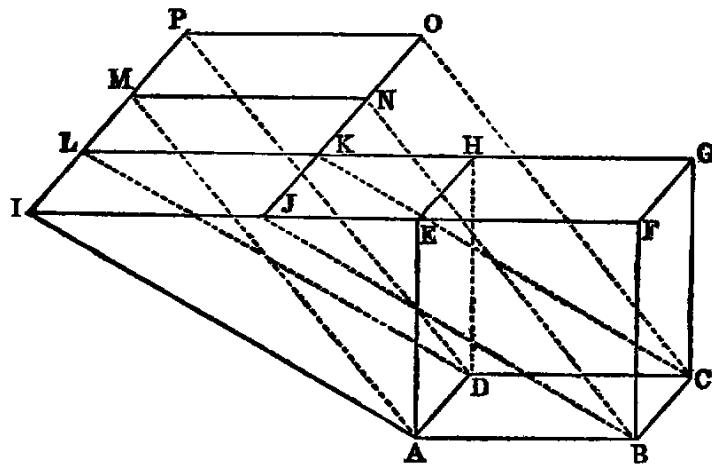
*Cor. 4.—The volume of a rectangular parallelopiped is measured by the continued product of its three dimensions.*

#### PROP. II.—THEOREM.

*Parallelopipeds ( $ABCD-EFGH$ ,  $ABCD-MNOP$ ), having a common base ( $ABCD$ ) and equal altitudes, are equal.*



1°. Let the edges  $MN$ ,  $EF$  be in one right line; then  $GH$ ,  $OP$  must be in one right line. Now  $EF = MN$ , because each equal  $AB$ ; therefore  $ME = NF$ ; therefore the prisms  $AEM-DHP$ , and  $BFN-CGO$ , have their triangular bases  $AEM$ ,  $BFN$  identically equal, and they have equal altitudes; hence they are equal; and supposing them taken away from the entire solid, *the remaining parallelopipeds  $ABCD-EFGH$ ,  $ABCD-MNOP$  are equal.*



2°. Let the edges  $EF$ ,  $MN$  be in different lines; then produce  $ON$ ,  $PM$  to meet the lines  $EF$  and  $GH$  produced in the points  $J$ ,  $K$ ,  $L$ ,  $I$ . Then by 1° the parallelopipeds  $ABCD-EFGH$ ,  $ABCD-MNOP$  are each equal to the parallelopiped  $ABCD-IJKL$ . Hence they are equal to one another.

*Cor.*—The volume of any parallelopiped is equal to the product of its base and altitude.

### PROP. III.—THEOREM.

*A diagonal plane of a parallelopiped divides it into two prisms of equal volume.*

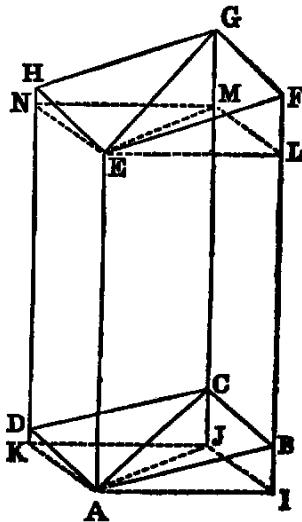
1°. When the parallelopiped is rectangular the proposition is evident.

2°. When it is any parallelopiped,  $ABCD-EFGH$ , the diagonal plane bisects it.

**Dem.**—Through the vertices  $A, E$  let planes be drawn perpendicular to the edges and cutting them in the points  $I, J, K; L, M, N$ , respectively. Then [I. xxxiv.] we have  $IL = BF$ , because each is equal to  $AE$ . Hence  $IB = LF$ . In like manner  $JC = MG$ . Hence the pyramid  $A-IJCB$  agrees in everything but position with  $E-LMFG$ ; hence it is equal to it in volume. To each add the solid  $ABC-LME$ , and we have the prism  $AIJ-ELM$  equal to the prism  $ABC-EFG$ . In like manner  $AJK-EMN = ACD-EGH$ ; but (1°) the prism  $AIJ-ELM = AJK-EMN$ . Hence  $ABC-EFG = ACD-EGH$ . Therefore the diagonal plane bisects the parallelopiped.

*Cor.* 1.—The volume of a triangular prism is equal to the product of its base and altitude; because it is half of a parallelopiped, which has a double base and equal altitude.

*Cor.* 2.—The volume of any prism is equal to the product of its base and altitude; because it can be divided into triangular prisms.



#### PROP. IV.—THEOREM.

If a pyramid ( $O-ABCDE$ ) be cut by any plane ( $abcde$ ) parallel to the base, the section is similar to the base.

**Dem.**—Because the plane  $AOB$  cuts the parallel planes  $ABCDE, abcde$ , the sections  $AB, ab$  are parallel [XI. xvi.] In like manner  $BC, bc$  are parallel. Hence the angle  $ABC = abc$  [XI. x.]. In like manner the remaining angles of the polygon  $ABCDE$  are equal to the corresponding angles of  $abcde$ . Again, because  $ab$  is parallel to  $AB$ , the triangles  $ABO, abO$  are equiangular.

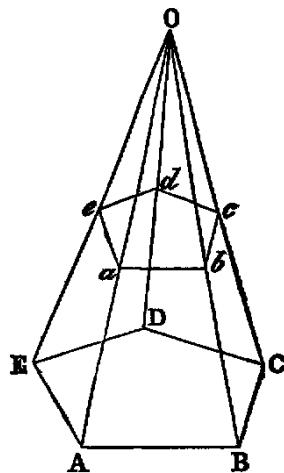
$$\text{Hence } AB : BO :: ab : bO. \text{ [VI. iv.]}$$

$$\text{In like manner } BO : BC :: bO : bc;$$

$$\text{therefore } AB : BC :: ab : bc. \text{ [Ex æquali.]}$$

$$\text{In like manner } BC : CD :: bc : cd, \&c.$$

Therefore the polygons  $ABCDE, abcde$  are equiangular, and have the sides about their equal angles proportional. Hence they are similar.



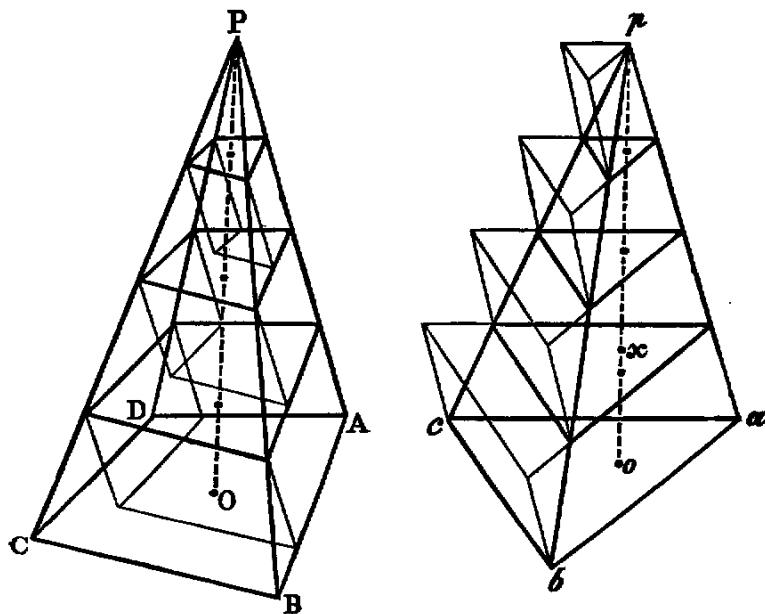
*Cor.* 1.—The edges and the altitude of the pyramid are similarly divided by the parallel plane.

*Cor.* 2.—The areas of parallel sections are in the duplicate ratio of the distances of their planes from the vertex.

*Cor.* 3.—In any two pyramids, sections parallel to their bases, which divide their altitudes in the same ratio, are proportional to their bases.

#### PROP. V.—THEOREM.

*Pyramids ( $P-ABCD$ ,  $p-abc$ ), having equal altitudes ( $PO$ ,  $po$ ) and bases ( $ABCD$ ,  $abc$ ) of equal areas, have equal volumes.*



**Dem.**—If they be not equal in volume, let  $abc$  be the base of the greater; and let  $ox$  be the altitude of a prism, with an equal base, and whose volume is equal to their difference; then let the equal altitudes  $PO$ ,  $po$  be divided into such a number of equal parts, by planes parallel to the bases of the pyramids, that each part shall be less than  $ox$ . Then [iv. *Cor.* 3] the sections made by these planes will be equal each to each. Now let prisms be constructed on these sections as bases and with the equal parts of the altitudes of the pyramids as altitudes, and let the prisms in  $P-ABCD$  be constructed below the sections, and in  $p-abc$ , above. Then it is evident that the sum of the prisms in  $P-ABCD$  is less than that pyramid, and the sum of those on the sections of  $p-abc$  greater than  $p-abc$ . Therefore the difference between the pyramids is less than the difference between the sums of the prisms, that is, less than the lower prism in the pyramid  $p-abc$ ; but the altitude of this prism is less than  $ox$  (const.). Hence

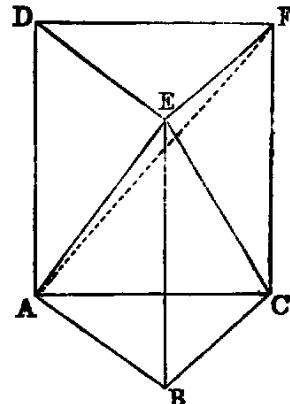
the difference between the pyramids is less than the prism whose base is equal to one of the equal bases, and whose altitude is equal to  $ox$ , and the difference is equal to this prism (hyp.), which is impossible. *Therefore the volumes of the pyramids are equal.*

*Cor. 1.—The volume of a triangular pyramid  $E-ABC$  is one third the volume of the prism  $ABC-DEF$ , having the same base and altitude.*

For, draw the plane  $EAF$ , then the pyramids  $E-AFC$ ,  $E-AFD$  are equal, having equal bases  $AFC$ ,  $AFD$ , and a common altitude; and the pyramids  $E-ABC$ ,  $F-ABC$  are equal, having a common base and equal altitudes. Hence the pyramid  $E-ABC$  is one of three equal pyramids into which the prism is divided. *Therefore it is one third of the prism.*

*Cor. 2.—The volume of every pyramid is one-third of the volume of a prism having an equal base and altitude.*

Because it may be divided into triangular pyramids by planes through the vertex and the diagonals of the base.



#### PROP. VI.—THEOREM.

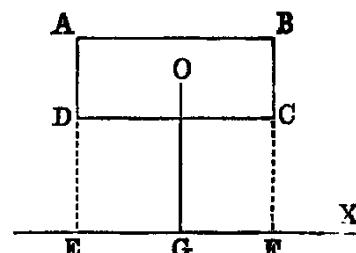
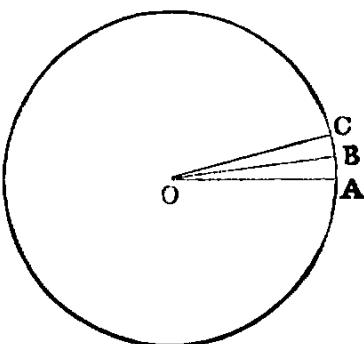
*The volume of a cylinder is equal to the product of the area of its base by its altitude*

**Dem.**—Let  $O$  be the centre of its circular base; and take the angle  $AOB$  indefinitely small, so that the arc  $AB$  may be regarded as a right line. Then planes perpendicular to the base, and cutting it in the lines  $OA$ ,  $OB$ , will be faces of a triangular prism, whose base will be the triangle  $AOB$ , and whose altitude will be the altitude of the cylinder. The volume of this prism will be equal to the area of the triangle  $AOB$  by the height of the cylinder. Hence, dividing the circle into elementary triangles, the cylinder will be equal to the sum of all the prisms, *and therefore its volume will be equal to the area of the base multiplied by the altitude.*

*Cor. 1.—If  $r$  be the radius, and  $h$  the height of the cylinder,*

$$\text{vol. of cylinder} = \pi r^2 h.$$

*Cor. 2.—If  $ABCD$  be a rectangle;  $X$  a line in its plane parallel to the side  $AB$ ;  $O$  the middle point of the rectangle; the volume of*



*the solid described by the revolution of ABCD round X is equal to the area of ABCD multiplied by the circumference of the circle described by O.*

**Dem.**—Produce the lines  $AD, BC$  to meet

$X$  in the points  $E, F$ . Then when the rectangle revolves round  $X$ , the rectangles  $ABFE, DCFE$  will describe cylinders whose bases will be circles having  $AE, DE$  as radii, and whose common altitude will be  $AB$ . Hence the difference between the volumes of these cylinders will be equal to the differences between the areas of the bases multiplied by  $AB$ , that is  $= \pi(AE^2 - DE^2) \cdot AB$ . Therefore the volume described by  $ABCD$

$$= \pi \cdot AB \cdot (AE + DE)(AE - DE);$$

but

$$AE + DE = 2OG, \text{ and } AE - DE = AD.$$

Hence volume described by the rectangle  $ABCD$

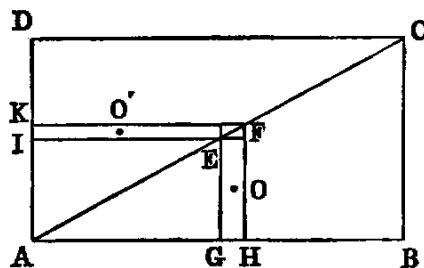
$$= 2\pi \cdot OG \cdot AB \cdot AD.$$

= rectangle  $ABCD$  multiplied by the circumference of the circle described by its middle point  $O$ .

**Observation.**—This Cor. is a simple case of Guldinus's celebrated theorem. By its assistance we give in the two following corollaries original methods of finding the volumes of the cone and sphere, and it may be applied with equal facility to the solution of several other problems which are usually done by the Integral Calculus.

*Cor. 3.—The volume of a cone is one-third the volume of a cylinder having the same base and altitude.*

**Dem.**—Let  $ABCD$  be a rectangle whose diagonal is  $AC$ . The triangle  $ABC$  will describe a cone, and the rectangle a cylinder by revolving round  $AB$ . Take two points  $E, F$  infinitely near each other in  $AC$ , and form two rectangles,  $EH, EK$ , by drawing lines parallel to  $AD, AB$ . Now if  $O, O'$  be the middle points of these rectangles, it is evident



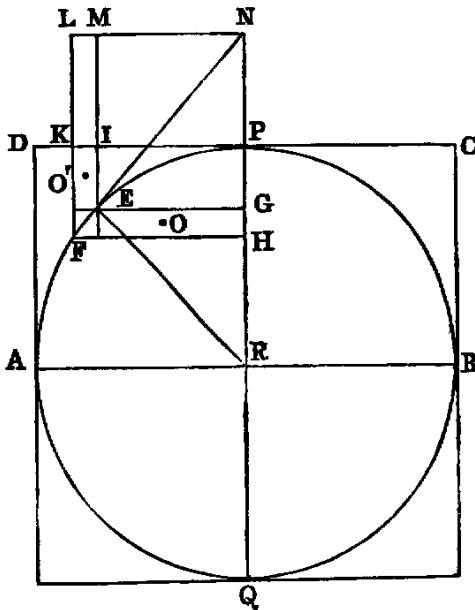
that, when the whole figure revolves round  $AB$ , the circumference of the circle described by  $O'$  will ultimately be twice the circumference of the circle described by  $O$ ; and since the parallelogram  $EK$  is equal to  $EH$  [I. XLIII.], the solid described by  $EK$  (Cor. 1) will be equal to twice the solid described by  $EH$ . Hence, if  $AC$  be divided into an indefinite number of equal parts, and rectangles corresponding to  $EH, EK$  be inscribed in the triangles  $ABC, ADC$ , the sum of the solids described by the rectangles in the triangle  $ADC$  is equal to twice the sum of the solids described by the rectangles in the triangle  $ABC$ —that is, the difference between the cylinder and cone is equal to twice the cone. Hence the cylinder is equal to three times the cone.

*Or thus:* We may regard the cone and the cylinder as limiting cases of a pyramid and prism having the same base and altitude; and since (v. Cor. 2) the volume of a pyramid is one-third of the volume of a prism, having the same base and altitude, the volume of the cone is one-third of the volume of the cylinder.

*Cor.* 4.—If  $r$  be the radius of the base of a cone, and  $h$  its height,

$$\text{vol. of cone} = \frac{\pi r^2 h}{3}.$$

*Cor.* 5.—The volume of a sphere is two-thirds of the volume of a circumscribed cylinder.



**Dem.**—Let  $AB$  be the diameter of the semicircle which describes the sphere;  $ABCD$  the rectangle which describes the cylinder. Take two points  $E, F$  indefinitely near each other in the semicircle. Join  $EF$ , which will be a tangent, and produce it to meet the diameter  $PQ$  perpendicular to  $AB$  in  $N$ . Let  $R$  be the centre. Join  $RE$ ; draw  $EG, FH, NL$  parallel to  $AB$ ; and  $EI, FK$  parallel to  $PQ$ ; and produce to meet  $LN$  in  $M$  and  $L$ ; and let  $O, O'$  be the middle points of the rectangles  $EH, EK$ .

Now the rectangle  $NG \cdot GR = PG \cdot GQ$ , because each is equal to  $GE^2$ . Hence  $NG : GP :: GQ : GR$ , or  $ME : IE :: RP + RG : RG$ . Now, denoting the radii of the circles described by the points  $O, O'$  by  $\rho, \rho'$  respectively, we have ultimately  $\rho = GR$  and  $\rho' = \frac{1}{2}(RP + RG)$ . Hence  $ME : IE :: 2\rho' : \rho$ ; but  $ME : IE :: \text{rectangle } EL : \text{rectangle } EK :: [I. XLIII.] EH : EK$ ;

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore EH : EK &\:: 2\rho' : \rho; \\ \therefore 2\pi\rho \cdot EH &= 2(2\pi\rho' \cdot EK).\end{aligned}$$

Hence the solid described by  $EH$  equal twice the solid described by  $EK$ . Therefore we infer, as in the last Cor., that the whole volume of the sphere is equal

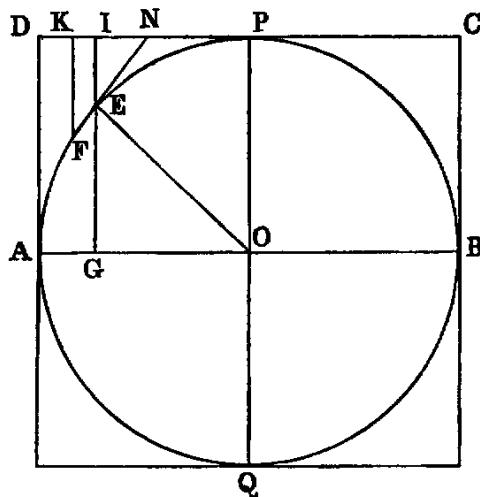
to twice the difference between the cylinder and sphere. *Therefore the sphere is two-thirds of the cylinder.*

*Cor. 6.*—If  $r$  be the radius of a sphere,

$$\text{vol.} = \frac{4\pi r^3}{3}.$$

PROP. VII.—THEOREM.

*The surface of a sphere is equal to the convex surface of the circumscribed cylinder.*



**Dem.**—Let  $AB$  be the diameter of the semicircle which describes the sphere. Take two points,  $E, F$ , indefinitely near each other in the semicircle. Join  $EF$ , and produce to meet the tangent  $CD$  parallel to  $AB$  in  $N$ . Draw  $EI, FK$  parallel to  $PQ$ . Produce  $EI$  to meet  $AB$  in  $G$ . Let  $O$  be the centre. Join  $OE$ .

Now we have

$$FE : KI :: EN : IN \text{ [VI. II.];}$$

but

$$EN : IN :: OE : EG,$$

because the triangles  $ENI$  and  $OEG$  are similar.

Hence

$$FE : KI :: OE : EG;$$

but

$$OE = IG.$$

Hence  $EF : IK :: IG : EG$ ; and  $IG : EG :: \text{circumference of circle described by the point } I : \text{circumference of circle described by the point } E$ . Hence the rectangle contained by  $EF$ , and circumference of circle described by  $E$  is equal to the rectangle contained by  $IK$ , and circumference of circle described by  $I$ —that is, the portion of the spherical surface described by  $EF$  is equal to the

portion of the cylindrical surface described by  $IK$ . Hence it is evident, if planes be drawn perpendicular to the diameter  $AB$ —that the portions of cylindrical and spherical surface between any two of them are equal. *Hence the whole spherical surface is equal to the cylindrical surface described by  $CD$ .*

*Or thus:* Conceive the whole surface of the sphere divided into an indefinitely great number of equal parts, then it is evident that each of these may be regarded as the base of a pyramid having the centre of the sphere as a common vertex. Therefore the volume of the sphere is equal to the whole area of the surface multiplied by one-third of the radius. Hence if  $S$  denote the surface, we have

$$S \times \frac{r}{3} = \frac{4\pi r^3}{3} \quad [\text{vi., Cor. 6};]$$

therefore

$$S = 4\pi r^2.$$

That is, the area of the surface of a sphere is equal four times the area of one of its great circles.

### Exercises.

1. The convex surface of a cone is equal to half the rectangle contained by the circumference of the base and the slant height.
2. The convex surface of a right cylinder is equal to the rectangle contained by the circumference of the base and the altitude.
3. If  $P$  be a point in the base  $ABC$  of a triangular pyramid  $O-ABC$ , and if parallels to the edges  $OA, OB, OC$ , through  $P$ , meet the faces in the points  $a, b, c$ , the sum of the ratios

$$\frac{Pa}{OA}, \quad \frac{Pb}{OB}, \quad \frac{Pc}{OC} = 1.$$

4. The volume of the frustum of a cone, made by a plane parallel to the base, is equal to the sum of the three cones whose bases are the two ends of the frustum, and the circle whose diameter is a mean proportional between the end diameters, and whose common altitude is equal to one-third of the altitude of the frustum.

5. If a point  $P$  be joined to the angular points  $A, B, C, D$  of a tetrahedron, and the joining lines, produced if necessary, meet the opposite faces in  $a, b, c, d$ , the sum of the ratios

$$\frac{Pa}{Aa}, \quad \frac{Pb}{Bb}, \quad \frac{Pc}{Cc}, \quad \frac{Pd}{Dd} = 1.$$

6. The surface of a sphere is equal to the rectangle by its diameter, and the circumference of a great circle.

7. The surface of a sphere is two thirds of the whole surface of its circumscribed cylinder.
8. If the four diagonals of a quadrangular prism be concurrent, it is a parallelopiped.
9. If the slant height of a right cone be equal to the diameter of its base, its total surface is to the surface of the inscribed sphere as  $9 : 4$ .

10. The middle points of two pairs of opposite edges of a triangular pyramid are coplanar, and form a parallelogram.

11. If the four perpendiculars from the vertices on the opposite faces of a pyramid  $ABCD$  be concurrent, then

$$AB^2 + CD^2 = BC^2 + AD^2 = CA^2 + BD^2.$$

12. Every section of a sphere by a plane is a circle.
13. The locus of the centres of parallel sections is a diameter of the sphere.
14. If any number of lines in space pass through a fixed point, the feet of the perpendiculars on them from another fixed point are homospheric.
15. Extend the property of Ex. 4 to the pyramid.
16. The volume of the ring described by a circle which revolves round a line in its plane is equal to the area of the circle, multiplied by the circumference of the circle described by its centre.

17. Any plane bisecting two opposite edges of a tetrahedron bisects its volume.
18. Planes which bisect the dihedral angles of a tetrahedron meet in a point.
19. Planes which bisect perpendicularly the edges of a tetrahedron meet in a point.
20. The volumes of two triangular pyramids, having a common solid angle, are proportional to the rectangles contained by the edges terminating in that angle.
21. A plane bisecting a dihedral angle of a tetrahedron divides the opposite edge into portions proportional to the areas containing that edge.
22. The volume of a sphere: the volume of the circumscribed cube as  $\pi : 6$ .
23. If  $h$  be the height, and  $\rho$  the radius of a segment of a sphere, its volume is  $\frac{\pi h}{6} (h^2 + 3\rho^2)$ .
24. If  $h$  be the perpendicular distance between two parallel planes, which cut a sphere in sections whose radii are  $\rho_1, \rho_2$ , the volume of the frustum is  $\frac{\pi h}{6} \{h^2 + 3(\rho_1^2 + \rho_2^2)\}$ .
25. If  $\delta$  be the distance of a point  $P$  from the centre of a sphere whose radius is  $R$ , the sum of the squares of the six segments at three rectangular chords passing through  $P$  is  $= 6R^2 - 2\delta^2$ .
26. The volume of a sphere : the volume of an inscribed cube as  $\pi : 2$ .
27. If  $O-ABC$  be a tetrahedron whose angles  $AOB, BOC, COA$  are right, the square of the area of the triangle  $ABC$  is equal to the sum of the squares of the three other triangular faces.
28. In the same case, if  $p$  be the perpendicular from  $O$  on the face  $ABC$ ,
- $$\frac{1}{p^2} = \frac{1}{OA^2} + \frac{1}{OB^2} + \frac{1}{OC^2}.$$
29. If  $h$  be the height of an æronaut, and  $R$  the radius of the earth, the extent of surface visible  $= \frac{2\pi R^2 h}{R + h}$ .
30. If the four sides of a gauche quadrilateral touch a sphere, the points of contact are concyclic.

## NOTES.

---

### NOTE A.

#### MODERN THEORY OF PARALLEL LINES.

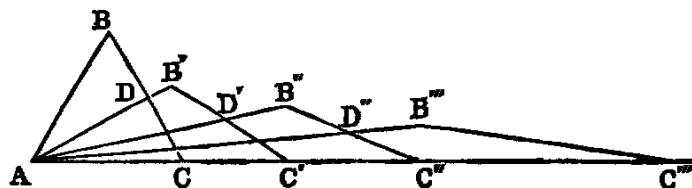
In every plane there is one special line called the *line at infinity*. The point where any other line in the plane cuts the line at infinity is called the *point at infinity* in that line. All other points in the line are called *finite points*. Two lines in the plane which meet the line at infinity in the same point are said to have the *same direction*, and two lines which meet it in different points to have *different directions*. Two lines which have the same direction cannot meet in any finite point [I. Axiom x.], and are parallel. Two lines which have different directions must intersect in some finite point, since, if produced, they meet the line at infinity in different points. This is a fundamental conception in Geometry, it is self-evident, and may be assumed as an Axiom (*see* Observations on the Axioms, Book I.). Hence we may infer the following general proposition:—“*Any two lines in the same plane must meet in some point in that plane; that is—(1) at infinity, when the lines have the same direction; (2) in some finite point, when they have different directions.*”—See PONCELET, *Propriétés Projectives*, page 52.

---

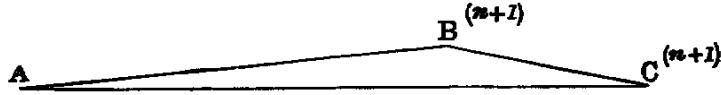
### NOTE B.

#### LEGENDRE'S AND HAMILTON'S PROOFS OF EUCLID, I. XXXII.

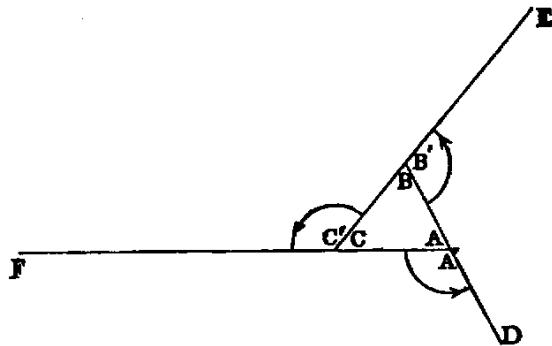
The discovery of the Proposition that “the sum of the three angles of a triangle is equal to two right angles” is attributed to Pythagoras. Until modern times no proof of it, independent of the theory of parallels, was known. We shall give here two demonstrations, each independent of that theory. These are due to two of the greatest mathematicians of modern times—one, the founder of the Theory of Elliptic Functions; the other, the discoverer of the Calculus of Quaternions.



LEGENDRE'S PROOF.—Let  $ABC$  be a triangle, of which the side  $AC$  is the greatest. Bisect  $BC$  in  $D$ . Join  $AD$ . Then  $AD$  is less than  $AC$  [I. xix. Ex. 5]. Now, construct a new triangle  $A'B'C'$ , having the side  $AC' = 2AD$ , and  $AB' = AC$ . Again, bisect  $B'C'$  in  $D'$ , and form another triangle  $AB''C''$ , having  $AC'' = 2AD'$ , and  $AB'' = AC'$ , &c. (1) The sum of the angles of the triangle  $ABC$  = the sum of the angles of  $AB'C'$  [I. xvi. Cor. 1] = the sum of the angles of  $AB''C''$  = the sum of the angles of  $AB'''C'''$ , &c. (2) The angle  $B'AC'$  is less than half  $BAC$ ; the angle  $B''AC''$  is less than half  $B'AC'$ , and so on; hence the angle  $B^{(n)}A^{(n)}$  will ultimately become infinitely small. (3) The sum of the base angles of any triangle of the series is equal to the angle of the preceding triangle (*see* Dem. I. xvi.). Hence, if the annexed diagram represent the triangle  $AB^{(n+1)}C^{(n+1)}$ , the sum of the base angles  $A$  and  $C^{(n+1)}$  is



equal to the angle  $B^{(n)}C^{(n)}$ ; and when  $n$  is indefinitely large, this angle is an infinitesimal; hence the point  $B^{(n+1)}$  will ultimately be in the line  $AC$ , and the angle  $AB^{(n+1)}C^{(n+1)}$  will become a straight angle [I. Def. X.], that is, it is equal to two right angles; but the sum of the angles of  $AB^{(n+1)}C^{(n+1)}$  is equal to the sum of the angles  $ABC$ . Hence the sum of the three angles of  $ABC$  is equal to two right angles.



HAMILTON'S QUATERNION PROOF.—Let  $ABC$  be the triangle. Produce  $BA$  to  $D$ , and make  $AD$  equal to  $AC$ . Produce  $CB$  to  $E$ , and make  $BE$  equal to  $BD$ ; finally, produce  $AC$  to  $F$ , and make  $CF$  equal to  $CE$ . Denote the exterior angles thus formed by  $A'$ ,  $B'$ ,  $C'$ . Now let the leg  $AC$  of the angle  $A'$  be turned round the point  $A$  through the angle  $A'$ ; then the point  $C$  will coincide with  $D$ . Again, let the leg  $BD$  of the angle  $B'$  be turned round the point  $B$  through the angle  $B'$ , until  $BD$  coincides with  $BE$ ; then the point  $D$  will coincide with  $E$ . Lastly, let  $CE$  be turned round  $C$ , through the angle  $C'$ , until  $CE$  coincides with  $CF$ , and the point  $E$  with  $F$ . Now, it is evident that by these rotations the point  $C$  has been brought successively into the positions  $D$ ,  $E$ ,  $F$ ; hence, by a motion of mere translation along the line  $FC$ , the line  $CA$  can be brought into its former position. Therefore it follows, since rotation is independent of translation, that the amount of the three rotations is equal to one complete revolution round the point  $A$ ; therefore  $A' + B' + C' =$  four right angles; but

$$A + A' + B + B' + C + C' = \text{six right angles [I. XIII.];}$$

hence

$$A + B + C = \text{two right angles.}$$

**Observation.**—The foregoing demonstration is the most elementary that was ever given of this celebrated Proposition. I have reduced it to its simplest form, and without making any use of the language of Quaternions. The same method of proof will establish the more general Proposition, that the sum of the external angles of any convex rectilineal figure is equal to four right angles.

Mr. Abbott, F.T.C.D., has informed me that this demonstration was first given by Playfair in 1826, so that Hamilton was anticipated. It has been objected to on the ground that, applied verbatim to a spherical triangle, it would lead to the conclusion that the sum of the angles is two right angles, which being wrong, proves that the method is not valid. A slight consideration will show that the cases are different. In the proof given in the text there are three motions of rotation, in each of which a point describes an arc of a circle, followed by a motion of translation, in which the same point describes a *right line*, and returns to its original position. On the surface of a sphere we should have, corresponding to these, three

motions of rotation, in each of which the point would describe an arc of a circle, followed by a motion of rotation about the centre of the sphere, in which the point should describe *an arc of a great circle* to return to its original position. Hence, the proof for a plane triangle cannot be applied to a spherical triangle.

---

### NOTE C.

#### TO INSCRIBE A REGULAR POLYGON OF SEVENTEEN SIDES IN A CIRCLE.

**Analysis.**—Let  $A$  be one of the angular points,  $AO$  the diameter,  $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_8$  the vertices at one side of  $AO$ . Produce  $OA_3$  to  $M$ , and  $OA_2$  to  $P$ , making  $A_3M = OA_5$ , and  $A_2P = OA_8$ . Again, cut off  $A_6N = OA_7$ , and  $A_1Q = OA_4$ . Lastly, cut off  $OR = ON$ , and  $OS = OQ$ . Then we have [IV. Ex. 40],

$$\begin{aligned}\rho_1\rho_4 &= R(\rho_3 + \rho_5) = R \cdot OM, \\ \rho_2\rho_8 &= R(\rho_6 - \rho_7) = R \cdot ON;\end{aligned}$$

but

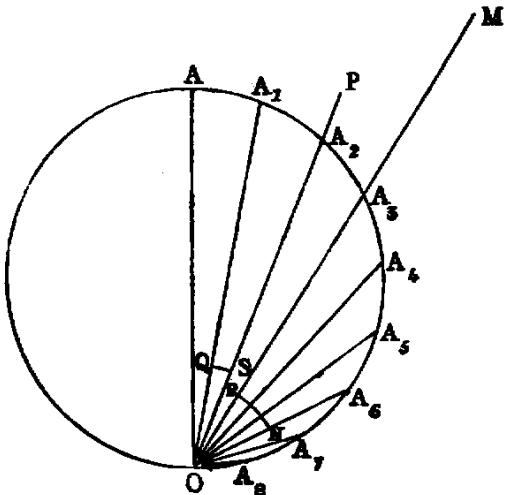
$$\rho_1\rho_2\rho_4\rho_8 = R^4 \quad [\text{IV. Ex. 34};]$$

therefore

$$OM \cdot ON = R^2 \quad (1).$$

In like manner,

$$OP \cdot OQ = R^2 \quad (2).$$



$$\begin{aligned}\text{Again, } OM \cdot ON &= (\rho_3 + \rho_5)(\rho_6 - \rho_7) \\ &= \rho_3\rho_6 + \rho_5\rho_6 - \rho_3\rho_7 - \rho_5\rho_7 \\ &= R(\rho_3 - \rho_8) + R(\rho_1 - \rho_6) - R(\rho_2 - \rho_7) - R(\rho_2 - \rho_5) \quad [\text{IV. Ex. 40}]. \\ &= R(OM - ON - OP + OQ) = R(MR - PS) : \\ &\quad MR - PS = R.\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Again, } MR \cdot PS &= (OM - ON)(OP - OQ) \\ &= (\rho_3 + \rho_5 - \rho_6 + \rho_7)(\rho_2 + \rho_8 - \rho_1 + \rho_4);\end{aligned}$$

and performing the multiplication and substituting, we get

$$4R(OM - ON - OP + OQ) = 4R^2.$$

Hence, the rectangle and the difference of the lines  $MR$  and  $PS$  being given, each is given; hence  $MR$  is given; but  $MR = OM - ON$ ; therefore  $OM - ON$  is given; and we have proved that the rectangle  $OM \cdot ON = R^2$ ; therefore  $OM$  and  $ON$  are each given. In like manner,  $OP$  and  $OQ$  are each given.

Again,

$$\rho_6 \cdot \rho_7 = R(\rho_1 - \rho_4) = R \cdot OQ, \text{ and } \rho_6 - \rho_7 = ON.$$

Hence, since  $OQ$  and  $ON$  are each given,  $\rho_6$  and  $\rho_7$  are each given; therefore we can draw these chords, and we have the arc  $A_6A_7$  between their extremities given; that is, the seventeenth part of the circumference of a circle. *Hence the problem is solved.*

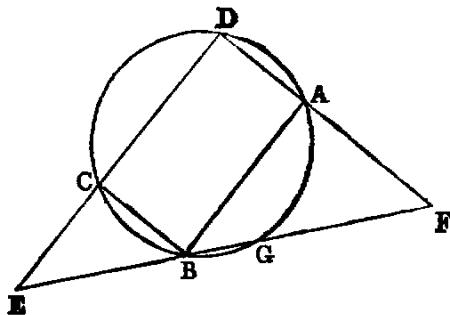
The foregoing analysis is due to AMPERE: see CATALAN, *Théorèmes et Problèmes de Géométrie Élémentaire*. We have abridged and simplified AMPERE's solution.

## NOTE D.

### TO FIND TWO MEAN PROPORTIONALS BETWEEN TWO GIVEN LINES.

The problem to find two mean proportionals is one of the most celebrated in Geometry on account of the importance which the ancients attached to it. It cannot be solved by the line and circle, but is very easy by Conic Sections. The following is a mechanical construction by the Ruler and Compass.

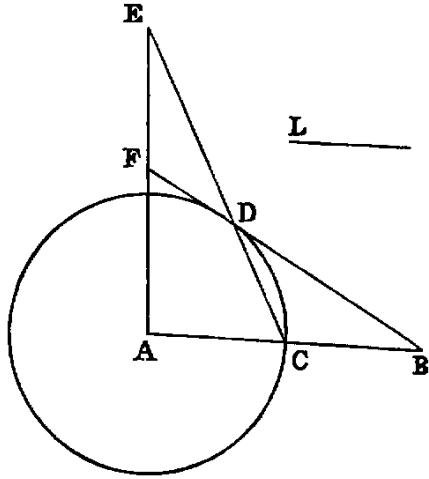
**Sol.**—Let the extremes  $AB$ ,  $BC$  be placed at right angles to each other; complete the rectangle  $ABCD$ , and describe a circle about it. Produce  $DA$ ,  $DC$ , and let a graduated ruler be made to revolve round the point  $B$ , and so adjusted that  $BE$  shall be equal to  $GF$ ; then  $AF$ ,  $CE$  are two mean proportionals between  $AB$ ,  $BC$ .



**Dem.**—Since  $BE$  is equal to  $GF$ , the rectangle  $BE \cdot GE = BF \cdot GF$ . Therefore  $DE \cdot CE = DF \cdot AF$ ; hence  $DE : DF :: AF : CE$ ; and by similar triangles,  $AB : AF :: DE : DF$ , and  $CE : CB :: DE : DF$ . Hence  $AB : AF :: AF : CE$ ; and  $AF : CE :: CE : CB$ . Therefore  $AB$ ,  $AF$ ,  $CE$ ,  $CB$  are continual proportions. Hence [VI. Def. iv.]  $AF$ ,  $CE$  are two mean proportionals between  $AB$  and  $BC$ .

The foregoing elegant construction is due to the ancient Geometer PHILO of BYZANTIUM. If we join  $DG$  it will be perpendicular to  $EF$ . The line  $EF$  is called Philo's Line; it possesses the remarkable property of being the minimum line through the point  $B$  between the fixed lines  $DE$ ,  $DF$ .

**NEWTON'S CONSTRUCTION.**—Let  $AB$  and  $L$  be the two given lines of which  $AB$  is the greater. Bisect  $AB$  in  $C$ . With  $A$  as centre and  $AC$  as radius, describe a circle, and in it place the chord  $CD$  equal to the second line  $L$ . Join  $BD$ , and draw by trial through  $A$  a line meeting  $BD$ ,  $CD$  produced in the points  $E$ ,  $F$ , so that the intercept  $EF$  will be equal to the radius of the circle.  $DE$  and  $FA$  are the mean proportionals required.



**Dem.**—Join  $AD$ . Since the line  $BF$  cuts the sides of the  $\triangle ACE$ , we have

$$AB \cdot CD \cdot EF = CB \cdot DE \cdot FA; \text{ but } EF = CB;$$

therefore  $AB \cdot CD = DE \cdot FA$ , or  $\frac{CD}{DE} = \frac{FA}{AB}$ .

Again, since the  $\triangle ACD$  is isosceles, we have

$$\begin{aligned} ED \cdot EC &= EA^2 - AC^2 = (FA + AC)^2 - AC^2 \\ &= 2FA \cdot AC + FA^2 = FA \cdot AB + FA^2. \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$ED(ED + CD) = FA(AB + FA),$$

or

$$DE^2 \left(1 + \frac{CD}{DE}\right) = FA \cdot AB \left(1 + \frac{AF}{AB}\right),$$

therefore

$$DE^2 = FA \cdot AB, \text{ and we have } AB \cdot CD = DE \cdot FA.$$

Hence

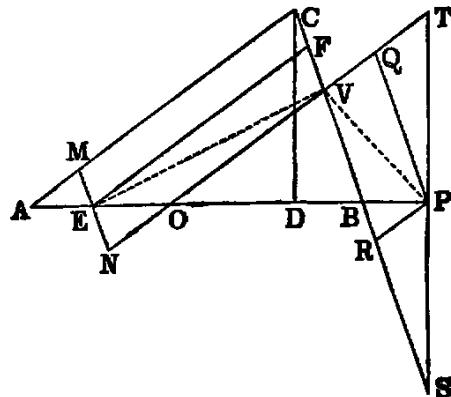
$AB, DE, FA, CD$  are in continued proportion.

### NOTE E.

#### ON PHILO'S LINE.

I am indebted to Professor Galbraith for the following proof of the minimum property of Philo's Line. It is due to the late Professor Mac Cullagh:—Let  $AC, CB$  be two given lines,  $E$  a fixed point,  $CD$  a perpendicular on  $AB$ ; it is required to prove, if  $AE$  is equal to  $DB$ , that  $AB$  is a minimum.

**Dem.**—Through  $E$  draw  $EM$  parallel to  $BC$ ; make  $EN = EM$ ; produce  $AB$  until  $EP = AB$ . Through the points  $N, P$  draw  $NT, RP$  each parallel to  $AC$ , and through  $P$  draw  $PQ$  parallel to  $BC$ . It is easy to see from the figure that the parallelogram  $QR$  is equal to the parallelogram  $MF$ , and is therefore given. Through  $P$  draw  $ST$  perpendicular to  $EP$ . Now, since  $AE = DB$ ,  $BP$  is equal to  $DB$ ; therefore  $PS = CD$ . Again, since  $OP = AD$ ,  $PT$  is equal to  $CD$ ; therefore  $PS = PT$ . Hence  $QR$  is the maximum parallelogram in the triangle  $SVT$ .



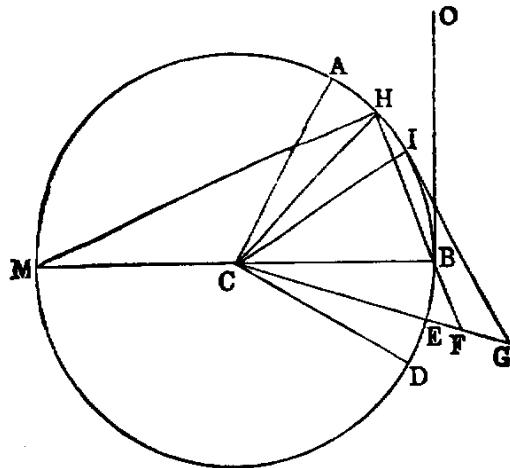
Again, if any other line  $A'B$  be drawn through  $E$ , and produced to  $P'$ , so that  $EP' = AP'$ , the point  $P'$  must fall outside  $ST$ , because the parallelogram  $Q'R'$ , corresponding to  $QR$ , will be equal to  $MF$ , and therefore equal to  $QR$ . Hence the line  $EP'$  is greater than  $EP$ , or  $A'B'$  is greater than  $AB$ . Hence  $AB$  is a minimum.

#### NOTE F.

##### ON THE TRISECTION OF AN ANGLE.

The following mechanical method of trisecting an angle occurred to me several years ago. Apart from the interest belonging to the Problem, it is valuable to the student as a geometrical exercise:—

*To trisect a given angle  $ACB$ .*



**Sol.**—Erect  $CD$  perpendicular to  $CA$ ; bisect the angle  $BCD$  by  $CG$ , and make the angle  $ECI$  equal half a right angle; it is evident that  $CI$  will fall between  $CB$  and  $CA$ . Then, if we use a jointed ruler—that is two equal rulers connected by a pivot—and make  $CB$  equal to the length of one of these rulers, and, with  $C$  as centre and  $CB$  as radius, describe the circle  $BAM$ , cutting  $CI$  in  $I$ : at  $I$  draw the tangent  $IG$ , cutting  $CG$  in  $G$ .

Then, since  $ICG$  is half a right angle, and  $CIG$  is right,  $IGC$  is half a right angle; therefore  $IC$  is equal to  $IG$ ; but  $IC$  equal  $CB$ ; therefore  $IG = CB$ —equal length of one of the two equal rulers. Hence, if the rulers be opened out at right angles, and placed so that the pivot will be at  $I$ , and one extremity at  $C$ , the other extremity at  $G$ ; it is evident that the point  $B$  will be between the two rulers; then, while the extremity at  $C$  remains fixed, let the other be made to traverse the line  $GF$ , until the edge of the second ruler passes through  $B$ : it is plain that the pivot moves along the circumference of the circle. Let  $CH$ ,  $HF$ , be the positions of the rulers when this happens; draw the line  $CH$ ; the angle  $ACH$  is one-third of  $ACB$ .

**Dem.**—Produce  $BC$  to  $M$ . Join  $HM$ . Erect  $BO$  at right angles to  $BM$ . Then, because  $CH = HF$ , the angle  $HCF = HFC$ , and the angle  $DCE = ECB$  (const.). Hence the angle  $HCD = HBC$  [I. xxxii.], and the right angles  $ACD$ ,  $CBO$  are equal; therefore the angle  $ACH$  is equal to  $HBO$ ; that is [III. xxxii.], equal to  $HMB$ , or to half the angle  $HCB$ . Hence  $ACH$  is one-third of  $ACB$ .

---

## NOTE G.

### ON THE QUADRATURE OF THE CIRCLE.

Modern mathematicians denote the ratio of the circumference of a circle to its diameter by the symbol  $\pi$ . Hence, if  $r$  denote the radius, the circumference will be  $2\pi r$ ; and, since the area of a circle [VI. xx. Ex. 15] is equal to half the rectangle contained by the circumference and the radius, the area will be  $\pi r^2$ . Hence, if the area be known, the value of  $\pi$  will be known; and, conversely, if the value of  $\pi$  be known, the area is known. On this account the determination of the value of  $\pi$  is called “the problem of the quadrature of the circle,” and is one of the most celebrated in Mathematics. It is now known that the value of  $\pi$  is incommensurable; that is, that it cannot be expressed as the ratio of any two whole numbers, and therefore that it can be found only approximately; but the approximation can be carried as far as we please, just as in extracting the square root we may proceed to as many decimal places as may be required. The simplest approximate value of  $\pi$  was found by Archimedes, namely,  $22 : 7$ . This value is tolerably exact, and is the one used in ordinary calculations, except where great accuracy is required. The next to this in ascending order, viz.  $355 : 113$ , found by Vieta, is correct to six places of decimals. It differs very little from the ratio  $3.1416 : 1$ , given in our elementary books.

Several expeditious methods, depending on the higher mathematics, are known for calculating the value of  $\pi$ . The following is an outline of a very simple elementary method for determining this important constant. It depends on a theorem which is at once inferred from VI., Ex. 87, namely “*If  $a$ ,  $A$  denote the reciprocals of the areas of any two polygons of the same number of sides inscribed and circumscribed to a circle;  $a'$ ,  $A'$  the corresponding quantities for polygons of twice the number;  $a'$  is the geometric mean between  $a$  and  $A$ , and  $A'$  the arithmetic mean between  $a'$  and  $A$ .*” Hence, if  $a$  and  $A$  be known, we can, by the processes of finding arithmetic and geometric means, find  $a'$  and  $A'$ . In like manner, from  $a'$ ,  $A'$  we can find  $a''$ ,  $A''$  related to  $a'$ ,  $A'$ ; as  $a'$ ,  $A'$  are to  $a$ ,  $A$ . Therefore, proceeding in this manner until we arrive at values  $a^{(n)}$ ,  $A^{(n)}$  that will agree in as many decimal places as there are in the degree of accuracy we wish to attain; and since the area of a circle is intermediate between the reciprocals of  $a^{(n)}$  and  $A^{(n)}$ , the area of the circle can be found to any required degree of approximation.

If for simplicity we take the radius of the circle to be unity, and commence with the inscribed and circumscribed squares, we have

$$\begin{array}{ll} a = .5, & A = .25. \\ a' = .3535533, & A' = .3017766. \\ a'' = .3264853, & A'' = .3141315. \end{array}$$

These numbers are found thus:  $a'$  is the geometric mean between  $a$  and  $A$ ; that is, between .5 and .25, and  $A'$  is the arithmetic mean between  $a'$  and  $A$ , or between .3535533 and .25. Again,  $a''$  is the geometric mean between  $a'$  and  $A'$ ; and  $A''$  the arithmetic mean between  $a''$  and  $A'$ . Proceeding in this manner, we find  $a^{(13)} = .3183099$ ;  $A^{(13)} = .3183099$ . Hence the area of a circle radius unity, correct to seven decimal places, is equal to the reciprocal of .3183099; that is, equal to 3.1415926; or the value of  $\pi$  correct to seven places of decimals is 3.1415926. The number  $\pi$  is of such fundamental importance in Geometry, that mathematicians have devoted great attention to its calculation. MR. SHANKS, an English computer, carried the calculation to 707 places of decimals. The following are the first 36 figures of his result:—

3.141, 592, 653, 589, 793, 238, 462, 643, 383, 279, 502, 884.

The result is here carried far beyond all the requirements of Mathematics. Ten decimals are sufficient to give the circumference of the earth to the fraction of an inch, and thirty decimals would give the circumference of the whole visible universe to a quantity imperceptible with the most powerful microscope.

## CONCLUSION.

In the foregoing Treatise we have given the Elementary Geometry of the Point, the Line, and the Circle, and figures formed by combinations of these. But it is important to the student to remark, that points and lines, instead of being distinct from, are limiting cases of, circles; and points and planes limiting cases of spheres. Thus, a circle whose radius diminishes to zero becomes a point. If, on the contrary, the circle be continually enlarged, it may have its curvature so much diminished, that any portion of its circumference may be made to differ in as small a degree as we please from a right line, and become one when the radius becomes infinite. This happens when the centre, but not the circumference, goes to infinity.

THE END.

THIRD EDITION, Revised and Enlarged—3/6, cloth.

---

## A SEQUEL

TO THE

FIRST SIX BOOKS OF THE ELEMENTS OF EUCLID.

BY

JOHN CASEY, LL.D., F.R.S.,

*Fellow of the Royal University of Ireland; Vice-President, Royal Irish Academy; &c.  
&c.*

---

Dublin: Hodges, Figgis, & Co. London: Longmans, Green, & Co.

---

### EXTRACTS FROM CRITICAL NOTICES.

“NATURE,” April 17, 1884.

“We have noticed (‘Nature,’ vol. xxiv., p. 52; vol. xxvi., p. 219) two previous editions of this book, and are glad to find that our favourable opinion of it has been so convincingly indorsed by teachers and students in general. The novelty of this edition is a Supplement of Additional Propositions and Exercises. This contains an elegant mode of obtaining the circle tangential to three given circles by the methods of false positions, constructions for a quadrilateral, and a full account—for the first time in a text-book—of the Brocard, triplicate ratio, and (what the author proposes to call) the cosine circles. Dr. Casey has collected together very many properties of these circles, and, as usual with him, has added several beautiful results of his own. He has done excellent service in introducing the circles to the notice of English students.... We only need say we hope that this edition may meet with as much acceptance as its predecessors, it deserves greater acceptance.”

### THE “MATHEMATICAL MAGAZINE,” ERIE, PENNSYLVANIA.

“Dr. Casey, an eminent Professor of the Higher Mathematics and Mathematical Physics in the Catholic University of Ireland, has just brought out a second edition of his unique ‘Sequel to the First Six Books of Euclid,’ in which he has contrived to arrange and to pack more geometrical gems than have appeared in any single text-book since the days of the self-taught Thomas Simpson. ‘The principles of Modern Geometry contained in the work are, in the present state of Science, indispensable in Pure and Applied Mathematics, and in Mathematical Physics; and it is important that the student should become early acquainted with them.’

“Eleven of the sixteen sections into which the work is divided exhibit most excellent specimens of geometrical reasoning and research. These will be found to furnish very neat models for systematic methods of study. The other five sections contain 261 choice problems for solution. Here the earnest student will find all that he needs to bring himself abreast

with the amazing developments that are being made almost daily in the vast regions of Pure and Applied Geometry. On pp. 152 and 153 there is an elegant solution of the celebrated Malfatti's Problem.

"As our space is limited, we earnestly advise every lover of the 'Bright Seraphic Truth' and every friend of the 'Mathematical Magazine' to procure this invaluable book without delay."

#### THE "SCHOOLMASTER."

"This book contains a large number of elementary geometrical propositions not given in Euclid, which are required by every student of Mathematics. Here are such propositions as that *the three bisectors of the sides of a triangle are concurrent*, needed in determining the position of the centre of gravity of a triangle; propositions in the circle needed in Practical Geometry and Mechanics; properties of the centres of similitudes, and the theories of inversion and reciprocations so useful in certain electrical questions. The proofs are always neat, and in many cases exceedingly elegant."

#### THE "EDUCATIONAL TIMES."

"We have certainly seen nowhere so good an introduction to Modern Geometry, or so copious a collection of those elementary propositions not given by Euclid, but which are absolutely indispensable for every student who intends to proceed to the study of the Higher Mathematics. The style and general get up of the book are, in every way, worthy of the 'Dublin University Press Series,' to which it belongs."

#### THE "SCHOOL GUARDIAN."

"This book is a well-devised and useful work. It consists of propositions supplementary to those of the first six books of Euclid, and a series of carefully arranged exercises which follow each section. More than half the book is devoted to the Sixth Book of Euclid, the chapters on the 'Theory of Inversion' and on the 'Poles and Polars' being especially good. Its method skilfully combines the methods of old and modern Geometry; and a student well acquainted with its subject-matter would be fairly equipped with the geometrical knowledge he would require for the study of any branch of physical science."

#### THE "PRACTICAL TEACHER."

"Professor Casey's aim has been to collect within reasonable compass all those propositions of Modern Geometry to which reference is often made, but which are as yet embodied nowhere.... We can unreservedly give the highest praise to the matter of the book. In most cases the proofs are extraordinarily neat.... The notes to the Sixth Book are the most satisfactory. Feuerbach's Theorem (the nine-points circle touches inscribed and escribed circles) is favoured with two or three proofs, all of which are elegant. Dr. Hart's extension of it is extremely well proved.... We shall have given sufficient commendation to the book when we say, that the proofs of these (Malfatti's Problem, and Miquel's Theorem), and equally complex problems, which we used to shudder to attack, even by the powerful weapons of analysis, are easily and triumphantly accomplished by Pure Geometry."

"After showing what great results this book has accomplished in the minimum of space, it is almost superfluous to say more. Our author is almost alone in the field, and for the present need scarcely fear rivals."

#### THE "ACADEMY."

"Dr. Casey is an accomplished geometer, and this little book is worthy of his reputation. It is well adapted for use in the higher forms of our schools. It is a good introduction to the larger works of Chasles, Salmon, and Townsend. It contains both a text and numerous examples."

#### THE "JOURNAL OF EDUCATION."

"Dr. Casey's 'Sequel to Euclid' will be found a most valuable work to any student who has thoroughly mastered Euclid, and imbibed a real taste for geometrical reasoning.... The higher methods of pure geometrical demonstration, which form by far the larger and more important portion, are admirable; the propositions are for the most part extremely well given, and will amply repay a careful perusal to advanced students."

## PREFACE.

Frequent applications having been made to DR. CASEY requesting him to publish a "Key" containing the Solutions of the Exercises in his "Elements of Euclid," but his professorial and other duties scarcely leaving him any time to devote to it, I undertook, under his direction, the task of preparing one. Every Solution was examined and approved of by him before writing it for publication, so that the work may be regarded as virtually his.

The Exercises are a joint selection made by him and the late lamented Professor Townsend, S.F.T.C.D., and form one of the finest collections ever published.

JOSEPH B. CASEY.

86, SOUTH CIRCULAR-ROAD,  
*December 23, 1886.*

*Price 4/6, post free.]*

THE FIRST SIX BOOKS  
OF THE  
**ELEMENTS OF EUCLID,**  
With Copious Annotations and Numerous Exercises.  
BY  
JOHN CASEY, LL.D., F.R.S.,  
*Fellow of the Royal University of Ireland; Vice-President, Royal Irish Academy; &c.  
&c.*

---

Dublin: Hodges, Figgis, & Co. London: Longmans, Green, & Co.

---

### OPINIONS OF THE WORK.

The following are a few of the Opinions received by Dr. Casey on this Work:—

“Teachers no longer need be at a loss when asked which of the numerous ‘Euclids’ they recommend to learners. Dr. Casey’s will, we presume, supersede all others.”—THE DUBLIN EVENING MAIL.

“Dr. Casey’s work is one of the best and most complete treatises on Elementary Geometry we have seen. The annotations on the several propositions are specially valuable to students.”—THE NORTHERN WHIG.

“His long and successful experience as a teacher has eminently qualified Dr. Casey for the task which he has undertaken.... We can unhesitatingly say that this is the best edition of Euclid that has been yet offered to the public.”—THE FREEMAN’S JOURNAL.

*From the REV. R. TOWNSEND, F.T.C.D., &c.*

“I have no doubt whatever of the general adoption of your work through all the schools of Ireland immediately, and of England also before very long.”

*From GEORGE FRANCIS FITZGERALD, Esq., F.T.C.D.*

”Your work on Euclid seems admirable, and is a great improvement in most ways on its predecessors. It is a great thing to call the attention of students to the innumerable variations in statement and simple deductions from propositions.... I should have preferred some modification of Euclid to a reproduction, but I suppose people cannot be got to agree to any.”

*From* H. J. COOKE, Esq., The Academy, Banbridge.

"In the clearness, neatness, and variety of demonstrations, it is far superior to any text-book yet published, whilst the exercises are all that could be desired."

*From* JAMES A. POOLE, M.A., 29, Harcourt-street, Dublin.

"This work proves that Irish Scholars can produce Class-books which even the Head Masters of English Schools will feel it a duty to introduce into their establishments."

*From* PROFESSOR LEEBODY, Magee College, Londonderry.

"So far as I have had time to examine it, it seems to me a very valuable addition to our text-books of Elementary Geometry, and a most suitable introduction to the 'Sequel to Euclid,' which I have found an admirable book for class teaching."

*From* MRS. BRYANT, F.C.P., Principal of the North London Collegiate School for Girls.

"I am heartily glad to welcome this work as a substitute for the much less elegant text-books in vogue here. I have begun to use it already with some of my classes, and find that the arrangement of exercises after each proposition works admirably."

*From the* REV. J. E. REFFÉ, French College, Blackrock.

"I am sure you will soon be obliged to prepare a Second Edition. I have ordered fifty copies more of the Euclid (this makes 250 copies for the French College). They all like the book here."

*From the* NOTTINGHAM GUARDIAN.

"The edition of the First Six Books of Euclid by Dr. John Casey is a particularly useful and able work.... The illustrative exercises and problems are exceedingly numerous, and have been selected with great care. Dr. Casey has done an undoubted service to teachers in preparing an edition of Euclid adapted to the development of the Geometry of the present day."

*From the* LEEDS MERCURY.

"There is a simplicity and neatness of style in the solution of the problems which will be of great assistance to the students in mastering them.... At the end of each proposition there is an examination paper upon it, with deductions and other propositions, by means of which the student is at once enabled to test himself whether he has fully grasped the principles involved.... Dr. Casey brings at once the student face to face with the difficulties to be encountered, and trains him, stage by stage, to solve them."

*From the* PRACTICAL TEACHER.

"The preface states that this book 'is intended to supply a want much felt by Teachers at the present day—the production of a work which, while giving the unrivalled original in all its integrity, would also contain the modern conceptions and developments of the portion of Geometry over which the elements extend.'

"The book is all, and more than all, it professes to be.... The propositions suggested are such as will be found to have most important applications, and the methods of proof are both simple and elegant. We know no book which, within so moderate a compass, puts the student in possession of such valuable results."

"The exercises left for solution are such as will repay patient study, and those whose solution are given in the book itself will suggest the methods by which the others are to be demonstrated. We recommend everyone who wants good exercises in Geometry to get the book, and study it for themselves."

*From the EDUCATIONAL TIMES.*

"The editor has been very happy in some of the changes he has made. The combination of the general and particular enunciations of each proposition into one is good; and the shortening of the proofs, by omitting the repetitions so common in Euclid, is another improvement. The use of the contra-positive of a proved theorem is introduced with advantage, in place of the *reductio ad absurdum*; while the alternative (or, in some cases, substituted) proofs are numerous, many of them being not only elegant but eminently suggestive. The notes at the end of the book are of great interest, and much of the matter is not easily accessible. The collection of exercises, 'of which there are nearly eight hundred,' is another feature which will commend the book to teachers. To sum up, we think that this work ought to be read by every teacher of Geometry; and we make bold to say that no one can study it without gaining valuable information, and still more valuable suggestions."

*From the JOURNAL OF EDUCATION, Sept. 1, 1883.*

"In the text of the propositions, the author has adhered, in all but a few instances, to the substance of Euclid's demonstrations, without, however, giving way to a slavish following of his occasional verbiage and redundancy. The use of letters in brackets in the enunciations eludes the necessity of giving a second or particular enunciation, and can do no harm. Hints of other proofs are often given in small type at the end of a proposition, and, where necessary, short explanations. The definitions are also carefully annotated. The theory of proportion, Book V., is given in an algebraical form. This book has always appeared to us an exquisitely subtle example of Greek mathematical logic, but the subject can be made infinitely simpler and shorter by a little algebra, and naturally the more difficult method has yielded place to the less. It is not studied in schools, it is not asked for even in the Cambridge Tripos; a few years ago, it still survived in one of the College Examinations at St. John's, but whether the reforming spirit which is dominant there has left it, we do not know. The book contains a very large body of riders and independent geometrical problems. The simpler of these are given in immediate connexion with the propositions to which they naturally attach; the more difficult are given in collections at the end of each book. Some of these are solved in the book, and these include many well-known theorems, properties of orthocentre, of nine-point circle, &c. In every way this edition of Euclid is deserving of commendation. We would also express a hope that everyone who uses this book will afterwards read the same author's 'Sequel to Euclid,' where he will find an excellent account of more modern Geometry."

---

*NOW READY, Price 6s.*

A KEY to the EXERCISES in the ELEMENTS of EUCLID.

TYPOGRAPHICAL ERRORS CORRECTED IN PROJECT GUTENBERG EDITION

- p. 28. "DEF. VIII.—When a right line intersects ..." in original, amended to "DEF. VII" in sequence.
- p. 37. 12 "bisects the parallelogram" in original, amended to match every other occurrence as "parallelogram".
- p. 53. " $\triangle ACH$  is half the rectangle  $AC \cdot AH$  (I. Cor. 1)" in original. The reference is to Prop. I. of the current book and misnumbered, it should be (I. Cor. 2).
- p. 54. "The parallelogram  $CM$  is equal to  $DE$  [I. XLIII., Cor. 3];" in original, amended to "Cor. 2" following MS. correction: there is no Cor. 3.
- p. 56. "On  $CB$  describe the square  $CBEF$  I. [XLVI]." in original, clearly meant to read [I. XLVI].
- p. 70. "The remainiug parts of the line" in original, obvious error amended to "remaining".
- p. 73. "that which is nearest to the line throuyh the centre" in original, obvious error amended to "through".
- p. 78. "Then this line [I., Cor. 1]" in original. The reference is to Prop. I. of the current book, so it should be [I., Cor. 1].
- p. 79. " $OA$  is equal to  $OC$  [I., Def. XXII.]" in original. The reference should be [I., Def. XXXII.].
- p. 84. "the four points  $A, C, D, B$  are concylic" in original, evidently intended is "concylic".
- p. 87. as p. 78.
- p. 94. "Through tho point  $E$ " in original, obvious error amended to "the".
- p. 95., p. 97. "the points  $A, B, C, D$  are concylic" in original, as p. 84.
- p. 97. "(Ex. 2.) ...or touchlng a given file and a given circle." in original, obvious error amended to "touching".
- p. 98. "21. What is the locus of the middle points ..." in original, amended to "31." in sequence.
- p. 99. In (21) "the if then line  $DE$  intersect the chords ..." in original, garbled phrase amended to "then if the".
- p. 100. In (44) "these circle sintersect" in original, misplaced space amended to "these circles intersect".
- p. 105. "4. The point of bisection (1) of the line ( $OP$ )" in original, from the diagram and following discussion this should be (I).
- p. 107. Prop. IX. "About a given circle ( $ABCD$ ) to describe a circle." in original, clearly this is nonsense and must mean "About a given square".
- p. 110. "Then the traingles  $ABO, CBO$ " in original, obvious error amended to "triangles".
- p. 115. In (52) "and also en equilateral circumscribed polygon" in original, wrong letter amended to "an".
- p. 133. Heading "PROP. XXV.—PROBLEM." in original, the preamble to this book says that every Proposition in it is a THEOREM and this one seems to be no exception, so amended.

p. 136. Reference “[I.]” is to Proposition I. of current book, amended to “[I.]” (4 times).

p. 137 sqq. Reference “[II.]” is to Proposition II. of current book, amended to “[II.]” (4 times).

p. 139. Prop V. header “subtended bg the homologous sides” in original, obvious error amended to “by”.

p. 147. Reference “[XVI.]” corrected to “[XVI.]”.

p. 150. “From the construction is is evident …” in original, obvious error amended to “it is”.

p. 165. “20. Find a poiat  $O$ ” in original, obvious error amended to “point”.

p. 175. “the lines  $GH$ ,  $GK$  each perpendicular to  $EF$ ” in original, obvious error amended to “perpendicular”.

p. 186. “ $O$ ” when associated with a lower case letter was wrongly printed as  $o$ , which is not defined. These have been corrected (3 times).

p. 192. Reference “[VI., Cor. 6]” corrected to “[vi., Cor. 6]”.

\*\*\* END OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK ELEMENTS OF EUCLID \*\*\*

Updated editions will replace the previous one|the old editions will be renamed.

Creating the works from print editions not protected by U.S. copyright law means that no one owns a United States copyright in these works, so the Foundation (and you!) can copy and distribute it in the United States without permission and without paying copyright royalties. Special rules, set forth in the General Terms of Use part of this license, apply to copying and distributing Project Gutenberg™ electronic works to protect the PROJECT GUTENBERG™ concept and trademark. Project Gutenberg is a registered trademark, and may not be used if you charge for an eBook, except by following the terms of the trademark license, including paying royalties for use of the Project Gutenberg trademark. If you do not charge anything for copies of this eBook, complying with the trademark license is very easy. You may use this eBook for nearly any purpose such as creation of derivative works, reports, performances and research. Project Gutenberg eBooks may be modified and printed and given away|you may do practically ANYTHING in the United States with eBooks not protected by U.S. copyright law. Redistribution is subject to the trademark license, especially commercial redistribution.

START: FULL LICENSE

THE FULL PROJECT GUTENBERG LICENSE

PLEASE READ THIS BEFORE YOU DISTRIBUTE OR USE THIS WORK

To protect the Project Gutenberg™ mission of promoting the free distribution of electronic works, by using or distributing this work (or any other work associated in any way with the phrase \Project Gutenberg"), you agree to comply with all the terms of the Full Project Gutenberg™ License available with this file or online at [www.gutenberg.org/license](http://www.gutenberg.org/license).

Section 1. General Terms of Use and Redistributing Project Gutenberg™ electronic works

1.A. By reading or using any part of this Project Gutenberg™ electronic work, you indicate that you have read, understand, agree to and accept all the terms of this license and intellectual property (trademark/copyright) agreement. If you do not agree to abide by all the terms of this agreement, you must cease using and return or destroy all copies of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works in your possession. If you paid a fee for obtaining a copy of or access to a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work and you do not agree to be bound

by the terms of this agreement, you may obtain a refund from the person or entity to whom you paid the fee as set forth in paragraph 1.E.8.

1.B. \Project Gutenberg" is a registered trademark. It may only be used on or associated in any way with an electronic work by people who agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. There are a few things that you can do with most Project Gutenberg™ electronic works even without complying with the full terms of this agreement. See paragraph 1.C below. There are a lot of things you can do with Project Gutenberg™ electronic works if you follow the terms of this agreement and help preserve free future access to Project Gutenberg™ electronic works. See paragraph 1.E below.

1.C. The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation (\the Foundation" or PGLAF), owns a compilation copyright in the collection of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works. Nearly all the individual works in the collection are in the public domain in the United States. If an individual work is unprotected by copyright law in the United States and you are located in the United States, we do not claim a right to prevent you from copying, distributing, performing, displaying or creating derivative works based on the work as long as all references to Project Gutenberg are removed. Of course, we hope that you will support the Project Gutenberg™ mission of promoting free access to electronic works by freely sharing Project Gutenberg™ works in compliance with the terms of this agreement for keeping the Project Gutenberg™ name associated with the work. You can easily comply with the terms of this agreement by keeping this work in the same format with its attached full Project Gutenberg™ License when you share it without charge with others.

1.D. The copyright laws of the place where you are located also govern what you can do with this work. Copyright laws in most countries are in a constant state of change. If you are outside the United States, check the laws of your country in addition to the terms of this agreement before downloading, copying, displaying, performing, distributing or creating derivative works based on this work or any other Project Gutenberg™ work. The Foundation makes no representations concerning the copyright status of any work in any country other than the United States.

1.E. Unless you have removed all references to Project Gutenberg:

1.E.1. The following sentence, with active links to, or other immediate access to, the full Project Gutenberg™ License must appear prominently whenever any copy of a Project Gutenberg™ work (any work on which the phrase \Project Gutenberg" appears, or with which the phrase \Project Gutenberg" is associated) is accessed, displayed, performed, viewed, copied or distributed:

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most

other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this eBook or online at [www.gutenberg.org](http://www.gutenberg.org). If you are not located in the United States, you will have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

1.E.2. If an individual Project Gutenberg™ electronic work is derived from texts not protected by U.S. copyright law (does not contain a notice indicating that it is posted with permission of the copyright holder), the work can be copied and distributed to anyone in the United States without paying any fees or charges. If you are redistributing or providing access to a work with the phrase \"Project Gutenberg\" associated with or appearing on the work, you must comply either with the requirements of paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 or obtain permission for the use of the work and the Project Gutenberg™ trademark as set forth in paragraphs 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.3. If an individual Project Gutenberg™ electronic work is posted with the permission of the copyright holder, your use and distribution must comply with both paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 and any additional terms imposed by the copyright holder. Additional terms will be linked to the Project Gutenberg™ License for all works posted with the permission of the copyright holder found at the beginning of this work.

1.E.4. Do not unlink or detach or remove the full Project Gutenberg™ License terms from this work, or any files containing a part of this work or any other work associated with Project Gutenberg™.

1.E.5. Do not copy, display, perform, distribute or redistribute this electronic work, or any part of this electronic work, without prominently displaying the sentence set forth in paragraph 1.E.1 with active links or immediate access to the full terms of the Project Gutenberg™ License.

1.E.6. You may convert to and distribute this work in any binary, compressed, marked up, nonproprietary or proprietary form, including any word processing or hypertext form. However, if you provide access to or distribute copies of a Project Gutenberg™ work in a format other than \"Plain Vanilla ASCII\" or other format used in the official version posted on the official Project Gutenberg™ website ([www.gutenberg.org](http://www.gutenberg.org)), you must, at no additional cost, fee or expense to the user, provide a copy, a means of exporting a copy, or a means of obtaining a copy upon request, of the work in its original \"Plain Vanilla ASCII\" or other form. Any alternate format must include the full Project Gutenberg™ License as specified in paragraph 1.E.1.

1.E.7. Do not charge a fee for access to, viewing, displaying, performing, copying or distributing any Project Gutenberg™ works

unless you comply with paragraph 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.8. You may charge a reasonable fee for copies of or providing access to or distributing Project Gutenberg™ electronic works provided that:

- You pay a royalty fee of 20% of the gross profits you derive from the use of Project Gutenberg™ works calculated using the method you already use to calculate your applicable taxes. The fee is owed to the owner of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark, but he has agreed to donate royalties under this paragraph to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation. Royalty payments must be paid within 60 days following each date on which you prepare (or are legally required to prepare) your periodic tax returns. Royalty payments should be clearly marked as such and sent to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation at the address specified in Section 4, \Information about donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation."
- You provide a full refund of any money paid by a user who notifies you in writing (or by e-mail) within 30 days of receipt that s/he does not agree to the terms of the full Project Gutenberg™ License. You must require such a user to return or destroy all copies of the works possessed in a physical medium and discontinue all use of and all access to other copies of Project Gutenberg™ works.
- You provide, in accordance with paragraph 1.F.3, a full refund of any money paid for a work or a replacement copy, if a defect in the electronic work is discovered and reported to you within 90 days of receipt of the work.
- You comply with all other terms of this agreement for free distribution of Project Gutenberg™ works.

1.E.9. If you wish to charge a fee or distribute a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work or group of works on different terms than are set forth in this agreement, you must obtain permission in writing from the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the manager of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark. Contact the Foundation as set forth in Section 3 below.

#### 1.F.

1.F.1. Project Gutenberg volunteers and employees expend considerable effort to identify, do copyright research on, transcribe and proofread works not protected by U.S. copyright law in creating the Project Gutenberg™ collection. Despite these efforts, Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, and the medium on which they may be stored, may

contain \"Defects,\" such as, but not limited to, incomplete, inaccurate or corrupt data, transcription errors, a copyright or other intellectual property infringement, a defective or damaged disk or other medium, a computer virus, or computer codes that damage or cannot be read by your equipment.

1.F.2. LIMITED WARRANTY, DISCLAIMER OF DAMAGES - Except for the \"Right of Replacement or Refund\" described in paragraph 1.F.3, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the owner of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark, and any other party distributing a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work under this agreement, disclaim all liability to you for damages, costs and expenses, including legal fees. YOU AGREE THAT YOU HAVE NO REMEDIES FOR NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY, BREACH OF WARRANTY OR BREACH OF CONTRACT EXCEPT THOSE PROVIDED IN PARAGRAPH 1.F.3. YOU AGREE THAT THE FOUNDATION, THE TRADEMARK OWNER, AND ANY DISTRIBUTOR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT WILL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ACTUAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES EVEN IF YOU GIVE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

1.F.3. LIMITED RIGHT OF REPLACEMENT OR REFUND - If you discover a defect in this electronic work within 90 days of receiving it, you can receive a refund of the money (if any) you paid for it by sending a written explanation to the person you received the work from. If you received the work on a physical medium, you must return the medium with your written explanation. The person or entity that provided you with the defective work may elect to provide a replacement copy in lieu of a refund. If you received the work electronically, the person or entity providing it to you may choose to give you a second opportunity to receive the work electronically in lieu of a refund. If the second copy is also defective, you may demand a refund in writing without further opportunities to fix the problem.

1.F.4. Except for the limited right of replacement or refund set forth in paragraph 1.F.3, this work is provided to you 'AS-IS', WITH NO OTHER WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PURPOSE.

1.F.5. Some states do not allow disclaimers of certain implied warranties or the exclusion or limitation of certain types of damages. If any disclaimer or limitation set forth in this agreement violates the law of the state applicable to this agreement, the agreement shall be interpreted to make the maximum disclaimer or limitation permitted by the applicable state law. The invalidity or unenforceability of any provision of this agreement shall not void the remaining provisions.

1.F.6. INDEMNITY - You agree to indemnify and hold the Foundation, the trademark owner, any agent or employee of the Foundation, anyone providing copies of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works in

accordance with this agreement, and any volunteers associated with the production, promotion and distribution of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, harmless from all liability, costs and expenses, including legal fees, that arise directly or indirectly from any of the following which you do or cause to occur: (a) distribution of this or any Project Gutenberg™ work, (b) alteration, modification, or additions or deletions to any Project Gutenberg™ work, and (c) any Defect you cause.

#### Section 2. Information about the Mission of Project Gutenberg™

Project Gutenberg™ is synonymous with the free distribution of electronic works in formats readable by the widest variety of computers including obsolete, old, middle-aged and new computers. It exists because of the efforts of hundreds of volunteers and donations from people in all walks of life.

Volunteers and financial support to provide volunteers with the assistance they need are critical to reaching Project Gutenberg™'s goals and ensuring that the Project Gutenberg™ collection will remain freely available for generations to come. In 2001, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation was created to provide a secure and permanent future for Project Gutenberg™ and future generations. To learn more about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and how your efforts and donations can help, see Sections 3 and 4 and the Foundation information page at [www.gutenberg.org](http://www.gutenberg.org).

#### Section 3. Information about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation is a non-profit 501(c)(3) educational corporation organized under the laws of the state of Mississippi and granted tax exempt status by the Internal Revenue Service. The Foundation's EIN or federal tax identification number is 64-6221541. Contributions to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation are tax deductible to the full extent permitted by U.S. federal laws and your state's laws.

The Foundation's business office is located at 809 North 1500 West, Salt Lake City, UT 84116, (801) 596-1887. Email contact links and up to date contact information can be found at the Foundation's website and official page at [www.gutenberg.org/contact](http://www.gutenberg.org/contact)

#### Section 4. Information about Donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

Project Gutenberg™ depends upon and cannot survive without widespread public support and donations to carry out its mission of increasing the number of public domain and licensed works that can be freely distributed in machine-readable form accessible by the widest array of equipment including outdated equipment. Many small donations

(\$1 to \$5,000) are particularly important to maintaining tax exempt status with the IRS.

The Foundation is committed to complying with the laws regulating charities and charitable donations in all 50 states of the United States. Compliance requirements are not uniform and it takes a considerable effort, much paperwork and many fees to meet and keep up with these requirements. We do not solicit donations in locations where we have not received written confirmation of compliance. To SEND DONATIONS or determine the status of compliance for any particular state visit [www.gutenberg.org/donate](http://www.gutenberg.org/donate).

While we cannot and do not solicit contributions from states where we have not met the solicitation requirements, we know of no prohibition against accepting unsolicited donations from donors in such states who approach us with offers to donate.

International donations are gratefully accepted, but we cannot make any statements concerning tax treatment of donations received from outside the United States. U.S. laws alone swamp our small staff.

Please check the Project Gutenberg web pages for current donation methods and addresses. Donations are accepted in a number of other ways including checks, online payments and credit card donations. To donate, please visit: [www.gutenberg.org/donate](http://www.gutenberg.org/donate).

#### Section 5. General Information About Project Gutenberg™ electronic works

Professor Michael S. Hart was the originator of the Project Gutenberg™ concept of a library of electronic works that could be freely shared with anyone. For forty years, he produced and distributed Project Gutenberg™ eBooks with only a loose network of volunteer support.

Project Gutenberg™ eBooks are often created from several printed editions, all of which are confirmed as not protected by copyright in the U.S. unless a copyright notice is included. Thus, we do not necessarily keep eBooks in compliance with any particular paper edition.

Most people start at our website which has the main PG search facility: [www.gutenberg.org](http://www.gutenberg.org).

This website includes information about Project Gutenberg™, including how to make donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, how to help produce our new eBooks, and how to subscribe to our email newsletter to hear about new eBooks.